

## Contents

0.1	General resources .....	8
G1	The writing system .....	9
G1.1	[Interlude] Morphemes, phonemes, phones .....	9
G1.2	Iteration marks .....	9
G1.3	漢字 .....	10
G1.4	Pronunciation .....	11
G1.4.1	Vowel extension .....	11
G1.5	Hepburn romanisation .....	12
G1.6	Rendaku .....	13
G1.7	音読み and 訓読み and mixing the two .....	15
G1.7.1	History and why 漢字 is the way it is .....	15
G1.8	When to use 音読み and 訓読み .....	15
G2	Basic grammar .....	18
G2.1	Building clauses and sentences .....	18
G2.2	Topics vs. subjects: は、が particles .....	19
G2.2.1	Subject as part-of-speech, topic as meta-concept .....	19
G2.2.2	は particle: the topic marker .....	19
G2.2.3	が particle .....	22
G2.3	Prelude: Basic grammatical structures .....	22
G2.4	Expressing state-of-being .....	22
G2.5	Starter particles は、も、が .....	23
G2.6	Adjectives .....	23
G2.7	Verbs .....	24
G2.7.1	Transitive and intransitive verbs .....	25
G2.8	Nouns, adjectives, verbs conjugation summary .....	27
G2.9	Verb particles を、に、へ、で .....	27
G2.9.1	なにで and なんで in questions .....	29
G2.9.2	Compound particles には、にも、へは、へも、では、でも to set location topic .....	29
G2.9.3	Particle は to set direct object topic .....	29
G2.10	Noun modification .....	29
G2.10.1	Relative verb clauses as adjectives: verbs modifying following nouns . .	30
G2.10.2	Noun chain .....	30
G2.10.3	Noun phrases as adjectives: nouns modifying following nouns .....	30
G2.10.4	Noun-related particles と、や、とか、の .....	30
G2.10.5	の particle I: the noun modifier (label maker) .....	33
G2.10.6	の particle II: the nominaliser .....	35
G2.10.7	The adjective-noun spectrum: な-adjectives and の-adjectives .....	36
G2.11	Adverbs .....	38
G2.12	Sentence ending particles ね、よ、よね .....	38
G3	Essential grammar .....	40
G3.1	Verb stems .....	40
G3.2	Polite forms ます、です .....	40
G3.2.1	です is NOT the polite form of だ, they are completely separate constructs .....	41

G3.3	Addressing people .....	41
G3.3.1	Referring to yourself .....	41
G3.3.2	Referring to the listener (second-person) .....	41
G3.3.3	Referring to the third person .....	42
G3.4	The question marker か particle .....	43
G3.4.1	か in polite questions .....	43
G3.4.2	Positive and negative polite questions .....	43
G3.4.3	か in casual questions: binary and sarcasm .....	44
G3.4.4	か in embedded clauses: referring to embedded questions .....	44
G3.4.5	Modifying question words with suffixes か、も、でも .....	44
G3.5	Apologising .....	45
G3.6	Compound sentences .....	45
G3.6.1	て form .....	45
G3.6.2	Compound sentences (chain of descriptors/actions) using て/で and て- form .....	46
G3.6.3	Causation and reasoning particles から、ので .....	46
G3.6.4	Despite marker particle のに .....	47
G3.6.5	General and contradiction connector particles けど(、けれど、けれど も)、が .....	48
G3.7	Reason vague listing connector し .....	48
G3.8	Adjective and verb vague listing construct ～たり[です] .....	48
G3.9	Progressive form ～ている (enduring state of action, enduring state-of-being) ..	49
G3.10	Resultant state ～てある .....	50
G3.11	The auxiliary verb 置く in ～ておく、～とく .....	50
G3.12	Spatial and temporal directional auxiliary verbs ～ていく、～てくる .....	51
G3.13	Potential form ～ <sup>え</sup> る/～られる/～できる/～ <sup>こ</sup> えられる .....	51
G3.13.1	The special cases 見られる、聞ける and the alternatives 見ることができ る、聞くことができる (vs. 見える、聞こえる) .....	52
G3.13.2	Potential to exist: あり <sup>え</sup> 得る .....	52
G3.14	～にする、～になる auxiliary verbs .....	53
G3.14.1	～なくなる versus ～ないようになる .....	54
G3.14.2	Decoupling form and function in Japanese grammar .....	54
G3.15	Conditionals .....	55
G3.15.1	Conditional form ～ば .....	55
G3.15.2	Past conditional form ～たら[ば] .....	55
G3.15.3	Expected consequence conditionals with と .....	56
G3.15.4	Contextual conditionals with なら[ば] .....	56
G3.15.5	もし as an uncertainty embellishment for conditionals .....	57
G3.16	Prohibition, requirement and permission .....	57
G3.16.1	Prohibition (things that must not be done) ～ては{だめ/いけない/なら ない} .....	58
G3.16.2	Requirement (things that must be done) .....	59
G3.16.3	Permission (things that are okay to do or not to do) ～てもいい .....	60
G3.17	Desires, invitation and suggestions .....	61
G3.17.1	Desiderative form ～たい .....	61
G3.17.2	Auxiliary adjective ほしい .....	61

G3.17.3	Volitional form: invitation	〜 <sup>お</sup> う/〜よう/〜ましょう	62
G3.17.4	Suggestions	{ば/たらどう}	62
G3.18	Quotation: performing actions on relative clauses		62
G3.18.1	Direct quotation	「...」と	62
G3.18.2	Indirect quotation	と、って	63
G3.18.3	って as a replacement for topic particle は		64
G3.19	Definitions and descriptions with the abstract	という/って (and slang つう)	64
G3.19.1	Definition	という	64
G3.19.2	Referring to relative clause	という{の/こと and {こう/そう/ああ/どう}いう{の/こと} and って}	64
G3.19.3	Rephrasing and refining definitions with	というか、 connector	65
G3.19.4	Referring to relative clause with annoyance	つう (slang)	66
G3.19.5	Referring to relative clause with exasperation	ってば/ったら (slang)	66
G3.19.6	Expressing disagreement or dissatisfaction (whiningly) with	だって	66
G3.20	Trialling something out or attempting something		67
G3.20.1	Trialling something out with the auxiliary verb	てみる	67
G3.20.2	Attempting something with <v volitional>と{する/<v>}		67
G3.21	Giving and receiving objects and favours		67
G3.21.1	Giving [as a favour]	[て]あげる、[て]やる、[て]くれる	68
G3.21.2	Receiving [as a favour]	[て]もらう	69
G3.21.3	Soliciting favours (≠ request) with auxiliary verbs	てくれる、てもらえる	69
G3.22	Making requests (≠ favours)		70
G3.22.1	Honorific requests with	〜てください、〜て	70
G3.22.2	Casual requests with	〜ちょうだい。	71
G3.22.3	Polite firm requests with	〜なさい/〜な	71
G3.22.4	Imperative form		71
G3.23	The number system		72
G3.23.1	Numbers smaller than 1		73
G3.23.2	Dates		73
G3.23.3	Systemic reading changes for counters		73
G3.23.4	Ordinals counters	〜目/ <sup>め</sup> 第 <sup>だい</sup> 〜	74
G3.24	Casual and slang speech		74
G3.24.1	Sentence ordering		75
G3.24.2	Seeking positive confirmation with	じゃない and じゃん	75
G3.24.3	Showing contempt for an action with auxiliary verb	やがる	76
G3.24.4	The <sup>なに</sup> 何 mispronunciation and filler word	なんか	76
G3.25	More sentence ending particles	な、さ and gender-specific ones わ、ぞ、ぜ	76
G3.25.1	Question particle	かな and gender-specific ones かしら、かい、だい	77
G3.26	Example conversations		77
G4	Special expressions		79
G4.1	Causative, passive and causative-passive forms		79
G4.1.1	Causative form	〜 <sup>あ</sup> せる/す	79
G4.1.2	Interlude I: passivisation, direct and indirect/adversative passives		80
G4.1.3	Passive form	〜 <sup>あ</sup> れる	81
G4.1.4	Causative-passive form	〜 <sup>あ</sup> せられる	82

G4.2	Postlude: a deep dive into passivisation in Japanese .....	83
G4.2.1	Introduction into the passive voice <small>じゅどうたい</small> 受動態 .....	83
G4.2.2	Classifications of the passive voice .....	83
G4.2.3	The grammar rules of passives .....	85
G4.2.4	Indirect passives to convey adversative emotions, and involving a third person subject <small>かんせつうけみ</small> 間接受身のグループ .....	88
G4.2.5	The three passive voice particles に、から、によって .....	90
GA	Grammar mega summary .....	92
GA.1	Conjugation rules summary .....	92
GA.1.1	Nouns .....	92
GA.1.2	な-adjectives .....	92
GA.1.3	い-adjectives .....	92
GA.1.4	Verbs .....	93
GA.2	Particle and schema summary .....	97
GB	Phrases .....	101
GB.1	Business speak .....	102
GB.2	I don't know Japanese .....	103
GB.3	<small>でんしゃない</small> 電車内で耳にするのアナウンス Announcements you hear on board trains ....	103
GB.4	<small>げんしん き</small> 原神切り抜き Genshin Extracts .....	105
GB.4.1	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> 胡桃 <small>フータオ</small> 「雪晴梅香」 Collected Miscellany - “Hu Tao: Fragrance in Thaw” <b>JP/EN</b> .....	105
GB.4.2	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> スヴィレット 「旧世の戒律」 Collected Miscellany - “Neuvillette: Precepts of the Ages” (Source <b>JP/EN</b> ) .....	107
GB.4.3	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> フリーナ 「鏡中影」 Collected Miscellany - “Furina: Reflection in the Mirror” (Source <b>JP/EN</b> ) .....	107
GB.4.4	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> 千織 <small>ちおり</small> 「袂に錦の香り満ちて」 Collected Miscellany - “Chiori: Brocade of Fragrant Beauty” (Source <b>JP/EN</b> ) .....	107
GB.4.5	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> アルレッキーノ 「凶影の残光」 Collected Miscellany - “Arlecchino: Afterglow of Calamity” (Source <b>JP/EN</b> ) ...	107
GB.4.6	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> マーヴィカ 「烈日の巡礼」 Collected Miscellany - “Mavuika: Pilgrimage of the Blazing Sun” (Source <b>JP/EN</b> ) .....	107
GB.4.7	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> ヴァレサ 「ヒーロー見参!!」 <small>けんざん</small> Collected Miscellany - “Varesa: Hero Incoming!” (Source <b>JP/EN</b> ) .....	107
GB.4.8	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> エスコフィエ <small>ほうちよう えんぶ</small> 「包丁の円舞」 Collected Miscellany - “Escoffier: A Waltz of Scoring Cuts” (Source <b>JP/EN</b> ) ...	109
GB.4.9	チュートリアル動画 <small>どうが</small> スカーク <small>れいかい しず</small> 「冷界の静けさ」 Collected Miscellany - “Skirk: The Silence of a Frostbound Realm” (Source <b>JP/EN</b> ) .....	110
SA	<small>かな</small> 仮名 .....	112
SA.1	平仮名 (ひらがな) .....	112
SA.1.1	Mnemonics .....	112
SA.2	片仮名 (カタカナ) .....	115
SA.2.1	Mnemonics .....	115
SA.3	仮名 Summary .....	120
SB	Basic nouns .....	125
SB.1	Numbers .....	125
SB.2	Counting (generic): つ .....	126
SB.3	Counting people: <small>にん</small> 人 .....	127

SB.4	Counting bus/train stations: 駅 <sup>えき</sup> .....	127
SB.5	Counting age: 歳 <sup>さい</sup> .....	128
SB.6	Counting thin/flat things: 枚 <sup>まい</sup> .....	128
SB.7	Counting thin long things (bottles): 本 <sup>ほん</sup> .....	128
SB.8	Counting drinks (cups/glasses): 杯 <sup>はい</sup> .....	129
SB.9	Counting machines/vehicles: 台 <sup>だい</sup> .....	129
SB.10	Counting books: 冊 <sup>さつ</sup> .....	130
SB.11	Counting clothes: 着 <sup>ちやく</sup> .....	130
SB.12	Counting small things: 個 <sup>こ</sup> .....	131
SB.13	Counting shoes and socks: 足 <sup>そく</sup> .....	131
SB.14	Counting houses: 軒 <sup>けん</sup> .....	131
SB.15	Counting floors: 階 <sup>かい</sup> .....	132
SB.16	Counting locations: 箇所 <sup>かしよ</sup> .....	132
SB.17	Counting small animals: 匹 <sup>ひき</sup> .....	133
SB.18	Counting big animals: 頭 <sup>とう</sup> .....	133
SB.19	Counting birds and bats: 羽 <sup>わ</sup> .....	134
SB.20	Counting years: 年 <sup>ねん</sup> .....	134
SB.21	Calendar months and days of a week: 月 <sup>がつ</sup> and 曜日 <sup>ようび</sup> .....	135
SB.22	Counting months: ケ月 <sup>かけつ</sup> /月 <sup>つき</sup> .....	135
SB.23	Days of the month: 日 <sup>たち</sup> /日 <sup>か</sup> /日 <sup>にち</sup> .....	136
SB.24	Ordinal days: ~{日 <sup>にち</sup> /日 <sup>か</sup> }目 <sup>め</sup> /第 <sup>だい</sup> ~日 <sup>たち</sup> .....	137
SB.25	Counting days: {日 <sup>にち</sup> /日 <sup>か</sup> }間 <sup>かん</sup> .....	138
SB.26	Counting o'clocks and hours: 時 <sup>じ</sup> and 時間 <sup>じかん</sup> .....	139
SB.27	Counting minutes: 分 <sup>ふん</sup> .....	140
SB.28	Counting seconds: 秒 <sup>びよう</sup> .....	141
SB.29	Counting positions: 番 <sup>ばん</sup> .....	141
SB.30	Counting occurrences: 回 <sup>かい</sup> .....	142
SB.31	Counting methods/ways/kinds: 通 <sup>とお</sup> り .....	142
SB.32	Counting shots/hits/punches: 発 <sup>はつ</sup> .....	143
VA	Interjections and expressions .....	144
VA.1	Greetings .....	144
VA.2	Exclamations .....	144
VA.3	Sentence builders .....	146
VB	普通名詞 <sup>ふつうめいし</sup> (nouns) .....	148
VB.1	Meta: Japanese .....	148
VB.2	Grammatical .....	149
VB.3	Physical .....	149
VB.4	Directions .....	149
VB.5	Navigation .....	151
VB.6	Places .....	152
VB.7	Vehicles .....	153
VB.8	Furniture .....	153
VB.9	Organisms .....	153
VB.10	Food .....	154
VB.11	Small objects: stationery .....	155
VB.12	General objects .....	156

VB.13	Date .....	156
VB.14	Time .....	157
VB.15	Pronouns and question words .....	158
VB.16	Pre-noun adjectivals .....	162
VB.17	Roles and occupations .....	163
VB.18	Family .....	166
VB.19	Body parts .....	166
VB.20	Clothing .....	167
VB.21	Emotions .....	168
VB.22	Production .....	169
VB.23	Sports .....	171
VB.24	Consumption .....	171
VB.25	Interaction .....	172
VB.26	Society and culture .....	173
VB.27	Health .....	174
VB.28	Disasters .....	175
VB.29	Colours .....	175
VB.30	Shapes .....	176
VB.31	Agreeability .....	177
VB.32	Appearance and style .....	177
VB.33	Ability .....	177
VB.34	Personalities .....	178
VB.35	Education and correctness .....	178
VB.36	Academic fields .....	179
VB.37	Knowledge, truth and reality .....	179
VB.38	Courtesy .....	181
VB.39	Conflict and resolution .....	181
VB.40	Weapons .....	182
VB.41	The five senses .....	182
VB.42	Amounts and sizes .....	183
VB.43	Creatures and divinity .....	183
VB.44	Nature .....	184
VB.45	Cosmic .....	185
VB.46	Physical units .....	186
VB.47	Hygiene .....	187
VB.48	Common names .....	187
VB.49	Character names .....	187
VC	形容詞 (adjectives) .....	188
VC.1	Emotions .....	188
VC.2	Production .....	189
VC.3	Consumption .....	189
VC.4	Health .....	189
VC.5	Colours .....	189
VC.6	Agreeability .....	190
VC.7	Appearance and style .....	191
VC.8	Ability .....	193
VC.9	Personalities .....	194

VC.10	Education and correctness .....	195
VC.11	Knowledge, truth and reality .....	195
VC.12	Courtesy .....	196
VC.13	Conflict and resolution .....	196
VC.14	The five senses .....	196
VC.15	Amounts and sizes .....	197
VC.16	Change .....	198
VD	動詞 (verbs) .....	199
VD.1	Physical .....	199
VD.2	Directions .....	199
VD.3	Clothing .....	201
VD.4	Emotions .....	201
VD.5	Production .....	202
VD.6	Consumption .....	204
VD.7	Interaction .....	204
VD.8	Health .....	206
VD.9	Ability .....	206
VD.10	Education and correctness .....	206
VD.11	Knowledge, truth and reality .....	207
VD.12	Courtesy .....	207
VD.13	Conflict and resolution .....	207
VD.14	Change .....	208
VE	副詞と接続詞 (adverbs and conjunctions) .....	209
VE.1	Grammatical .....	209
VE.2	Directions .....	209
VE.3	Intensity modifiers .....	209
VE.4	Time .....	210
VE.5	Attitude .....	211
VE.6	Emotions .....	212
VE.7	Appearance and style .....	212
VE.8	Interaction .....	213
VE.9	Knowledge, truth and reality .....	213
VE.10	Ability .....	213
VE.11	The five senses .....	214
VE.12	Amounts and sizes .....	214
VE.13	Onomatopoeia .....	215

## 0.1 General resources

- Tofugu ひらがな and カタカナ guides
- Dictionaries:
  - ▶ Takoboto Android dictionary
  - ▶ Jisho dictionary (MT)
  - ▶ Jotoba dictionary, an upgraded version of Jisho
  - ▶ bunpro dictionary for JLPT classifications and example sentences
- Weblio dictionary for J-J dictionary, apparently most popular in Japan
- Weblio thesaurus for antonyms
- JLPT 先生 for grammar and 漢字 lists
- Minna no nihongo books (XM)



## G1 The writing system

The writing system comprises three scripts: 平仮名 (ひらがな)、片仮名 (カタカナ)、漢字 (かんじ). For details of the former two scripts, refer to the supplementary PDF.

### G1.1 [Interlude] Morphemes, phonemes, phones

*This entire section is courtesy of SL.*

**Phonemes** are the smallest unit of mental representation of sound. They do not carry meaning by themselves, but they can alter the meaning pictured by the listener.

**Morphemes** are the smallest unit of meaning, and comprise two levels: a phonological level and a semantic level. The phonological level states how it is pronounced (a string of phonemes), and the semantic level states what meaning is attached to the phonology.

For instance, 日々 contains a repetition of the same phoneme because the sound and meaning of the two 漢字 are identical. In contrast, 日日 contains two different morphemes, because the sound (and meaning) of the two 漢字 are different!

When determining whether a morpheme is repeated or not, consider the sound and meaning first before looking at the orthography. “Orthography is truly an afterthought[, in the design of languages].”

### G1.2 Iteration marks

Read main article on [Wikipedia](#).

Only the (horizontal text) 漢字 iteration mark 々 is commonly used today. It is used to represent a duplicated character representing the same morpheme. For example, 日々 means “daily, day after day”.

Writing 々 instead of repeating the 漢字 is preferred, provided that:

1. (tl;dr: morpheme is repeated) the reading of the repeated 漢字 must be the same, though certain changes are permitted such as *rendaku* (unvoiced consonant becomes voiced, i.e. the dakuten, e.g. in 人々, ひ → び) and *gemination* (consonant lengthening, i.e. the つ, e.g. in 刻々), and
2. the repetition must be within a single word/phrase.

If the above aren't satisfied:

- If repetition isn't repetition of the same morpheme, for disambiguation the second 漢字 is spelt out in 平仮名 (e.g. 日にち).
- If repetition crosses word boundaries, then the 漢字 is repeated (e.g. 民主主義, democracy).

There are exceptions to this! 民主々義 is rarely used but exists. A notable exception is in the signages for neighbourhood associations 「～町内会」. Because the name of neighbourhoods often end in ～町, suffixing with ～町内会 yields ～町町内会, which is then informally abbreviated to ～町々内会, despite the repetition crossing a word boundary.

Interpretations when 々 is used:

- Reduplication (linguistics terminology) to indicate plurality  
人々 (people)、日々 (daily/day after day)、山々 (mountains)
- Various alterations in meaning

- ▶ 個 (piece) → 個々 (individually)
- ▶ 時 (time) → 時々 (sometimes)
- ▶ 翌日 (next day, as in 隔天/隔一天 (CN)) → 翌々日 (next next day, as in 隔两天 (CN))

Note that 翌日 is not the same as 明日, just like how 隔天 and 明天 are used in different contexts in CN!

Repetition marks can be typed using commands in Table 1.

Table 1: Miscellaneous keyboard commands. Today, ㄣ, ㄤ, ㄥ and ㄦ only appear in proper names.  
As examples, じㄣ = じし and じㄤ = じじ.

Keyboard command		Purpose
ㄣ	ㄣ onaji → space*	平仮名 previous character repeater (enforce without dakuten)
ㄤ	ㄤ onaji → space*	平仮名 previous character repeater (enforce with dakuten)
ㄥ	ㄥ onaji → space*	片仮名 previous character repeater (enforce without dakuten)
ㄦ	ㄦ onaji → space*	片仮名 previous character repeater (enforce with dakuten)
々	々 noma → space*	漢字 previous character repeater (ノ + マ)

### G1.3 漢字

Some preliminary notes:

- There exists over 40000 漢字 but only about 2000 account for >95% of characters actually used in written text.
- There are no spaces in Japanese, so 漢字 is necessary for distinguishing separate words within a sentence, and discriminating between homophones.
- Words that mean practically the same thing can have different 漢字 to distinguish nuances.

Here's an example:

- ▶ 訊く means to ask.
- ▶ 聞く means to listen, or to ask.
- ▶ 聴く means to listen attentively. Preferred when talking about listening to music.

Another example:

- ▶ 見る means to see.
- ▶ 観る means to watch a movie.

Another example:

- ▶ 書く means to write.
- ▶ 描く means to draw.

When depicting/imagining an abstract image (e.g. a scene in a book), we use 描く.

Another example:

- ▶ The different pronunciations 今日, 今日 and 今日 are each preferred in different contexts.

## G1.4 Pronunciation

It is not practical to memorise or attempt to logically create rules for pitches, especially since it can change depending on the context or the dialect. Even the intonations provided in dictionaries are there for guidance; they morph when used in different contexts.

The only practical approach is to get the general sense of pitches is by mimicking native Japanese speakers with careful listening and practice.

Some special notes:

- Voiced consonants vibrate the vocal cords, while unvoiced consonants don't (see [Tofugu](#) article).
- In the modern 東京 dialect, ゑ and づ are pronounced exactly the same way: "zu", as expressed in their identical Hepburn romanisation ([§G1.5](#)).
- When in the middle of words, がぎぐげご may be pronounced with a "ng-" start instead of a "g-" start. This is a regional variation (that's not too uncommon); both ways are acceptable (see [Tofugu](#) article).
- The native Japanese speaker will pronounce the "v" family (ヴ、ヴァ、ヴィ、ヴェ、ヴォ、ヴェュ) as /b/.
- Vowel extensions ([§G1.4.1](#)) are pronounced as vowel extensions; do not pronounce the extender if it's a different vowel! For example, 先生 is pronounced *sen-se* with an elongated trailing "e" vowel. There is no "i" vowel sound!
- Almost every 漢字 character has two different readings (see [§G1.7](#)):
  - ▶ 音読み: Chinese-derived. Used in compound 漢字 and idioms (both known as 熟語).
  - ▶ 訓読み: native Japanese. Used in solo 漢字, solo 漢字 appended with 送り仮名, adjectives and verbs.

The purpose of trailing 送り仮名 is to preserve the pronunciation of the 漢字, even as the word is conjugated<sup>1</sup> to different forms. It is also used to differentiate transitive and intransitive verbs ([§G2.7.1](#)).

Note that although sometimes you may see 音読み pronunciations written in 片仮名 and 訓読み pronunciations written in 平仮名, this is only used in dictionaries for differentiation. In standard 振り仮名, only 平仮名 is used.

- The actual readings of 漢字 can change slightly in compound words to make them easier to say (e.g. 一本 is いっぽん instead of いっほん).

When repeating 漢字 using 々, *rendaku* (see [§G1.6](#); unvoiced consonant becomes voiced, i.e. the dakuten, e.g. in 人々, ひ → び) and *gemination* (consonant lengthening, i.e. the っ, e.g. 刻々) may occur.

### G1.4.1 Vowel extension

Vowel extensions follow the rules in Table 2. For notes on pronunciation, see [§G1.4](#).

Table 2: Vowel extension rules. Exceptions are bracketed in blue. /a/ is the phoneme representation.

<sup>1</sup>Conjugation: change of word form to fit a given context.

Vowel to extend	Extend by appending		Example
	平仮名	片仮名	
/a/	あ		おばあさん、おかあさん
/i/	い		
/u/	う	ー	
/e/	い (え)		せんせい、がくせい、(おねえさん)
/o/	う (お)		きょう、おはよう、(おおきい)、(とおまわり)

## G1.5 Hepburn romanisation

Read main article on [Wikipedia](#).

The official (as of Jan 2024) romanisation system of Japan. There are only a few rules.

**Vowel extension (§G1.4.1)** When vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” are extended as part of the same morpheme, it is expressed with a macron (overbar), and the extender vowel is dropped.

Extension of “i” and the “e+i” combination are exceptions: they remain repeated.

- お婆さん <sup>ばあ</sup>obaasan → obāsan
- 新潟 (city name) <sup>にいがた</sup>niigata
- 数学 <sup>すうがく</sup>suugaku → sūgaku
- お姉さん <sup>ねえ</sup>oneesan → onēsan
- 先生 <sup>せんせい</sup>sensei
- 遠回り <sup>とおまわり</sup>toomawari → tōmawari
- 勉強 <sup>べんきょう</sup>benkyou → benkyō

This does not apply when the repetition crosses word boundaries or morpheme boundaries.

- 邪悪 <sup>じゃあく</sup>jaaku
- 灰色 <sup>はいいろ</sup>haiiro

Also for terminal adjectives (???): いい ii

- 湖 <sup>みずうみ</sup>mizuumi

Also for terminal verbs (???): 食う <sup>く</sup>kuu (eat)

- 濡れ縁 <sup>ぬ えん</sup>nureen (“open veranda (roofed hallway)”)
- 小躍り <sup>こ おど</sup>koodori (dance of joy)
- 仔牛 <sup>こ うし</sup>koushi (calf)

Also for terminal verbs (???): 迷う <sup>まよう</sup>mayou (to get lost)

**片仮名 loanwords** The macron is used iff 「ー」 is used to extend a vowel.

**Japanese words adopted into English** Common place names like Tokyo, Kyoto and Osaka, while properly romanised as tōkyō, kyōto and ōsaka, are simply romanised as Tokyo, Kyoto and Osaka.

**Particles** When は、へ、を are used as particles, they are romanised as wa, e and o respectively.

**Syllabic ん** ん is romanised as n’ (with the apostrophe) if followed immediately by any lone vowel or “y”. This is to disambiguate んあ、んい、んう、んえ、んお、んや、んゆ、んよ (n’a, n’i, n’u, n’e, n’o, n’ya, n’yu, n’yo) from な、に、ぬ、ね、の、にゃ、にゅ、によ (na, ni, nu, ne, no, nya, nyu, nyo) respectively.

Examples: 簡易<sup>かんい</sup> kan'i (simple), 信用<sup>しんよう</sup> shin'yō (trust).

**Geminated consonants (っ、っ)** Double the next consonant, except if “ch” is repeated: in that case we use “tch” instead of “cch”.

Examples: 抹茶<sup>まっちゃ</sup> maccha → matcha, こっち kocchi → kotchhi

## G1.6 Rendaku

Read the main articles on [Tofugu](#).

Rendaku occurs when multiple words join together to form one **compound word**, and the initially unvoiced consonant of a second word becomes a voiced consonant. In written form, the second word's first syllable gains a dakuten/handakuten mark. All dakuten/handakuten-marked characters have voiced consonant beginnings (the “p” sound for handakuten-marked characters are considered to be “semi-voiced”).

Compound words comprise words that can independently exist as words on their own.

Here are some general rendaku rules, though note that exceptions exist:

- Basic conditions:
  1. Two words come together to form a compound word.
  2. The leading consonant of the second word is unvoiced.
  3. The leading consonant of the second word is one of the four sets of characters that can change into a voiced consonant with dakuten or handakuten (“k”, “s”, “t”, or “h”).
  4. Surrounding the leading consonant of the second word are voiced vowels (or sometimes nasals like ん: those do not stop rendaku).

- If the first word ends in つ or ん, the “h” leading consonant of the second word usually rendakus to “p”, “b” otherwise by default.

E.g. 出<sup>しゅつ</sup> + 発<sup>はつ</sup> = 出発<sup>しゅつぱつ</sup>.

E.g. 鉛<sup>えん</sup> + 筆<sup>ひつ</sup> = 鉛筆<sup>えんぴつ</sup>.

- When the second word is of Japanese origin (和語<sup>わご</sup>), and the basic conditions above are met, then it undergoes rendaku. When the second word is of Chinese origin or a foreign loanword (漢語<sup>かんご</sup>、外来語<sup>がいらいご</sup>), rendaku is *usually* prevented (unless the 漢語 is *vulgarised*, meaning it's become so common that it's treated as a 和語 word, which doesn't prevent rendaku).

This is for avoidance of ambiguity in spoken language: 和語 words mostly start with unvoiced consonants, so rendaku makes it clear that a compound word is used instead of two independent words. 漢語 and 外来語 words can and often start with voiced consonants, so rendaku would cause confusion by morphing rendaku-ed words into another different word.

A vulgarised exception is 夫婦<sup>ふうふ</sup> + 喧嘩<sup>けんか</sup> = 夫婦喧嘩<sup>ふうふけんか</sup> (喧嘩 is vulgarised). Other vulgarised words: 会社<sup>かいしゃ</sup>、写真<sup>しゃしん</sup>.

- When the first word is a 漢語 (in 漢語 + 和語 compound words, where the first element uses the 音読み reading and the second element uses the 訓読み reading), rendaku can be blocked. A notable example is 「大<sup>だい</sup>〜」.

In 熟語<sup>じゅくご</sup> compound words where both constituent words use 音読み, rendaku does not occur in the grand majority of cases.

- Lyman's Law: If the second word has a voiced consonant or handakuten anywhere in it, rendaku does not occur.

This may be explained by the observation that two voiced consonants don't appear together side by side in single 和語 words or phrases.

"Lyman's Law in reverse" says that sometimes, when the second word has a second voiced consonant, that can become unvoiced and the first consonant becomes voiced (rendaku). This is a rarity and won't be discussed further here.

- If voicing in the first word is too close to the second word, rendaku may (50/50) not occur. "Japanese doesn't really like having a bunch of dakuten and handakuten very close to each other."
- In words that come together to mean "X and Y," rendaku does not occur. In English, such words are rare but examples include "bittersweet", "stir-fry" and "sleepwalk".

E.g. 山川 can mean either "mountains and rivers" or "a mountain river". For the former, when both sides are "equal status", rendaku does not happen and it is read 山川<sup>やまかわ</sup>. For the latter, when the first word is a noun modifier for the second, rendaku happens and it is read 山川<sup>やまがわ</sup>.

E.g. 白黒<sup>しろくろ</sup> does not rendaku (white and black are equals), but 色白<sup>いろしろ</sup> and 色黒<sup>いろくろ</sup> do (colour is a descriptor of white/black).

- Repeating onomatopoeia do not rendaku.

E.g. キラキラ as the sound of something sparkling/glittering, does not rendaku.

- Certain prefixes block rendaku and certain suffixes resist rendaku.

Blocking prefixes:

- ▶ 半<sup>はん</sup>〜 (half)
- ▶ 御<sup>お</sup>〜/御<sup>み</sup>〜 (honorific)

E.g. お手洗<sup>てあらい</sup>、御心<sup>みこころ</sup>

- ▶ 毎<sup>まい</sup>〜 (every)
- ▶ 一<sup>ひと</sup>〜 (one)
- ▶ 二<sup>ふた</sup>〜 (two)
- ▶ 片<sup>かた</sup>〜 (one-sided)

E.g. 片仮名<sup>かたかな</sup> (rendaku blocked) vs. 平仮名<sup>ひらがな</sup> (rendaku happens).

- ▶ 唐<sup>から</sup>〜 (Chinese)
- ▶ 白<sup>しろ</sup>〜 (white)
- ▶ 黒<sup>くろ</sup>〜 (black)

Resisting suffixes:

- ▶ 先<sup>さき</sup> (previous/tip)
- ▶ 紐<sup>ひも</sup> (string/cord)
- ▶ 浜<sup>はま</sup> (beach)
- ▶ 姫<sup>ひめ</sup> (princess)
- ▶ 煙<sup>けむり</sup> (smoke)
- ▶ 土<sup>つち</sup> (dirt)
- ▶ 潮<sup>しお</sup> (tide)
- ▶ 血<sup>けつ</sup> (blood)

・ ~<sup>した</sup>下 (below)

## G1.7 音読み and 訓読み and mixing the two

Read the main article on [Tofugu1](#) and [Tofugu2](#).

### G1.7.1 History and why 漢字 is the way it is

According to Tofugu, 漢字 was imported from China via religious texts (which the Japanese appreciated a lot). They merged the Chinese writing system into olden Japanese, but olden Japanese was already established and had its own set of pronunciations. The Japanese decided to adopt Chinese orthography, while co-opting both the Chinese-derived pronunciations (音読み) and the native Japanese pronunciations (訓読み).

While 漢字 words adopted in the above manner have both 音読み and 訓読み readings, some 漢字 words used today only have one:

- Those that only have 音読み readings were imported from China wholesale, either because the concept didn't yet exist in Japanese vocabulary, or because there were multiple incompatible native terms for the concept which cannot be unified properly (back then, Japan wasn't one unified country, but comprised unrelated groups with unique systems of government, and presumably sub-languages).

E.g. 肉 (meat)、材 (lumber)、感 (feeling)、点 (point)、医 (doctor)、茶 (tea)、胃 (stomach)、職 (work)、象 (elephant)、秒 (time second).

- Those that only have 訓読み readings were invented in Japan for a concept that was native to Japan.

E.g. 畑 (field)、姫 (princess)、匂い (fragrant)、峠 (mountain pass)、枠 (frame)、粳 (unhulled rice)、鰯 (sardine)、枳 (horses' chestnut)、込む (to be crowded)、咲く (to bloom).

Furthermore, olden China was always in a state of infighting and changing of powers. As power in China changed, so did the "official" language. The introduction of 漢字 from China to Japan happened over a long period of time, across many Chinese powers and thus many "then-official" versions of the olden Chinese language. This explains why some 漢字 have multiple 音読み readings: Japanese scholars decided to co-opt them as new readings came, without deprecating the "older" readings. (*"There were three major reading adoption periods in the history of the Japanese language: 呉音 (4–6th century; the Wu Dynasty's pronunciation), 漢音 (7–9th century; the Han Dynasty's pronunciation), and 唐音 (1185–1573 the "modern day Mandarin Chinese" pronunciation).*)

The presence of multiple 訓読み has a different historical explanation. Spoken Japanese existed before written Japanese. Multiple similar "senses" of a concept (e.g. to raise, to rise, to climb) have different pronunciations in spoken language, but were gathered under the same orthography when the written language was developed (e.g. 「上〜」).

## G1.8 When to use 音読み and 訓読み

- (lone 訓読み 漢字: majority) These comprise majority of beginner words found in textbooks. Mostly nouns. 訓読み is used.
- (lone 音読み 漢字: minority) These are characters with significant meaning, and includes things like counters and single 漢字 numbers. 音読み is used.

- (音読み 漢字 compounds: majority; 熟語) These are compound 漢字 words without any trailing 送り仮名. All the constituent 漢字 have Chinese origins and thus 音読み is used.
- (訓読み 漢字 compounds: minority) These are a special class of compound 漢字 and comprise nature concepts (especially the very Japanese ones) and cardinal directions. 訓読み is used for all the constituent 漢字.
- (訓読み 漢字 with trailing 送り仮名) Mostly adjectives and verbs, with the occasional nouns. When trailing 送り仮名 are present, 訓読み is used most of the time.
- (重箱読み 漢字 compounds) These compound 漢字 words take words with mixed origins: the first Chinese-derived and the second Japanese-derived. The first word takes 音読み, the second word takes 訓読み.

E.g. 金色 (gold colour).

- (湯桶読み 漢字 compounds) These compound 漢字 words take words with mixed origins: the first Japanese-derived and the second Chinese-derived. The first word takes 訓読み, the second word takes 音読み.

E.g. 場所 (place), 合気道 (martial arts Aikido).

- (当て字 I: borrow Chinese reading, invent meaning) Part of the precursor to modern-day 平仮名 and 片仮名: 万葉仮名. This archaic orthographic system used (multiple) Chinese characters to represent each Japanese sound.

E.g. 亜米利加 (America; today we use 米国 or アメリカ), 仏蘭西 (France; today we use 仏国 or フランス), 寿司 (sushi), 亜細亜 (Asia; today we use アジア), 珈琲 (coffee; today we use コーヒー), 流石 (as expected; today we use さすが), 沢山 (many; today we use たくさん).

- (当て字 II: borrow Chinese meaning, invent reading) These were adopted when a concept could not yet be expressed directly in the adopted Chinese orthography at the time, but when broken down into simpler concepts, can be expressed using Chinese orthography at the time. The pronunciation follows neither 音読み nor 訓読み of the borrowed Chinese orthography, but instead how the concept would be pronounced in spoken Japanese at the time (that does not later fall into 訓読み).

E.g. 煙草 (Tobacco (smoke + grass); today we use タバコ), 台詞 (speech; today we use セリフ), 南瓜 (Japanese squash/pumpkin; today we use かぼちゃ), 海老 (shrimp; today we use エビ), 海苔 (Japanese seaweed; today we use のり).

- (当て字 III: borrow both Chinese meaning and the associated reading) Sometimes Japanese scholars were able to find Chinese orthography whose meaning and reading were both desired when representing a concept. These are happy coincidences, perhaps.

E.g. 合羽 (raincoat; today we use カッパ), 倶楽部 (club; today we use クラブ), 算盤 (abacus; today we use そろばん), 剃刀 (razor; today we use カミソリ), 田舎 (countryside).

Honestly, any time you see pronunciations that don't fall under 音読み or 訓読み, it's safe to assume they're under 当て字, where things are borrowed and crafted from somewhere else; it's a bit unclear and the concept is probably even more complicated than what Tofugu presents (which is an incomplete overview): some of the pronunciations in 当て字 III come from nowhere.



- (lone 外来語 漢字) These are foreign loanwords that attained their own 漢字. These are units of measure (e.g. metric system) and common words. These readings have been adopted into 訓読み.

E.g. <sup>メートル</sup>米 (metres; today we use メートル or <sup>トル</sup>メトル), <sup>ページ</sup>頁 (page; today we use ページ or <sup>ゼ</sup>ペ), <sup>ゼロ</sup>零 (zilch; today we use ゼロ).

Finally, there's the bizarre class of Japanese names (名乗り) which we best leave untouched here.

## G2 Basic grammar

This section will grant you an overview of basic grammatical structures. The vocabulary associated with this section is fragmented by nature and only present to illustrate the grammatical concepts; vocabulary required for day-to-day conversation is left to §G3.

Some preliminary notes:

- The articles “the” and “a” do not exist in Japanese.
- Japanese does not distinguish between a future action and a general statement (e.g. “I will go to the store” vs. “I go to the store”).

### G2.1 Building clauses and sentences

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

**Essential clause elements** are necessary parts of any clause. In 日本語, the only essential clause element is the **predicate**, which is the information about the subject (which is often omitted if clear from context). Concretely, the predicate is either a clause-trailing verb (e.g. 「食べる。」 is a complete sentence) or an [implied] state-of-being (e.g. 「学生[だ]。」 is a complete sentence). In contrast, in English, both subject and predicate are essential to every valid clause.

**Non-essential clause elements** add complexity to the conveyed meaning. There are multiple:

- An **object** is the element of a clause acted upon by a transitive verb (§G2.7.1). It is suffixed by を, the object marker particle.

A **direct object** is the person or thing that directly receives the action or effect of the verb. It answers the question “what” or “whom”. (**CAUTION:** Using the “The subject verbed what?” as a test for transitivity is **not foolproof** and doesn’t always work! It’s merely a crutch. This is because certain verbs that are purely transitive in English can be expressed intransitively in Japanese (and vice versa). An **indirect object** answers the question “for what”, “of what”, “to what”, “for whom”, “of whom”, or “to whom” and accompanies a direct object. (Source)

E.g. お寿司を作る。 (Make sushi.)

- A **subject** is the entity that controls the verb in a clause. It is suffixed by が, the subject marker particle.

E.g. お父さんがお寿司を作る。 (My father makes sushi.)

- A **topic**. This is NOT to be confused with a subject. In English. It is suffixed by は, the topic-binding particle. For further details, see §G2.2.

E.g. 毎週日曜日はお父さんがお寿司を作る。 (Every Sunday, my father makes sushi.; 日曜日: Sunday.)

- An **adverbial** provides information about the circumstances surrounding a sentence, such as the who, what, when, where, why and how. It is suffixed by the に and で particles.

E.g. 毎週日曜日はお父さんが台所でお寿司を作る。 (Every Sunday, my father makes sushi in the kitchen.; 台所: kitchen.)

- A sentence final particle adds nuance to the sentence. の adds an explanatory nuance (§G2.10.4). よ adds an informational nuance (§G2.12). ね adds an agreement-expecting nuance (§G2.12).

E.g. 毎週日曜日はお父さんが台所でお寿司を作るの。(Every Sunday, my father makes sushi in the kitchen.)

Japanese is primarily an SOV language, but this order is fluid and can be switched up to convey different emphases. We may bring parts-of-speech forwards to the beginning of sentences for emphasis. We may bring parts-of-speech backwards to the end of sentences to tuck away and de-emphasise information. This is possible due to the case-marking particles.

Complex sentences can be formed by linking clauses using **conjunctive particles** (e.g. から (therefore), ので, けど, なら), which makes the connection (e.g. the therefore relationship) more explicit, or the **conjugation** of verbs and い-adjectives (e.g. the てる form), which de-emphasises the connection. Apart from linking clauses, **embedding clauses** is also possible, typically used via **direct quotation** (using optional 「」 marks, or ～と言いました (said).), **indirect quotation** (using ～と思う; the と particle acts like a spoken quotation mark) and **noun modification by adjective-clauses**.

## G2.2 Topics vs. subjects: は、が particles

(Read discussion on [Reddit](#), and Tofugu pages for [clauses and sentences](#), [は](#), [が](#), and [their differences](#).)

### G2.2.1 Subject as part-of-speech, topic as meta-concept

The subject and topic of a sentence is hard to distinguish from an English perspective, since in English, the subject is also the topic by default. However, in Japanese, they are not necessarily the same. Whereas the subject can change from clause to clause, the topic can remain the same across numerous clauses (spanning a phrase, sentence or even paragraph). Note that the topic is not a grammatical part-of-speech! The topic is the theme of discourse.

### G2.2.2 は particle: the topic marker

は roughly translates to “as for” in English, but is used far more often than “as for”.

は casts **focus/spotlight on a topic**, and **implicitly conveys the idea that other potential topics are cast aside**. This strength of this **implicit contrast** depends on context and usage, specifically how unusual it is to see は used in place of case-marking particles. Here is an illustration of the implicit contrast:

- コーヒーを飲みますか? The を particle singles out coffee as the object (which the verb 飲み acts upon) of the question.
- コーヒーは飲みますか? The は particle shines the spotlight on coffee, but implies the existence of other drinks. The speaker may be talking about other drinks, then moved the conversation to coffee. The speaker may want to offer coffee but imply the availability of other options.

The topic is always something already in the listener’s consciousness. Therefore, in clauses containing は, emphasis is placed on the new information following the particle は.

Here are its various purposes:

**は as a topic marker** Suffixed to a noun-phrase which is the intended topic.

Examples (topic is bolded):

- 日本語は面白い。(Japanese is interesting.)

- これは何ですか？ (What's this?; なに is known from context; “this”)
- <sup>なつ</sup>夏は日本へ行くつもりです。 (I plan to go to Japan in the summer.; つもり: plan/intention; the speaker assumed that the listener doesn't know that they were planning to go to Japan.)

日本へ行くのはいつですか？ (When is it that you're going to Japan?; の turns the verb into a noun-phrase; いつ: when)

**は for contrasting two topics** This happens when two (or more) topics are used in the same sentence.

Examples (topic is bolded):

- E.g. **東京**は物価が高いけど、**田舎**は物価が安い。 (Tokyo has a high cost of living, but the countryside has a low cost of living.; 物価: cost of living; 田舎: countryside; 安い: cheap.)
- E.g. **お肉**は食べないけど、**魚**は食べるよ。 (I don't eat meat, but I do eat fish.)

If the effect of contrast isn't required, then が is usually used instead:

- E.g. **東京**が物価が高い。 (The cost of living of Tokyo is high.)
- E.g. **お肉**は食べない。 (I don't eat meat, (but...))

**は in middle of negative い-adjectives to add implicit/explicit nuance/spotlight** The added nuance is like that of “while”/“although”/“that's not the whole story”, and the clause containing は X い is typically followed by a clause adding continuation (though not compulsory, if the nuance's content is implied).

E.g. 日本語は難しくない。 (Japanese is not difficult.)

E.g. 日本語は難しく**はない**[けど、ただ時間がかかる]。 (It's not (exactly) difficult, it's just time-consuming.; かかる: take a resource)

E.g. 日本語は難しく**はありませんか**、時間がかかります。 (It's not (exactly) difficult, it's just time-consuming.; formal language)

E.g. 日本語は難しく**はある**けど、面白い。 (It is difficult, but it's also fun.; ある: exist, opposite of ない)

**は in middle of negative nouns and な-adjectives to add implicit/explicit nuance/spotlight** Similar effect to the above.

E.g. 有名**ではない**[が、人気はある]。 (They're not (exactly) famous, but they are popular.; 有名: famous; 人気: popularity; They're not exactly famous, but they are popular.)

E.g. 先生**ではありませんが**、説明が上手な人です。 (They're not (actually) a teacher, but they are really good at explaining things.)

人気 is a noun that is typically used as 人気がある or 人気がない. 人気じゃない is possible, means the same thing, but is colloquial.

These are examples of the **compound particle** では.

**は incompatible with question words, but commonly used in answers** は cannot be suffixed to question words like 誰, 何 and どこ (except special circumstances). The topic is always something that is already in the listener's consciousness: it isn't unknown! Instead, question words are suffixed by が, を, etc. depending on their role in the sentence.

It is however common to answer such questions は to establish the now known topic.

E.g. 誰がいましたか？ (Who was there?)

E.g. 誰が<sup>やまだ</sup>山田さんですか？山田さんはあの人です。(Who is Yamada-san? That's Yamada-san.)

**は suffix in compound particles to add implicit/explicit nuance/spotlight** When forming compound particles, は cannot be suffixed to も, が or を.

- は can either “replace” に or become には.

E.g. 日本に<sup>い</sup>行ったことがある。(I've been to Japan; neutral statement.)

E.g. 日本[に]は行ったことがある。(I've been to Japan; + implicit comparison with other countries, perhaps I've never been to those.) (は is more casual than には.)

E.g. 台<sup>だいどころ</sup>所<sup>いぬ</sup>で犬<sup>ほ</sup>が吠えています。(The dog is barking in the kitchen; neutral statement.)

E.g. 台所<sup>ほ</sup>では犬が吠えています。(The dog is barking in the kitchen; + implicit comparison with other locations.)

E.g. 弟<sup>おとうと</sup>と映画館<sup>えいが かん</sup>に行きました。(I went to the movies with my younger brother; neutral statement.)

E.g. 弟<sup>おとうと</sup>とは映画館に行きました。(I went to the movies with my younger brother; with focus cast on brother, and implicit nuance that we don't know who else I did or didn't go with.)

**は to convey hesitation** Usually prefixed to ね to form the compound particle はね in such scenarios.

E.g. お寿司は[ね]... (Hmm, sushi...)

**は for changing scenes** The speaker can intentionally break the conversation's storyline or momentum to emphasise something. This is done by repeating and re-shining the spotlight on the topic, even though it's already obvious to the listener.

E.g. 昨日<sup>きのう</sup>は<sup>お兄ちゃん</sup>が勉強を教えてくれた。まず、英語の勉強を教えてくれて、それから<sup>こくご</sup>国語の勉強だった。でも、算数<sup>さんすう</sup>の宿題<sup>しゅくだい</sup>をしている途中<sup>とちゅう</sup>に、お兄ちゃんはゲームを始めた。(Yesterday, my big brother helped me study. To start with, he helped me with English, and then with Japanese. But he started playing a game while we were in the middle of doing my math homework; focus/topic shifted from brother teaching to brother playing game.)

**Softening implicit comparison with comma 、 (in writing only)** This is commonly done with time phrases such as 来週<sup>らいしゅう</sup>、先月<sup>せんげつ</sup>、今年<sup>ことし</sup>.

E.g. 今年<sup>ことし</sup>、日本に行くんです。(This year I'm going to Japan.)

E.g. 日本語、面白い。(Japanese is interesting.)

E.g. 少し、食べました。(I ate a little.)

Note that は is NOT a case-marking particle, whose job is to mark the grammatical role an element plays in a sentence. Instead, it binds a sentence to some known context. “は tells us nothing about the grammatical role the item it marks plays in a sentence, it only establishes that item as the context under which the rest of the sentence holds true. So any word or phrase can become the topic, regardless of whatever grammatical role it plays otherwise. So the topic can be the subject, or the topic can be the direct object, or the topic can be the indirect object, or an adverb, etc. The topic can be anything.”

Also note that は cannot be used in adjective phrases if there is no contrast involved:

- ジェニー[の/が/は]落ちた学校に私は受かった。(I was accepted by the school that Jenny failed to get into.)
- ジェニー[の/が]落ちた学校にわたしも落ちた。(は is illegal here because there is no contrast!)

### G2.2.3 が particle

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

が is simply the grammatical subject marker particle. が is suffixed to noun phrases. It “points a finger at” the subject of a sentence, and implicitly puts emphasis on that subject (making it clear nothing else is the subject).

E.g. あの犬[が]吠えた。(That dog barked.)

E.g. 誰か[が]いる。(Someone’s here.)

E.g. この納豆[が]おいしい。(This natto is delicious.)

The subject is often omitted if clear. In fact, inclusion of the subject in cases where it’s usually omitted brings about a kind of emphasis (e.g. “Did our dog do something to you? *Your* dog barked.”).

Sometimes, が itself is omitted instead, especially in spoken context. There is no change to the level of emphasis. This is up to personal preference. However, if the clause carries the meaning of singling out a particular member from a crowd, then が cannot be omitted: ジェニー **が** 犯人だ。

## G2.3 Prelude: Basic grammatical structures

Conjugation is the change in **verb** or **い-adjective** form to fit contexts.

- うん、ううん: informal yes/no
- でも: but

## G2.4 Expressing state-of-being

There is no “to be” (is, are, was, were, am) in Japanese.

- だ: declarative/assertive present state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.

An “assertive” marker. Using it without a communicative particle like よ or ね would sound standoff-ish and abrupt (i.e. rude) in spoken Japanese. A sentence ending with だ wouldn’t sound like something that’s used in an actual conversation, and is only natural in select cases:

- ▶ inside of indirect quotations (when paraphrasing what someone else said).

E.g. 人間は火星に住めないと思う。(I don’t think that humans can live on Mars.)

E.g. 近所の人から桜が満開だと教えてもらった。(A neighbour told me that the cherry blossoms were in full bloom.)

- ▶ when you find or notice something

E.g. あ、[雪/雨/虹]だ! (Ah, it’s snowing/a rainbow!)

E.g. あ、電話だ。(Ah, it’s my phone.)

- ▶ when you feel strongly about something

E.g. 有名なアイドルのこと写真撮ったんだ！ (I took a picture with a famous idol! 撮る: to take a picture, variant of 取る.)

E.g. 本当だ！ (It's true!)

E.g. はあ、明日は漢字のテストだ。 (Ahh, there is a Kanji test tomorrow.)

- じゃない: negative present state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.
- だった: past state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.
- じゃなかった: negative past state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.

E.g. 元気？元気[だ]。 (Greeting and response)

E.g. 元気じゃない / 元気だった / 元気じゃなかった。

## G2.5 Starter particles は、も、が

For は and が, see §G2.2.

- は: introductory topic marker “as for/about”, suffixed to the topic you’re introducing.

Unless you’re making a comparison, you usually do not use more than one は in a sentence (see discussion on [StackOverflow](#)).

E.g. アリスは学生？うん、学生。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, I am.)

E.g. 今日は試験だ。ジョンは？ジョンは明日。 (Today is exam. What about John? His exam is tomorrow.)

- も: inclusive topic marker (“also”), suffixed to the topic you’re including.

E.g. アリスは学生？うん、トムも学生。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, and Tom is a student too.)

E.g. アリスは学生？うん、でもトムは学生じゃない。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, but Tom is not a student.; **it is incorrect to use も here, as it is not inclusive with the positive state-of-being!**)

E.g. アリスは学生？ううん、トムも学生じゃない。 (Alice, are you a student? Nope, and Tom is also not a student.)

- が: identifier/subject marker “the one”, suffixed to a question or the identified. Used when the topic is unknown, and you are either asking for what the topic is, or identifying what the topic is.

E.g. 誰が学生？私が学生。 (Who the one student? Me the one student.)

## G2.6 Adjectives

Adjectives (adjective phrases) modify a noun that comes after it.

- な-adjectives: act like nouns and use the same particle rules as in §G2.5. Use な to directly modify the noun that comes after な, only in the present-positive case.

E.g. 静かな人、きれいな人。 (Quiet person, pretty person.)

E.g. 友達は親切。 (Friend is kind.) 友達は親切な人だ。 (Friend is kind person.)

E.g. ボブは何が好き[じゃない/だった/じゃなかった]? (What does/doesn't/did/didn't Bob like?) ボブは魚が好き[だ/じゃない/だった/じゃなかった]。(Bob likes/doesn't like/liked/didn't like fish.)

E.g. 魚が[好きな/好きじゃない/好きだった/好きじゃなかった]人。(Person that likes/does not like/liked/did not like fish.) The entire clause before 人 is an adjective.

E.g. 魚が好きじゃない人は、肉が好きだ。(Person who doesn't like fish likes meat.)\ E.g. 魚が好きな人は、野菜も好きだ。(Person who likes fish also likes wild vegetables.)

- い-adjectives: always end with 平仮名「い」 that is not part of a 漢字 word's pronunciation: it must literally be a 平仮名「い」. As examples, 好き、きれい (綺麗)、きらい (嫌い) are all not い-adjectives; they are な-adjectives. 嫌い being a な-adjective has to do with 嫌い being derived from the verb 嫌う. **REVISIT FUTURE**

Do not attach the だ suffix to い-adjectives, just as you don't use だ with じゃない。な is not applicable for い-adjectives: there is no need for any attachments.

E.g. 値段<sup>ねだん</sup>が高い<sup>たか</sup>レストランはあまり好きじゃない。(I **don't really** like expensive restaurants.)<sup>2</sup>

Regarding conjugation, one い-adjective family is an exception: いい. Historically, the word for good changed over time from 良<sup>よ</sup>い to いい, but conjugations are still take 良<sup>よ</sup>い as the base. Same applies to 格<sup>かつ</sup>好<sup>こ</sup>いい, which takes 格<sup>かつ</sup>好<sup>こ</sup>良<sup>よ</sup>い as the base.

Table 3 shows the conjugations and usage syntax for な- and い- adjectives.

Table 3: Adjective conjugations. I purposely use よかった instead of 良かった (and their variants) here to show that you can use either; it's up to personal preference. I personally prefer the use of 漢字 (i.e. 良かった) because it can be more specific and it's easier to read (in that at a glance, it's easier to derive meaning from 漢字's widely varying word shapes, compared to a sea of 平仮名 characters). **Note however that 良<sup>よ</sup>い is usually written in 仮名 alone when used as part of conjugations, as in this table.**

	Positive	Negative
Present	<na-adj>な<nn>	<na-adj>じゃない<nn>
	<i-adj root>い <nn>	<i-adj root>くない <nn>
	いい <nn>	よくない <nn>
	かっこいい <nn>	かっこよくない <nn>
Past	<na-adj>だった<nn>	<na-adj>じゃなかった<nn>
	<i-adj root>かった <nn>	<i-adj root>くなかった<nn>
	よかった <nn>	よくなかった<nn>
	かっこよかった <nn>	かっこよくなかった <nn>

## G2.7 Verbs

Read the main article regarding verb classes and conjugations on [Tofugu](#).

<sup>2</sup>あまり is typically used as an intensifier modifier for *negative* adjectives: “don't really, 25-50%”. It can also be used as a modifier for positive adjectives, “excessive”, but in those cases it must be trailing: 食べる<sup>が</sup>あまり、悲しさのあまり。(MT)



Verbs always come at the end of clauses.

Verbs are categorised into three groups, as shown in Table 4. Be flexible: all these terms are used in different textbooks and dictionaries. Thankfully, they are easy to remember, along with the observation that there are way more Group I verbs than Group II verbs, and there are only two Group III verbs (or up to a dozen, depending on how you count them).<sup>3</sup>

Table 4: Verb classifications. \*There isn't a Japanese term for exception verbs; する and 来る are the only members of the 不規則動詞 subclass.

	Group 1	Group 2	Group 3
	Pentagrade verb ごだんどうし 五段動詞	Monograde verb いちだんどうし 一段動詞	Irregular verb ふきそくどうし 不規則動詞*
Synonyms	Godan verb	Ichidan verb	Special class
	Group I verb	Group II verb	Group III verb
	う-verb	る-verb	Exception verb
	Consonant-root/stem verb	Vowel-root/stem verb	-

In a nutshell, **る-verbs is the class of almost all -iru/-eru verbs**. Exceptions include 帰る、切る、知る which are う-verbs.

Conjugations for verbs are the most complicated among all parts-of-speech, and are shown in Table 6.

The reason for the class names are as such:

- う-verbs all end with the ～う sound. As う-verbs conjugate, the ending ～う sound shifts through all five vowels ～あ (negative)、～い (polite)、～う (dict)、～え (potential)、～お (volitional), thus the name 五段 (five-level).

Conjugation of verbs occurs at the phonological level (sounds of the language), which transcends the abilities of the orthography. The **root/stem** of verbs stops at the terminal consonant, thus the name consonant-root/stem. (E.g. the root of 聞く is /kik/ and this remains unchanged through conjugations!)

- る-verbs all end with the る character. As る-verbs conjugate, the る character is replaced for other endings. The **root/stem** (the part before the る ending) remains unchanged through conjugations and doesn't cycle through the five vowels, thus the name 一段 (one-level). The root/stem stops at the terminal vowel, thus the name vowel-root/stem. (E.g. the root of 食べる is /tabe/ and this remains unchanged through conjugations!)

Since there is no consensus on the definitions of root/stem, I'll use "root" to refer to /kik/, and "stem" to refer to the stem form 聞き.

### G2.7.1 Transitive and intransitive verbs

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

A **transitive verb** takes a direct object, while an **intransitive verb** does not take a direct object. A **direct object** is the person or thing that directly receives the action or effect of the

<sup>3</sup>Mnemonic I'm using: Group I is the most superior; 五段 is superior to 一段; う comes before る in the 平仮名 alphabet chart.

verb. It answers the question “what” or “whom”. (**CAUTION:** Using the “The subject verbed what?” as a test for transitivity is **not foolproof** and doesn’t always work! It’s merely a crutch. This is because certain verbs that are purely transitive in English can be expressed intransitively in Japanese (and vice versa). An **indirect object** answers the question “for what”, “of what”, “to what”, “for whom”, “of whom”, or “to whom” and accompanies a direct object.} (Source)

Some verbs have two forms: transitive and intransitive. These two forms sometimes have different pronunciations. I guess it comes down to experience. Examples shown in Table 5.

There are no easy tricks to tell whether a verb is transitive or not. There are no simple rules that say a particular 送り仮名 implies a certain transitivity. Japanese verbs are a mess!

**DO NOT** confuse transitivity with passiveness. English dictionaries like to define verbs using the “to ...” construct, and this is carried over to English-Japanese dictionaries. Intransitive verbs are often defined using passive voice, but

passive voice  $\nRightarrow$  verb is intransitive  
verb is intransitive  $\nRightarrow$  passive voice

A counterexample to the first implication is “The apple was eaten.”. Here, “eat” is transitive (the direct object is the apple, and the subject, now oblique/non-obligatory, is omitted)! A counterexample to the second implication is “I slept”. Here, “sleep” is intransitive, and active voice is used.

Thus we can’t use the passive voice as a marker for intransitivity. In fact, in Japanese, the passive voice has a conjugation of its own, which applies for both transitive and intransitive verbs (yes, intransitive verbs in Japanese can take passive voice too, §G4.1.2). Take special care NOT to interpret the passive voice “to be ...” (endemic to English definitions) in §GA.1.4 as equivalent to intransitivity. **Transitivity and passiveness are intertwined (SL) but remain independent concepts.**

In fact, in English only and not in Japanese, the converse of the two implications above are true, because intransitive verbs do not have a passive form, due to the lack of objects (and thus no object to promote to subject role, which is part of passivisation).

passive voice  $\Rightarrow$  verb is transitive  
verb is intransitive  $\Rightarrow$  active voice

(In fact these two are now contrapositives, i.e. they convey the same meaning.)

Table 5: Example transitive verbs and their intransitive counterparts.

Transitive	Meaning	Intransitive	Meaning
起こす	to pick up	起きる	to rise
落とす	to drop	落ちる	to fall
入れる	to put in	入る	to enter/go in
出す	to take out	出る	to exit/come out
開ける	to open	開く	to open
閉める	to close	閉まる	to close
つける	to turn on (lights/appliance)	つく	to turn on (lights/appliance)

Transitive	Meaning	Intransitive	Meaning
消す <sup>け</sup>	to turn off (lights/appliance)	消える <sup>き</sup>	to turn off (lights/appliance)
刺す <sup>さ</sup>	to pierce	刺さる <sup>さ</sup>	to pierce
抜く <sup>ぬ</sup>	to pull out/extract	抜ける <sup>ぬ</sup>	to fall out/extract

## G2.8 Nouns, adjectives, verbs conjugation summary

Table 6 shows all the conjugation rules we've seen so far.

Table 6: Basic conjugation rules, for nouns, adjectives and verbs. [] means optional; 「」 is a dictionary-form placeholder; green means additive (without modifying the dictionary-form); blue means substitutive (modifies the dictionary-form); red means exception.

Category	Positive		Negative		Examples
	Present	Past	Present	Past	
Noun/な-adjective	「」 [だ]	「」 だった	「」 じゃない	「」 じゃなかった	学生、友達
な-adjective	「」 な	「」 だった	「」 じゃない	「」 じゃなかった	元気、綺麗、好き、嫌い
い-adjective	「」 い	「」 かった	「」 くない	「」 くなかった	嬉しい、気持ち悪い、難しい
	いい	よかった	よくない	よくなかった	
	かっこいい	かっこよかった	かっこよくない	かっこよくなかった	
う-verb	「」 す	「」 した	「」 さない	「」 さなかった	話す、出す
	「」 く	「」 いた	「」 かない	「」 かなかった	聞く、書く、描く
	行く	行った	行かない	行かなかった	
	「」 ぐ	「」 いだ	「」 がない	「」 がなかった	泳ぐ
	「」 む	「」 んだ	「」 まない	「」 まなかった	飲む、読む、盗む
	「」 ね	「」 んだ	「」 ない	「」 なかった	死ぬ
	「」 ぶ	「」 んだ	「」 ばない	「」 ばなかった	遊ぶ
	「」 る	「」 った	「」 らない	「」 らなかった	知る、切る、帰る、走る、降る
	ある	あった	ない	なかった	
	「」 つ	「」 った	「」 たない	「」 たなかった	待つ
	「」 う	「」 った	「」 わない	「」 わなかった	買う、会う
	る-verb	「」 る	「」 ない	「」 なかった	いる、食べる、出る、見る*
Exception verb	「」 する	「」 した	「」 しない	「」 しなかった	勉強する、楽しみにする、質問をする
	来る	来た	来ない	来なかった	

## G2.9 Verb particles を、に、へ、で

- を: direct object marker, suffixed to the target object of transitive verbs.

E.g. 魚を食べる。(Eat fish.)

E.g. ジュースを飲んだ。(Drank juice.)

Direct objects can be **places** in Japanese too, since the motion verb is done *to* the place. This is the only exception where を can be used for intransitive verbs. <location>を<motion verb> expresses the meaning that the motion verb is performed to traverse the location.

E.g. 街をぶらぶら歩く。(Aimlessly walk through town.; ぶらぶら: aimlessly, 歩く: walk (intransitive)).

E.g. 高速道路を走る。(Run through expressway.; 走る: run (intransitive))

**Invisible を in <noun>を**する: する (do) can be suffixed to nouns, and the を while technically needed, is optional.

E.g. 毎日、日本語を勉強をする。(Study Japanese everyday.; 勉強をする)

E.g. メールアドレスを登録<sup>とうろく</sup>した。(Registered email address.; 登録<sup>とうろく</sup>する)

- に: target marker, suffixed to the target (physical or abstract) of any verb (transitive or non-transitive). The target is emphasised as the final destination. The notion of a “target” is not restricted to motion verbs; the location of objects is the target of the verbs for existence (ある and いる); time (e.g. today, last week) is also a common target.

% E.g. ボブは日本に行った。(Bob went to Japan.)

E.g. 家<sup>いえ</sup>に帰らない。(Not go back home.; 家<sup>いえ</sup> means home, 家<sup>うち</sup> means own home.)

% E.g. 部屋<sup>へや</sup>に来る。(Come to room.)

E.g. 椅子<sup>いす</sup>が台所<sup>だいどころ</sup>にあった。(Chair was in the kitchen.)

E.g. 猫は部屋にいる。(Cat is in room.)

E.g. いい友達<sup>ともだち</sup>に会<sup>あ</sup>った。(Met good friend; past tense of 会<sup>あ</sup>う.)

E.g. ジムは医者<sup>いしや</sup>になる。(Jim will become doctor; なる: become)

E.g. 先週<sup>せんしゅう</sup>に図書館<sup>としょかん</sup>に行った。(Went to library last week.)

When suffixed to time, に is not always required. Its presence emphasises a “promise” element to the target. To remove this emphasis, use 「、」 instead.

E.g. 友達<sup>ともだち</sup>は、来年<sup>らいねん</sup>に日本に行く。(Friend go to Japan next year.)

To mean “from”, use the 「から」 from-marker particle.

E.g. アリスは、アメリカ<sup>き</sup>から来た。(Alice came from America.; past tense of 来る<sup>くる</sup>)

The start and end can be specified with 「<from>から<to>まで」.

E.g. 宿題<sup>しゅくだい</sup>を今日<sup>けふ</sup>から明日<sup>あした</sup>までする。(cWill do homework from today to tomorrow.)

- へ: direction marker, suffixed to direction of verbs (transitive or non-transitive). Pronounced え. Unlike に, which specifies target/destination, へ specifies the general direction we’re heading towards, from the starting point. Also, unlike に, it does not guarantee that the target is the final destination. へ is restricted to verbs with a physical direction (in the physical or abstract sense) like 行く、来る、向かう; verbs like なる (become) have no direction associated with it and so clauses containing なる as the trailing verb cannot use へ!

E.g. 部屋<sup>へや</sup>{に/\*へ\*}来る。(Come {towards/to} room.)

E.g. 勝ち<sup>かち</sup>へ向かう。(Go towards victory.)

- で: context marker; “by way of”. It provides supplementary context: where, what, how.

E.g. 映画館<sup>えいがかん</sup>で見た。(Saw at movie theatre.)

E.g. バスで帰る。(Go home by bus.)

E.g. レストランで昼<sup>ひる</sup>ご飯を食べた。(Ate lunch at restaurant.)

Note that を can only be used with transitive verbs, unless the direct object is the **location** of an intransitive motion verb, as mentioned above when introducing 「を」.

E.g. 私が電気<sup>でんき</sup>をつけた。(I turned on the lights; past tense of つける)

E.g. 電気<sup>け</sup>を消す。(Turn off the lights.)

E.g. 電気がついた。(The lights turned on; **incorrect to use を here as つく is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent**)

E.g. 電気が消えた。(The lights turned off; past tense of 消える; **incorrect to use を here as 消える is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent**)

E.g. 誰が窓を開けた? (Who opened the window?; 窓: window)

E.g. 窓がどうして開いた? (Why did the window open?; past tense of 開く; **incorrect to use を here as 開く is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent**)

E.g. 部屋を出た。(past tense of 出る)

### G2.9.1 なにで and なんで in questions

“What” is expressed as **なに**. “Why” is expressed as どうして (proper)、なぜ (forceful/formal)、**なん****で** (colloquial). Note that **なん****で** has nothing to do with the で particle; it is a completely separate word.

When asking a question as a speaker, use the correct one: なにで for “what”, and なんで for “why”. When reading written text, obtain context from the answer. **As a general rule of thumb, asking why (なんで) is much more common.**

E.g. 何で来た? バスで来た。(Came by way of what? Came by way of bus.) (So in this case, the question is read なにで来た?)

E.g. 何で来た? 暇だから。(Why did you come? Because I am free.) (So in this case, the question is read なんで来た?)

Note that だから here has got nothing to do with から as in “from”, we’ll see this later in compound sentences (§G3.6.3).

### G2.9.2 Compound particles には、にも、へは、へも、では、でも to set location topic

に、へ、で can be suffixed with は/も to set the topic/inclusive topic when the location becomes a topic.

E.g. 学校に行った? 行かなかった。図書館には? 図書館にも行かなかった。  
(Did you go to school? Didn't go. What about library? Also didn't go to library.)

E.g. どこで食べる? イタリアレストランでは思う? (Eat where? How about Italian restaurant?; 思う: think)

### G2.9.3 Particle は to set direct object topic

を cannot form compound particles. To set direct object as topic, simply use は.

E.g. 日本語{を/は}習う。(Learn Japanese.; **It is incorrect to use をは; that compound particle doesn't exist.**)

## G2.10 Noun modification

な-adjectives and い-adjectives can be used to modify a following noun, using “connectors” like {な、じゃない、だった、じゃなかった} and {の、くない、かった、くなかった} respectively.

Verbs and nouns too can be used to modify a following noun.

### G2.10.1 Relative verb clauses as adjectives: verbs modifying following nouns

Relative verb clauses (verb phrases) can be directly used to modify nouns.

- (present-positive) ボブは、いつも勉強する人だ。(Bob is a person who always studies.)
- (present-negative) 赤いズボンを買った友達はボブだ。(Friend who buy red pants is Bob.;  
ズボン: pants)
- (past-positive) 先週に映画を見た人は誰？(Who is person who watched movie last week?)
- (past-negative) 晩ご飯を食べなかった人は、映画で見た銀行に行った。(Person who did not  
eat dinner went to the bank she saw at the movie.)

### G2.10.2 Noun chain

A string of present-positive nouns is grammatically correct only if they are not meant to modify each other.

E.g. 国際教育センタ (International Education Centre)、登場人物 (stage character)、立入禁止  
(no entry/trespassing)、通勤手当 (travel allowance).

### G2.10.3 Noun phrases as adjectives: nouns modifying following nouns

Present-positive modifiers require noun-related particles (と、や、とか、の, see §G2.10.4). The other three tenses (present-negative, past-positive, past-negative) can directly modify nouns without any additional particle.

- (present-negative) 学生じゃない人は、学校に行かない。(Person who is not a student do not go to school.)
- (past-positive) 先週医者だったボブは、仕事を辞めた。(Bob who was a doctor last week quit his job.)
- (past-negative) 友達じゃなかったアリスは、いい友達になった。(Alice who was not a friend, became a good friend.)

### G2.10.4 Noun-related particles と、や、とか、の

Noun-related particles are used to connect nouns together.

- と: inclusive noun connector (exclusive listing or together-with). It is used *between nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun*. It is similar to 「も」 in terms of *inclusivity*. It can also be used to show an action was done together with something or someone.

E.g. 本と雑誌と葉書を買った。(Bought book, magazine and postcard.)

E.g. 友達と話した。(Talked with friend.)

E.g. 先生と会った。(Met with teacher.)

- や: noun vague listing connector. Similar to と, it is used *between nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun*, with the implied meaning that the list is non-exhaustive, and some items on the list may not apply. In English, this is like the “and/or, etc.” constructs.

E.g. 飲み物やカップやナプキンは、いらない？(You don't need (things like) drink, cup, or napkin, etc.?.; present-negative of いる as in 要る)

E.g. 靴やシャツを買う。(Buy shoes and shirt, etc.)

- とか: vague listing particle (colloquial). Used exactly like や but in informal settings. It is used *between nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun*.

E.g. 飲み物とかカップとかナプキンは、いらない？(You don't need (things like) drink, cup, or napkin, etc.?.; present-negative of いる as in 要る)

E.g. 靴<sup>くつ</sup>とかシャツを買う。(Buy shoes and shirt, etc.)

- の: possession marker, generic noun, or explanatory particle. The の particle has three uses:

**Possession marker** <Owner>の<ownee>. Can refer to hierarchical classifications too.

E.g. ボブの本。(Book of Bob).

E.g. 本<sup>ほん</sup>のボブ。(Bob of book; probably a mistake.)

E.g. ボブは、アメリカの大学の学生だ。(Bob is student of college of America.)

The ownee (noun that is modified) may be omitted if clear from context.

E.g. そのシャツは誰の~~シャツ~~? ボブの~~シャツ~~だ。(Whose shirt is that shirt? It is the shirt of Bob.)

Note that この、その、あの are abbreviations of この、その、あの respectively.

**Generic noun (nominaliser)** The の particle can be suffixed to relative clauses (adjective-phrases and verb-phrases) to represent a generic noun, taking the place of an actual noun. This usage allows us to treat adjectives, adjective-phrases, verbs and verb-phrases as nouns using a の suffix. Then, particles applicable to nouns can be used as a suffix to the noun-phrase: は、も、が、を. Detailed uses are in §G2.10.6.

E.g. (な-adjectives) 静かなのが、アリスの部屋だ。(Quiet one is room of Alice.) (Note that the な cannot be dropped! All previous rules still apply.) 「静かな部屋が、アリスのだ。」 (“The quiet room is Alice’s.”) is also ok.

E.g. (い-adjectives) 白いのは、かわいい。(Thing that is white is cute.)

E.g. (verbs) 毎日勉強するのは大変。(Studying every day is tough.)

E.g. (verbs) 授業<sup>じゅぎょう</sup>に行くのを忘れた。(Forgot the event of going to class.)

E.g. (relative clause) 毎日同じ物を食べるのは、面白くない。(It’s not interesting to eat the same thing every day.)

Alternatively, 物<sup>もの</sup> and こと can be used for generic objects and events respectively, instead of の.

E.g. 白い物は、かわいい。(Thing that is white is cute.)

E.g. 授業<sup>じゅぎょう</sup>に行くことを忘れた。(Forgot the thing of going to class.)

Note that in the case of verbs/relative verb clauses (verb phrases), the plain form must be used; the polite ~ます form is wrong.

E.g. お父さんが買ったのは、バナナです。(The thing that dad bought, is a banana.; It is incorrect to use 買いました in place of 買った.)

The nominaliser の can be modified by prefixing theこそあど words (Japanese demonstratives). These are こんな、そんな、あんな、どんな and こういう、そういう、ああいう、どういう (this kind/that kind/that kind/what kind, respectively for both; we use the former set in more emphatic settings and the latter in more literal settings, see discussion on [StackOverflow](#)). These correspond to the pronouns これ、それ、あれ、どれ (this, that, that (far), which (between 3 or more)).

E.g. こんな<sup>この</sup>の要らないよ。(I don’t need things like this.)



E.g. **そういうのは、前もって教えてください。** (Please let me know things like that in advance.)

**Abstract noun/explanatory の** as a sentence-ending particle conveys an explanatory tone in responses, and explanation-seeking tone in questions. It represents the abstract noun “the thing is...”, and is believed to be an abbreviation of 「～のです」. の can also be used as a suffix to な-adjectives or state-of-being noun-phrases, though in those cases **なの** must be used in order to differentiate it from the possession marker or generic noun purposes of の. **One exception to this disambiguating function is な-adjectives: both generic noun and explanatory purposes use ～なの. Prefer ～なん{だ/です} for explanatory.**

E.g. <sup>いま</sup>今は<sup>いそが</sup>忙しい**の**?今は忙しい**の**[だ]。 (Is it that you are busy now? The thing is that I'm busy now.; 忙しい: busy; the absence of the trailing だ in the response is feminine; adult males add the だ in the response; **だ cannot be used in the question**)

E.g. ジム**のだ**。 (It belongs to Jim.)

E.g. ジム**なの**だ。 (It is Jim; with explanatory tone.)

This explanatory tone results in の being used in strong commands, explaining things you should or shouldn't do, or explaining parts of a procedure.

E.g. <sup>じゅぎょうちゅう</sup>授業中は、おしゃべりしない**の**! (Don't chat during class!; しゃべる: chat)

E.g. まずは、<sup>あら</sup>洗う**の**? (Do you clean first?) まずは、あらう**の**[です]。それで、きれいになったら、こうやって切る**の**[です]。 (First, clean it. Then, once it is clean, cut it like this; the 「です」, if dropped, causes the reply to become informal/childish/feminine.)

The の in sentence-end expressions are typically substituted by ん as it's easier to say (e.g. のだ → んだ). んだ is however also used with all forms of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, and has its own set of conjugation rules, as shown in Table 7.

E.g. ジム**なんだ**。 (It is Jim; with explanatory tone.)

Further examples with polite speech:

E.g. どうして<sup>おく</sup>遅れた**{の/ん}**ですか? (Why were you late?)

E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか?時間がなかった**{の/ん}**です。 (Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの?うん、時間がなかった**{の/のだ/んだ}**。 (You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

E.g. 私は学生**な{の/ん}**で、お金がない**ん**です。 (I am a student, therefore I have no money.)

E.g. ここは静か**な{の/ん}**で、とても<sup>おだ</sup>穏やかです。 (It is quiet here, therefore it is very calm here.)

E.g. **な{の/ん}**で、友達に会う時間がない。 (Therefore, there is no time to meet friend.; this omits the reason and thus the な is compulsory, see §G3.6.3)

For verbs, any form is usable (beyond {positive, negative} × {present, past}), except forms like the command form or the volitional form, which do not make sense for explanations. Also, the



polite verb form 「～ます」 and polite い-adjective form 「～です」 cannot be used with 「～んだ」; use the plain form. If you want to be polite, use 「～んです」.

の is used in formal settings and ん in informal settings. The first casual form attaches んだ to any tense of a noun/adjective/verb; the second casual form attaches んだ to the dictionary-form, then conjugating the だ. Both casual forms have slightly different nuances.

- の/のだ/のです/んだ/んです: these are simply the sentence-ending explanatory の particle.
- なんだった: used to express that you just remembered to do something, typically used with そういえば.

E.g. あ、そういえば出かける<sup>で</sup>なんだった。(Ah, that reminds me, I am going out.)

- んじゃない/んじゃありません: mildly slang, to prohibit or request that something not be done: “don’t, mustn’t”. The latter form is more formal, and used when the speaker wants to forbid something but not sound angry (e.g. adult talking to a child).

E.g. 馬鹿にする<sup>で</sup>んじゃない! (Don’t make fun of me!)

E.g. 嘘をつく<sup>で</sup>んじゃありません。(You shouldn’t lie.; 嘘をつく: to lie)

- んじゃなかった: mildly slang, to express nuance of regret/disappointment: “shouldn’t have”.

E.g. こんな安い車を買う<sup>で</sup>んじゃなかった。(I shouldn’t have bought a cheap car like this one.)

E.g. 食べる<sup>で</sup>んじゃなかった。(Shouldn’t have eaten it.)

Read more about these nuances at Sources [1](#), [2](#), [3](#).

Table 7: caption

の Purpose	Category	Dictionary form	Positive		Negative	
			Present	Past	Present	Past
Possession	Noun	「」	「」の[だ]”	「」のだった	「」のじゃない	「」のじゃなかった
Generic noun	な-adjective	「」	「」なの	「」だったの	「」じゃないの	「」じゃなかったの
	い-adjective/verb	「」	「」の	「」<conj>の	「」<conj>の	「」<conj>の
Explanatory	Noun/な-adjective	「」	「」なの[だ]”	「」だったの[だ]”	「」じゃないの[だ]”	「」じゃなかったの[だ]”
			「」なのです。	「」だったのです。	「」じゃないのです。	「」じゃなかったのです。
			「」なんだ。	「」だったんだ。	「」じゃないんだ。	「」じゃなかったんだ。
	い-adjective/verbs	「」	「」なんです。	「」だったんです。	「」じゃないんです。	「」じゃなかったんです。
			「」の[だ]”	「」<conj>の[だ]”	「」<conj>の[だ]”	「」<conj>の[だ]”
			「」のです。	「」<conj>のです。	「」<conj>のです。	「」<conj>のです。
Special	Noun/な-adjective	「」	「」んだ。	「」<conj>んだ。	「」<conj>んだ。	「」<conj>んだ。
			「」なんです。	「」<conj>んです。	「」<conj>んです。	「」<conj>んです。
	い-adjective/verbs	「」	「」なんだった。	「」なんだった。	「」なんじゃない。	「」なんじゃなかった。
					「」なんじゃありません。	「」なんじゃなかった。

Read the supplementary んだ (and んです) article on [Tofugu](#), if you need more clarification.

## G2.10.5 の particle I: the noun modifier (label maker)

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

Applicable schemae:

- <noun label>の[<noun labelled>]. The labelled can be omitted if clear from context. The label can be stacked.

E.g. 私の<sup>くるま</sup>[車]。

E.g. 犬のおもちゃ<sup>みせ</sup>の店。(おもちゃ: toy)

- <particle>の<noun labelled>.
  - ▶ への: “to” label. E.g. アメリカへの飛行機。 (Airplane bound for America.)
  - ▶ からの: “from” label. E.g. アメリカからの飛行機。 (Airplane from America.)
  - ▶ だけの: “only” label. E.g. 寝るだけの人生。 (A life of only sleeping.)
  - ▶ との: “quote” label. E.g. 「早く帰ってきてね！」とのメッセージ。 (A message saying “Come back soon!”.)

Here are its various purposes. Note that possession isn’t the only one!

の as possession marker <owner>の<ownee>.

E.g. 私の母。 (Ny mother.)

の as affiliation marker <affiliation>の<affiliated/position>. Typically used in business settings to show which organisation someone belongs to.

E.g. トーフグのキョーコです。 (This is Kyoko from Tofugu.)

E.g. 東京大学の教授。 (Professor at Tokyo university.)

の as “about” marker <about>の<labelled>.

E.g. バナナ[について]の{知識/研究}。 (について: regarding; used for disambiguation because バナナの研究 could mean research of someone named バナナ.)

の as location/time label Whereas with the に particle we needed to specify a verb after に, with the の particle the location/time is treated as a label for the main noun.

E.g. 朝五時のアラーム。 (The 5am alarm.)

の as “degree” marker This refers to labels indicating amount, quantity, price, size, etc.

E.g. 五十人のアメリカ人。 (Fifty American people.)

E.g. 四千円のマンゴー。 (A four-thousand yen mango.)

の as order/rank marker Things like first, second, third, etc.

E.g. 最初のテスト。 (First test.)

E.g. 世界一の温泉。 (World’s number one hot spring.)

の for apposition Apposition: the relationship between different words that mean the same thing.

E.g. フルーツのバナナ。 (The fruit, banana.)

E.g. 校長のスズキ先生。 (The principal, Suzuki Sensei.)

の as materials/ingredients marker Typically used in menus to indicate ingredients used in dishes.

E.g. アサリの味噌汁。 (Miso soup with clam.)

E.g. プラスチックのカップ。 (Plastic cup.)

の as a replacement for な for の-adjectives (compared to な-adjectives) Adjective-like nouns like 普通 and 久しぶり take の when modifying nouns.

E.g. 普通の車。 (Normal car.)

E.g. 久しぶりの再会。 (long-awaited reunion)

**の as a replacement for が in relative clauses** Relative clauses are clauses that precede and modify nouns.

For further elaboration on の-adjectives, see §G2.10.7.

E.g. カナエ{が、の}作ったネックレス。(The necklace Kanae made.)

## G2.10.6 の particle II: the nominaliser

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

Basic usage is as in the initial description of の earlier, under “generic noun” and “explanatory”. This section covers the various contexts in which we use の to nominalise other parts-of-speech:

**Non-physical things** の can turn immaterial things like events, ideas, facts, and thoughts (expressed as embedded clauses ending with verbs) into nouns. These are covered under the nominaliser こと.

E.g. 一人でトイレに行った{こと/の}が、よく思い出せない。(I can't really remember having gone to the bathroom by myself; 思い出す: to recall.)

E.g. バック転できない{こと/の}が、悔しい。(I'm frustrated about not being able to backflip; できる: to be able to do.)

**Material things** の can turn adjective-phrases describing material things into nouns.

E.g. 甘いのが食べたい。(I want to eat sweet things.)

E.g. 昔飼っていたのは、犬です。(What I used to have as a pet was a dog; 昔: olden days; 飼う: to keep a pet)

E.g. そこにいるのは、誰ですか？(Who's there?)

**Time and location** の can turn clauses describing time or location of events (expressed as embedded clauses ending with verbs) into nouns. The resultant outer clause often contains elements indicating a particular time or location.

E.g. スーツケースが届くのは明日です。(The suitcase will be delivered tomorrow; 届く: to be delivered/arrive)

E.g. この町が美しかったのは、五十年前です。(This city was beautiful fifty years ago.)

E.g. 次のオリンピックが開催されるのは東京です。(The next olympics will be held in Tokyo; 開催する: to host an event)

E.g. 生まれたのはニューヨークです。(I was born in New York; 生まれる: to be born)

**Reason** の can be a placeholder for an explanation, similar to its sentence-ending explanatory usage.

E.g. アメリカに住みたいのは、英語の勉強がしたいからです。(The reason why I want to live in the U.S. is because I want to study English; したい: want to do; から: because (also means from))

E.g. そう思ったのは、なぜですか？(Why did you think so?)

**Listing** の can be used to *complainingly* list things (similar to the inclusive noun particle と and vague listing particle や, with the added complaining tone). When listing verbs, use ～

の. When listing nouns or な-adjectives, use **～だの** (not **なの!** That is for the explanatory usage.). while emphasising the similarity or contrast between items in a list.

E.g. レストランに行く**の**行かない**の**でもめた。(We argued over whether to go to a restaurant or not; もめる: to dispute)

E.g. テスト勉強**だ**の部活**だ**ので忙しいよ。(I'm busy with things like studying for exams and club activities.)

There is a special idiomatic pattern used to enthusiastically say that something is extraordinary. Take the same adjective and repeat it twice, once in the positive and once in the negative, using the **～の** suffix.

E.g. ポートランのピール、そりゃおいしい**の**、おいしくない**の**って！ (Beer in Portland is beyond delicious!; そりゃ is a variant of **それは** and both are adverbs meaning very/extremely) (Literally: Beer in Portland is not even a matter of delicious or not delicious.)

This can often also be expressed with another idiomatic expression **～のなんの**って (supplementary reading [here](#)).

E.g. ポートランのピール、美味しい**のなんの**って！ (Beer in Portland is beyond delicious!)

## G2.10.7 The adjective-noun spectrum: な-adjectives and の-adjectives

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

In short, **な** is used when you want to describe nouns, and **の** is used when you want to label nouns (e.g. **きれいな人** vs. **きれいの人** respectively).

Many な-adjectives exhibit this flexibility of converting between adjectives and nouns, based on whether they are suffixed by **な** or **の**. Linguists refer to な-adjectives as “*adjectival nouns*” or “*nominal adjectives*”.

There exists a adjective-noun spectrum for adjectives: some are suffixed with **な** more often, and others **の** more often. Table 8 provides examples.

Table 8: な/の-adjectives on the adjective-noun spectrum. い-adjectives do not apply.

な ≧ の	Meaning	な > の	Meaning	の > な	Meaning	の ≧ な	Meaning
好き	like	元気	well/fine	大量	large amount	少し	a little
簡単	simple	健康	health(y)	病気	illness/disease	本当	true/truth
大切	important	安全	safe(ty)	最高	best/highest	永遠	eternity
だめ	no good/not allowed	美人	beautiful woman	普通	normal/ordinary	最大	largest/maximum
静か	quiet	不思議	wonderful/miraculous	未定	to be decided/pending	最小	smallest/minimum
大変	very	平和	peace/harmony	独自	unique/original	たくさん	a lot
素敵	splendid	幸せ	happiness	最速	fastest	真実	truth/reality
勝手	selfish(ness)	不幸	misfortune/disaster	一流	first-class/top-ranking	一杯	one cup
複雑	complicated/complex	不安	anxiety/worry/fear	個別	individual/separate		
妙	strange	高級	premium/luxury	固有	characteristic/native		
正解	correct	平等	equality/impartiality	別	another/difference		
変	strange			無名	anonymous/nameless		
必要	necessary/needed			未知	unknown		
深刻	serious			少量	small amount		
困難	difficulty/hardship						
苦手	weak at/bad at						
危険	danger						
嫌い	disliked						
無理	impossible						

な > の	Meaning	な > の	Meaning	の > な	Meaning	の > な	Meaning
異常 (いじょう)	strange/abnormal						
正直 (しょうじき)	honest(ly)						
親切 (しんせつ)	kind/generous						
残酷 (ざんこく)	cruel						
有能 (ゆうのう)	competent						
冷静 (れいせい)	calm						
真剣 (しんけん)	serious						
慎重 (しんちょう)	cautious						

The different parts of the spectrum are described as follows:

- “な-adjectives”: the adjective side of the spectrum. These are frequently used to describe nouns, and are tagged as な-adjectives in many Japanese-English dictionaries.
- “の-adjectives”: the noun side of the spectrum. These are frequently used with the の suffix to form labels for nouns, and are tagged as の-adjectives in many Japanese-English dictionaries.

Words in this category are broadly divided into two groups: those that express absolutes (e.g. 本当、最大、最小) and those that express quantities (e.g. 少し、たくさん、少量、大量).

Those that express absolutes usually cannot take adverbs (there is no “little” absolute or “big” absolute; an absolute is a binary thing, either it’s absolute or not). Those that express quantities can.

E.g. 昨日<sup>きのう</sup>すごくたくさんの魚が釣<sup>つ</sup>れました。(I was able to catch incredibly many fish yesterday.)

E.g. 電源<sup>でんげん</sup>が切れた途端<sup>とたん</sup>に、かなり大量<sup>だいたいよう</sup>のデータが消<sup>け</sup>されてしまいました。(Right when the power ran out, quite a large amount of data was erased.)

- Words in the middle of the spectrum: these have subtle shifts when suffixed with な vs. の, but one is typically used more frequently than the other. Typically, の is used with a slight bias towards the act of objective labelling, while な is used with a slight bias towards the act of subjective describing/judging. As a result, using な for some of the adjectives can seem negative or even rude. It’s safer to use の, if unsure.

E.g. 新しい彼氏<sup>あたらしい</sup>、有名人<sup>し</sup>なの？ (Is your new boyfriend a famous person?; 氏: Mr./Mrs./Ms. polite suffix) ううん、普通<sup>ふつう</sup>の人だよ。(No, he’s a normal (objectively ordinary) person.)

E.g. 新しいの彼氏、変<sup>へん</sup>な人なの？ (Is your new boyfriend a weirdo?) ううん、普通<sup>ふつう</sup>な人だよ。(No, he’s a normal (not weird) person.)

E.g. その施設<sup>しせつ</sup>には、病気<sup>しん</sup>の人が多い。(There are many sick (objective) people at that institution; 施設: facility)

E.g. その施設<sup>しせつ</sup>には、病気<sup>しん</sup>な人が多い。(There are many sick (judgmental) people at that institution; 施設: facility)

Lastly, there is the 「～な気分<sup>きぶん</sup>」 construct. Although 気分 is typically used as 気分がいい or 気分が悪い, we can suffix nouns with ～な気分 to convey the “mood” associated with the noun. Examples include ワインな気分 (“I’m feeling like wine tonight/It’s a wine kinda evening.”), 90年代<sup>ねんだい</sup>な気分 (“I’m feeling really 90’s today”), 海<sup>うみ</sup>な気分 (“feeling those beachy vibes”) and 終わ<sup>お</sup>りな気分 (“feeling like it’s over”).

## G2.11 Adverbs

Just as adjectives describe nouns, adverbs describe adjectives, verbs, other adverbs, or whole sentences. They come before the thing they describe, and the common ones are:

- それは/そりゃ: very/extremely
- めっちゃ: very/extremely/excessively
- 大変: very/greatly/terribly
- すごく: super
- とても: very
- たくさん: many/a lot
- 結構/かなり: fairly
- ちょっと: a little
- 少し: a little
- あまり<negative conj>: not very
- 全然: (not) at all

To turn adjectives into adverbs:

- な-adjectives: 「」 → 「」に

E.g. アリスは自分の部屋をきれいにした。(Alice did her own room toward clean / Alice did her room cleanly / Alice cleaned her room; した is the past tense of する)

E.g. 図書館<sup>なか</sup>の中では、静かにする。(Inside the library, do things quietly.)

- い-adjectives: 「」い → 「」く

E.g. ボブは朝ごはんを早く食べた。(Bob ate breakfast quickly/early (depending on context); 早い → 早く)

E.g. この町<sup>まち</sup>は、最近<sup>おと</sup>大きく<sup>か</sup>変わった。(This town changed greatly lately; 大きい → おおきく)

Note that not all adverbs are derived from adjectives.

E.g. 映画をたくさん見た。(Saw a lot of movies.)

E.g. 最近、全然食べない。(Lately, don't eat at all.)

## G2.12 Sentence ending particles ね、よ、よね

- の: explanatory tone. Explained above in §G2.10.4.
- ね: to express seeking and expectation of agreement, like “right?/isn't it?” in English. In the reply 「そう[だ]ね」, the optional だ is often used in masculine contexts.

E.g. いい天気だね? そう[だ]ね。(Good weather, huh? Sure is; そう: in that way, as such; そう[だ]ね: it is indeed that way/as such.)

E.g. 面白い映画だったね。え? 全然面白くなかった。(That was an interesting movie, wasn't it? Huh? No, it wasn't interesting at all)

- よ: to express that you're informing something *new*, like “you know...” in English.

E.g. 時間がないよ。大丈夫だよ。

E.g. 今日はいい天気だね。うん。でも、明日う雨が降るよ。(Good weather today, huh? Yeah. But it will rain tomorrow, you know.)

よ and ね can be combined to both inform about something new and expect agreement at the same time.

E.g. ボブは、魚が好きなんだよね。そうだね。 (You know, you like fish, don't you? It is indeed the case, huh?)

## G3 Essential grammar

Now that we have an understanding of the basics, fundamentals, and foundations of Japanese grammar, this section provides specific grammar for practical situations.

### G3.1 Verb stems

*It seems that “stem” and “root” are used interchangeably; there is no consensus on their definitions, and different sources use either term to refer to the same concept...*

Since there is no consensus on the definitions of root/stem, I'll use “root” to refer to /kik/, and “stem” to refer to the stem form 聞き.

Also known as the ます-stem in other texts (we refrain from that term as the stem is used in many more conjugations, not just in ます), stems can be obtained from verbs via the rules in Table 17.

Verb stems are sometimes (not always!) the noun forms of the verbs, e.g. 休み<sup>やす</sup> is the noun form of 休む.

We can suffix the stem with target particle に or directional particle へ, then follow with a motion verb (almost always 行く or 来る). This <stem>{に/へ}{行く/来る/...} construct means “to go/come do <stem>”. Use に to mean going/coming for the purpose of doing <stem>; use へ to put emphasis on the literal act of going/coming.

E.g. 明日、映画を見に行く。(Tomorrow, go to see movie.)

E.g. 昨日、友達が遊びへ来た。(Yesterday, friend came towards a playing activity.; sounds weird)

E.g. 昨日、友達が遊びに来た。(Yesterday, friend came to play.)

The expression 「楽しみにする」 (looking forward to) is formed from a similar grammar rule (though it's a special case and should be considered a set expression).

Compound verbs can be formed by appending verbs to stems. However, there aren't formulaic rules for these; memorise them as separate verbs in their own right.

E.g. 走り出す (break into a run)、切り替<sup>か</sup>える (switch to something else)、付け加<sup>く</sup>える (to add something by attaching it)、言<sup>い</sup>い出す (to start talking)、言<sup>い</sup>いさす (to stop talking)、読<sup>よ</sup>み出す (read out data/retrieve)、読<sup>よ</sup>みさす (to leave half-read).

### G3.2 Polite forms ます、です

The Japanese covered thus far in §G2 is fine for five-year-olds, but adults are expected to use 丁寧語<sup>ていねいご</sup> (polite language), 尊敬語<sup>そんけいご</sup> (honorific language) and 謙譲語<sup>けんじょうご</sup> (humble language) where appropriate.

丁寧語 is used when speaking to people of higher social rank or people you're unfamiliar with. 尊敬語 and 謙譲語 are used in professional settings, and builds upon 丁寧語.

The only indicator of which language style is in use is sentence endings. It's not possible to tell whether someone is speaking in casual or polite speech until the sentence is finished.

In 丁寧語, use 「～ます」 and its conjugations to make verbs polite, and use 「～です」 for nouns and adjectives (note that the polite です is incompatible with the assertive だ). Detailed rules are in Table 17. Note that ます and です must come at the end of a complete sentence, and never inside any embedded/relative clauses. Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of 丁寧語 conjugations.



Polite verb examples:

- (present-positive) 明日、大学に行きます。(Tomorrow, I go to university.)
- (present-negative) 面白くない映画は見ません。(I did not see uninteresting movies.)
- (past-positive) 先週、ボブに会いましたよ。(Last week, I met Bob, you know.)
- (past-negative) 昼ご飯を食べませんでしたね。(Didn't eat lunch, right?)

Polite adjective examples:

- (present-positive) 子犬はとても好きです。(I like puppies very much/puppies like something very much.)
- (present-negative) その部屋はあまり静かじゃないです。(The room is not very/really quiet.)
- (past-positive) 先週に見た映画は、とても面白かったです。(The movie I saw last week was very interesting.)
- (past-negative) 昨日、時間がなかったんです。(Yesterday, there was no time.; ある → なかった (past negative) → なかったんだ (explanatory) → なかったんです (polite))

### G3.2.1 です is NOT the polite form of だ, they are completely separate constructs

This is a common misconception! です and だ are two fundamentally different concepts:

- だ is declarative, whereas です is polite.

E.g. そうだ is the declarative form of そう. そうです is the polite form of そう (see Table 17), but not the polite form of そうだ!

- だ can be used both at the end of both complete sentences and relative clauses, whereas です can only be used at the end of complete sentences.

E.g. そうだと思います。(In an indirect quote, it is wrong to quote です: it must be changed to だ.)

E.g. 「はい、そうです」と答える。(The only place where です can be in an embedded clause is in direct quotes.)

## G3.3 Addressing people

Take care to use the correct level of politeness.

### G3.3.1 Referring to yourself

To refer to yourself, use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):

- 私<sup>わたくし</sup>: used by both males and females, formal
- 私<sup>わたし</sup>: used by both males and females, normal polite (you should use this most of the time)
- 僕: used by males, semi-polite to semi-casual
- 俺: used only by males, very casual, very rough
- あたし: used by females, cutesy and girly (most girls today use 私<sup>わたし</sup> instead)
- your own name: used by children, feminine
- わし: used by elderly (males)

E.g. 私の名前はジャッキーです。

### G3.3.2 Referring to the listener (second-person)

Even when directly addressing other people, you rarely use variants of “you”, as constantly hammering the listener with “you” that comes across as accusatory and confrontational.

Instead, we use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):

- <title>: common polite (e.g. 社長 <sup>しゃちょう</sup> president/director, 課長 <sup>かちょう</sup> section manager, 先生 teacher/ anyone with significant expertise including doctors)
- <last name><title>: common polite
- <last name>さん: common polite, in case no suitable title exists
- <first name>さん: common semi-polite
- <last name>くん: for males, casual/endearing, of equal or lower social position
- <last name>ちゃん: for females, casual/endearing, of equal or lower social position
- <last name>: common
- <first name>[{くん, ちゃん}]: only for people you're on first-name basis with
- <nothing>: common. In normal Japanese conversations, the topic/subject is commonly implied to be the listener. It's completely normal not to use anything at all, since you're directly addressing the listener!
- そちら: you, polite
- 君: casual, assuming/very close, used by males to address females, potentially rude
- あなた: **red if spoken**, use only in contexts where you must refer to the audience (e.g. on a physical questionnaire)
- **THOU SHALT NOT CROSS THIS LINE**
- あんた: rude, assuming/familiar, expresses annoyance
- お前/おめえ: rude, rough and coarse, used by males
- てめえ: very rude, sounds like you want to beat someone up (used exclusively in movies and comics)
- 貴様 <sup>きさま</sup>: extremely rude, sounds like you want to take someone out (used exclusively in movies and comics)

<sup>あなた</sup>貴方 is an old-fashioned way for women to refer to their lover or husband, nowadays only used by married middle-aged women.

### G3.3.3 Referring to the third person

For people outside of your family, use one of these:

- 彼 <sup>かれ</sup>: he
- 彼女 <sup>かのじょ</sup>: she
- 彼/ボーイフレンド: boyfriend (prefer former)
- 彼女/ガールフレンド: girlfriend (prefer former)

When referring to family members, there are two levels of politeness: polite and casual. We only use the casual form when we are talking about our own family members to other people. When talking about the listener's family members or when talking directly to your family members, use the polite form.

The polite form comes before the casual form:

- Parents: ご両親 <sup>りょうしん</sup> / 両親 <sup>りょうしん</sup>
- Mother: お母さん <sup>かあ</sup> / 母 <sup>はは</sup>
- Father: お父さん <sup>とう</sup> / 父 <sup>ちち</sup>
- Wife: 奥さん <sup>おく</sup> / 妻 <sup>つま</sup>
- Husband: ご主人 <sup>しゅじん</sup> / 夫 <sup>おつと</sup> (don't drag the trailing お vowel)
- Older sister: お姉さん <sup>ねえ</sup> / 姉 <sup>あね</sup>
- Older brother: お兄さん <sup>にい</sup> / 兄 <sup>あに</sup>

- Younger sister: 妹さん / 妹<sup>いもうと</sup>
- Younger brother: 弟さん / 弟<sup>おとうと</sup>
- Son: 息子さん / 息子<sup>むすこ</sup>
- Daughter: 娘さん / 娘<sup>むすめ</sup>

Yes, ご主人様<sup>さま</sup> (master/husband) is an extension of ご主人 (husband).

### G3.4 The question marker か particle

These are common question words (see Table 74 for a more complete list):

- 誰: who
- 何: what
- いつ: when
- どこ: where
- なぜ/どうして/なんで: why

なぜ is formal and forceful

どうして is softer

なんで is informal (Source)

- どう/どうやって: how

どう is more general (Source)

- どれ/どちら/どっち: which

どれ: three or more

どちら: two

どっち: two (informal; Source)

#### G3.4.1 か in polite questions

The purpose of か is to clearly mark a question in polite sentences. It's not strictly necessary, since polite sentences without a trailing か can be interpreted as a question using a rising trailing intonation during speech. However, it's commonly attached.

There is no need to use a question mark when か is used; the full-stop is used instead. Because か is polite, it is incompatible with the declarative だ.

E.g. お母さんはどこですか。母<sup>はは</sup>は買い物に行きました。(Where is your mother? My mother went shopping.; 買い物 can refer to both purchased goods and the act of shopping)

E.g. イタリア料理<sup>りょうり</sup>を食べに行きませんか。すみません。ちょっと、お腹<sup>なか</sup>がいっぱいです。(Shall we eat Italian food? Sorry, my stomach is a little full.; いっぱい: full; Note that the question is phrased in the negative, see §G3.4.2)

#### G3.4.2 Positive and negative polite questions

See discussion at (HiNative).

Positive polite questions are plain questions; negative questions have a nuance of suggestion/invitation.

- 食べに行きますか?: Are you going to eat?

- 食べに行きませんか?: Shall we go eat?

### G3.4.3 か in casual questions: binary and sarcasm

か has a slightly different purpose in casual speech. Casual questions usually either use explanatory 「の?」 or nothing at all, so か is not used here to craft questions. Instead, it is used specifically to:

- question whether something is true or not

E.g. こんなのを本当に食べるか? (This kind of thing, will they really eat?; こんなのは is こんな + の (possession), where こんな means this type of)

- make rhetorical questions/express sarcasm

E.g. そんなのは、あるかよ! (That kind of thing, do I look like I would have something like that!; そんなのは is そんな + の (possession), where そんな means that type of)

Most actual questions use explanatory の or nothing at all apart from a rise in intonation.

E.g. こんなのを本当に食べる? (Something like this, are you really going to eat?)

E.g. そんなのは、あるの? (Do you have something like that?)

### G3.4.4 か in embedded clauses: referring to embedded questions

This functions similar to direct quoting, and marks the questions in an embedded clause. The outer clause can then talk about the embedded question.

E.g. 昨日何を食べたか忘れた。 (What I ate yesterday, I forgot.)

E.g. 彼は何を言ったか分からない。 (What he said, I don't understand.)

E.g. 先生が学校に行ったか教えない? (Whether the teacher went to school (binary question), would you please inform me (invitation)?)

To ask “whether or not” (binary question), we can use either <positive>かどうか, or <positive>か<negative>か.

E.g. 先生が学校に行ったか行かなかったか知らない。 (Whether the teacher went to school or not, I don't know.)

E.g. 先生が学校に行ったかどうか知らない。 (Whether the teacher went to school or not, I don't know.)

See more detail in §G3.18.2.

### G3.4.5 Modifying question words with suffixes か、も、でも

「」か refers to a particular existence (sometextasciitilde), 「」も refers to the universal (everytextasciitilde), and 「」でも refers to a non-particular existence (anytextasciitilde) (not to be confused with でも for “but”). Question words and their variants are showed in Table 9.

Table 9: Question words and their modified variants. Treat these all as normal nouns. †: 誰も is usually used in negative sentences to mean nobody can do the verb, and to express the positive universal everybody we typically use 皆[さん]; ‡: 何も is used exclusively in negative sentences.

「」	Meaning	「」か	Meaning	「」も	Meaning	「」でも	Meaning
誰	who	誰か	someone	誰も	nobody†	誰でも	anybody
何	what	何か	something	何も	nothing‡	何でも	anything
いつ	when	いつか	sometime	いつも	always/never	いつでも	anytime

「」	Meaning	「か	Meaning	「も	Meaning	「でも	Meaning
どこ	where	どこか	somewhere	どこ[に]も	everywhere/ nowhere	どこでも	anywhere
なぜ	why	なぜか	some reason				
どう	how	どうか	somehow	どれも	somehow	どうでも	anyhow
どれ	which (3 or more)	どれか	one from many	どれも	all/none	どれでも	any of many
どちら	which (2)	どちらか	one of two	どちらも	both/neither	どちらでも	any of two

To mean “For some reason...” you can say 「どういうわけか...」.

「」か examples:

- 誰<sup>たれ</sup>がおいしいクッキーを全部食べた。(Someone ate all the delicious cookies.)
- 誰<sup>むす</sup>が盗<sup>は</sup>んだのか、誰か知りませんか。(Who stole it, doesn't anyone know?; 盗<sup>む</sup>: steal)
- 犯人<sup>はんにん</sup>をどこかで見ましたか。(Did you see the criminal somewhere?)
- この中<sup>なか</sup>からどれか<sup>えら</sup>を選ぶの。(You are to select a certain one from inside this.; から: from, 選ぶ: choose)

「」も examples:

- この質問<sup>しつもん</sup>の答え<sup>こた</sup>は、誰も知らない。(The answer to this question, nobody knows.)
- 友達<sup>ともだち</sup>はいつも遅<sup>おく</sup>れる。(Friend is always late.)
- ここにあるレストランはどれもおいしくない。(All restaurants that are here are not tasty.)
- 今週末<sup>こんしゅうまつ</sup>は、どこにも行かなかった。(This weekend, went nowhere.; どこにも means “target is nowhere”, も is grammatically the topic particle and should come after the target particle に, so ~~どこにも~~ is incorrect. Treat this as an exception.)

「」でも examples:

- この質問の答えは、誰でも分かる。(The answer to this question, anyone understands.)
- 昼ご飯は、どこでもいいです。(For lunch, anywhere is good.)
- あの人は、本当に何でも食べる。(That person really eats anything.)

## G3.5 Apologising

Read a full article [here](#).

Use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):

- すみません: formal
- ごめんなさい: semi-formal
- ごめん[ね]: causal
- 悪い<sup>わる</sup>: very casual, only for non-serious matters

Can be used for past offence: 悪<sup>わる</sup>かった。

## G3.6 Compound sentences

This section concerns combining multiple sentences into one complex sentences, such as combining “I ran.” and “I ate.” into “I ran and ate.”.

### G3.6.1 て form

The て-form of nouns, adjectives and verbs are used to form sequences of states (nouns/adjectives) or actions. The conjugation rules are in [§GA.1](#).

て-form conjugations for です/ます/ません exist but they are part of 尊敬語 and are outside the scope of 丁寧語. In a chain of nouns/adjectives/verbs, only the last one takes the polite form です/ます/ません; everything before takes the plain form. Since て is used when connecting sentences, there is no need for です/ます/ません to have a て-form in 丁寧語.

### G3.6.2 Compound sentences (chain of descriptors/actions) using て/で and て-form

Similarly to how we can join “My room is clean. It is quiet. I like it a lot.” into “My room is clean, quiet, and I like it a lot.” in English using the “and” connector, we can do the same using “て/で” as a connector. Just as と is the noun connector (in exclusive listings), て/で is the connector for nouns, adjectives and verbs.

The syntax is [v te]\*[<plain/polite form>]. て/で functions like a connector (between two nouns/adjectives/verbs). The entity that comes before is turned into the て-form. The final one in the list does NOT use て-form (use either plain or polite), and determines the tense (present/past) of the entire chain.

E.g. 食堂<sup>しょくどう</sup>に行って、昼ご飯を食べて、昼寝をする。 (I will go to canteen, eat lunch, and take a nap.)

E.g. 食堂<sup>しょくどう</sup>に行って、昼ご飯を食べて、昼寝をした。 (I went to canteen, ate lunch, and took a nap.)

E.g. 時間があって、映画を見ました。 (There was time, and I watched a movie.)

### G3.6.3 Causation and reasoning particles から、ので

To express the direct causation (because) and reasoning (therefore) relationships, use から and ので particles:

- から: direct cause marker particle (also from-marker: §G2.9; see also Table 139). The possible syntaxes are: begin{itemize}

- ▶ <direct cause>[だ]から<result>

If the cause is a non-conjugated noun or な-adjective, you must add だ to differentiate it from the from-marker usage of から.

E.g. 時間がなかったからパーティーに行きませんでした。 (There was no time, so didn't go to party.)

E.g. 友達からプレゼントが来た。 (Present came from friend.; from-marker usage)

E.g. 友達だからプレゼントが来た。 (Present came because of friend.; cause marker usage; this sentence sounds a bit odd)

- ▶ だから<result>

The cause can be omitted if clear from context. Here, だ is compulsory.

E.g. 時間がなかった。だからパーティーに行かなかったの? (I didn't have time. Is that why you didn't go to the party?)

- ▶ <direct cause>[だ]から[です]

The result can be omitted if clear from context. から can be treated as a regular noun, so in polite speech, add the です suffix.

E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか？時間がなかったからです。(Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの？うん、時間がなかったから。(You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

- ので: non-causal explanation/reason marker, carries flavour of explanatory-の. Similar usage patterns as から (almost interchangeable), but less binding than から in that ので doesn't assert that the marked reason is the direct cause of the result. ので is thus softer and more polite, and preferred when explaining a reason for doing something considered discourteous.

Because で is involved, ので is a connector that must exist between two sentences (if dangling, the sentence is implied to be a dangling sentence).

- ▶ <reason>[な]ので<result>.

If the cause is a non-conjugated noun or な-adjective, you must add な to differentiate it from the possession marker usage of の.

E.g. 時間がなかった**ので**パーティーに行きませんでした。(There was no time, therefore didn't go to party.)

E.g. ちょっと忙**し**い**ので**、そろそろ失礼します。(I'm a little busy, therefore I'll be making my leave soon.; 失礼します literally means "I'm doing a discourtesy" and is used to politely mean you're make your leave or disturbing someone's time.)

E.g. 私は学生**な**{の/ん}で、お金がないんです。(I am a student, therefore I have no money.)

E.g. ここは静**か****な**{の/ん}で、とても穏やかです。(It is quiet here, therefore it is very calm here.)

If omitting the reason or result (which is clear from context), use the explanatory-の particle instead (の[だ]/のです/んだ/んです see §G2.10.4).

- ▶ な{の/ん}で<result>

Here, な is compulsory.

E.g. **な**{の/ん}で、友達に会う時間がない。(Therefore, there is no time to meet friend.)

- ▶ <reason>{の/のだ/のです/んだ/んです}

E.g. どうして遅**お**れた**の**です/んですか？(Why were you late?)

E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの？うん、時間がなかった**の/のだ/んだ**。(You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか？時間がなかった**の**です/んです。(Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

### G3.6.4 Despite marker particle のに

To express the idea of "despite", the のに marker is used. The schema is <despite>のに、<sentence>.

E.g. 毎日運動した**のに**、全然**や**瘦せなかった。(Despite exercising every day, I didn't get thinner.; 痩せる: to slim)



Note that non-conjugated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the な particle, similar to rules for explanatory の.

E.g. 学生なのに、彼女は勉強しない。(Despite being a student, she does not study.)

### G3.6.5 General and contradiction connector particles けど(、けれど、けれども)、が

けど and が are used as general connectors of any two sentences, like how we construct running sentences in English using “and”. They are also used to provide context.

Furthermore, they can be used to express the idea of contradiction between the two sentences: in this usage, が is slightly more polite (stronger contradiction) than けど. Politer forms of けど are けれど and けれども (???). The schema is <sentence 1>{が/けど/けれど/けれども}、<sentence 2>.

E.g. マトリックスを見たけど、面白かった。(general connector; I watched “The Matrix” and it was interesting.)

E.g. デパートに行きましたが、いい物がたくさんありました。(general connector; I went to the department store and there was a lot of good stuff.)

E.g. デパートに行きましたが、何も欲しくなかったです。(contradictory connector; I went to the department store but there was nothing I wanted.)

Note that non-conjugated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the だ state-of-being assertion.

E.g. 今日は暇だけど、明日は忙しい。(I’m free today but I will be busy tomorrow.)

E.g. だけど、彼がまだ好きなの。(That may be so, but I still like him.)

## G3.7 Reason vague listing connector し

し is used to list reasons for a verb or state-of-being. It is vague in the same sense as the や particle (§G2.10.4): there is a nuance that there may be other reasons not listed. The schema is (<reason> し)\*<reason>.

E.g. どうして彼が好きなの？優しいし、かっこいいし、面白いから。(Why do you like him? Because he’s kind, attractive, and interesting (among other things).; から means because here.)

Note that non-conjugated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the だ state-of-being assertion.

E.g. どうして友達じゃないんですか？先生だし、年上だし...

(Why aren’t they your friend (seeking explanation)? Well, they are the teacher, and older...)

For a less vague, more closed listing, use the て-form instead.

E.g. どうして彼が好きなの？優しくて、かっこよくて、面白いから。

(Why do you like him? Because he’s kind, attractive, and interesting (among other things).)

## G3.8 Adjective and verb vague listing construct へたり[です]

This is the verb/adjective version of the や particle (§G2.10.4). For each verb/adjective in the sequence, conjugate to past tense and add 「り」. Additionally, for the final one, tag on a 「する」,



which will control the tense ({positive, negative} times {present, past}) of the entire sentence. The schema is (<past adj/v>り、)\*<past adj/v>りする.

E.g. 映画を見たり、本を読んだり、昼寝したりする。(I do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. この大学の授業は簡単だったり、難しかったりする。(Classes in this university are sometimes easy, sometimes difficult (and sometimes other descriptors).)

The tense of the entire sentence can be changed by conjugating the trailing する.

E.g. 映画を見たり、本を読んだり、昼寝したりしない。(I don't do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. 映画を見たり、本を読んだり、昼寝したりした。(I did things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. 映画を見たり、本を読んだり、昼寝したりしなかった。(I didn't do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

### G3.9 Progressive form 〜ている (enduring state of action, enduring state-of-being)

To express an enduring state of action (-ing in English), conjugate the verb to the て-form (§G3.6.1, then append 〜ている. This form can be used regardless of whether the verb subject is animate or inanimate. Further conjugations of the progressive form follow rules of the いる verb.

*Interestingly, ある does not have a progressive form. See discussion in §G3.13.*

E.g. 友達は何をしているの？ 昼ご飯を食べている。(What is friend doing? Eating lunch.; している is the progressive form of する.)

E.g. 何を読んでいますか。教科書を読んでいます。(What are you reading? I am reading textbook.; います is the polite form of いる.)

E.g. 話を聞いていますか。ううん、聞いていません。(Are you listening to me? No, I'm not listening.; いません is the polite form of いない.)

In casual speech (not applicable in writing!), 〜ている can be shortened to 〜てる. However, the い is not dropped in the polite progressive form 〜ています. **Try not to let this casual speak become a habit too early on! Learn the correct form first.**

E.g. 友達は何をしてるの？ 昼ご飯を食べてるの。(What is friend doing? Eating lunch.; 食べてる = eating (casual); 食べる = eat (dict))

In fact, laziness can go further: 何をしているの can be shortened by dropping particles and unnecessary vowels to become 何してんの？ A related lazy casual expression is 「何やってんの」, which is a contraction of 「何をやっているの」.

The same form can also be used to convey **enduring state-of-being**, after a verb is performed. **This is decided by context.** E.g. 結婚している can either mean someone is currently getting married, or that someone is married and is currently in the married state. **This becomes less context-based and more of a rule for the verbs 知る, 分かる, and motion verbs.**

- 知っている means to be/have been in the enduring *state* of knowing. 知る refers to the *change* of state from not knowing to knowing, it's different and rarely used in its unconjugated form! ([HN1], [HN2])

E.g. <sup>みち</sup>道は知っていますか？ はい、今日に知りました。 (Do you know the way? Yes, I found out about it today.)

E.g. この歌を知っていますか。はい、1年前から知っていますよ。 (Do you know this song? Yes, I've known it for a year now.)

- わかっている means to be/have been in the enduring *state* of understanding. わかる refers to the *change* from not understanding to understanding, it's different! ([HN])

E.g. <sup>ぜんぽう</sup>前方は危ない、わかりますか。はい、はい、わかりました。 (The area in front is dangerous, do you understand? Yes, yes, I am aware of that.)

E.g. <sup>ぜんぽう</sup>前方は危ない、わかりますか。はい、はい、わかっています。 (The area in front is dangerous, do you understand? Yes, yes, I am already aware of that, you don't have to tell me.)

わかっている, in certain contexts, can make you sound proud or dismissive. Be careful!

- <motion verb て-form>ている means to <motion verb> and exist (<v> + いる), and refers to the state-of-being after performing the verb.

E.g. <sup>すずき</sup>鈴木さんはどこですか。もう、<sup>いえ</sup>家に帰っている。 (Where is Suzuki-san? He is already at home.)

E.g. <sup>みえ</sup>美恵ちゃんはどこですか。もう来ているよ。 (Mie-chan is already here, you know.; 行って is the て-form of 行く; 来て is the て-form of 来る, “来て” is wrong!)

### G3.10 Resultant state ～てある

To express that an action is completed, with the implicit nuance that the action was completed in preparation for something else, we use ～てある.

E.g. <sup>じゅんび</sup>準備どうですか？準備は、もうしてあるよ。 (How are the preparations? The preparations are already done.)

E.g. <sup>りょこう</sup>旅行の計画は終わった？うん、<sup>けいかく</sup>切符を買ったし、<sup>よやく</sup>ホテルの予約もしてある。 (Are the plans for the trip complete? Uh huh, not only did I buy the ticket, I also took care of the hotel reservations.)

### G3.11 The auxiliary verb <sup>お</sup>置く in ～ておく、～とく

To express that an action is completed (or will be completed), with the explicit nuance that the action was completed in preparation for something else, we use the auxiliary verb ～ておく. <sup>お</sup>置く when used directly (meaning “to put/place”) is written in 漢字, but when used as an auxiliary verb it is written in 仮名 alone. Further conjugations of the compound verb follow rules of the 置く verb.

E.g. 晩ごはんを作っておく。 (Make dinner (in advance for the future).)

E.g. 電池を買っておきます。 (I'll buy batteries (in advance for the future).)

「～ておく」 can be contracted to 「～とく」. Further conjugations follow rules of the とく auxiliary verb (which means to do something in readiness for).

E.g. 晩ごはんを作とく。(Make dinner (in advance for the future).)

E.g. 電池を買ときます。(I'll buy batteries (in advance for the future).)

### G3.12 Spatial and temporal directional auxiliary verbs ～ていく、～てくる

To express that an action is spatially oriented towards or from some place, we use the ～ていく and ～てくる auxiliary verbs respectively. Think of them as “<v> + go” and “<v> + come” respectively. Further conjugations of the compound verb follow the rules of the trailing いく or くる verb.

E.g. 鉛筆<sup>えんぴつ</sup>を学校へ持っていく？ (spatial; Are you taking pencil to school?)

E.g. 鉛筆<sup>うち</sup>を家に持ってくる？ (spatial; Are you bringing pencil back home?)

E.g. お父さんは、早く帰ってきました。(spatial; きました is the polite past-tense of くる)

E.g. 駅<sup>えき</sup>の方<sup>ほう</sup>へ走っていった。(spatial; いった is the past tense of いく; 駅 is train station; 方 is direction)

The same auxiliary verbs have a temporal usage. ～ていく can be used to mean “<v> continuously/progressively into the future”. ～てくる can be used to mean “<v> performed up to the present”.

E.g. 冬<sup>はい</sup>に入<sup>はい</sup>って、コートを着ている人が増えていきます。(temporal; Entering winter, people wearing coat will gradually increase.; The 入 in 入る is only read as い when used in compound verbs where the meaning of “entering” is faded.)

E.g. 一生<sup>いっしょうけんめい</sup>懸命、頑張<sup>はい</sup>っていく！ (temporal; With all my might, I will try my hardest moving into the future!)

E.g. 色々な人<sup>あ</sup>付き合<sup>あ</sup>ってきたけど、いい人はまだ見つからない。(temporal; Went out with various types of people up till the present, but a good person hasn't been found yet.; 付き合ってきた is the past-tense of 付き合ってくる.)

E.g. 日本語をずっと前から勉強<sup>けっきよく</sup>してきて、結局やめた。(temporal; Studied Japanese from way back before, and eventually quit.; 勉強してきて is the て-form of 勉強してくる.)

### G3.13 Potential form ～える/～られる/～できる/～来られる

To express the ability to perform a verb, the verb is conjugated. できる is actually the potential form of する! For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All potential form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

Interestingly, ある does not have a potential form. See more in §G3.13.2.

In casual/slang speech, ～られる (for originally る-verbs and 来る) can be shortened to ～れる, so 食べられる can be shortened to 食べれる. Try not to let this casual speak become a habit too early on! Learn the correct form first.

E.g. 漢字は書けますか？ (Can you write Kanji?; 書けます is the polite potential form of 書く.)

E.g. 残念だが、今週末は行けない。(行けない is the negative potential form of 行く.)

E.g. もう信じられない。(信じられない is the negative potential form of 信じる.)

Importantly, potential forms do not have direct objects, since no actual action is taken, so を cannot be used. Whenever を is to be used, use が or the topic particles は、も、etc. instead.

E.g. 富士山が<sup>のぼ</sup>登れた。(I could climb Mt. Fuji.; 富士山を登れた is wrong!)

E.g. 重い荷物<sup>にもつ</sup>は持てます。(I am able to hold heavy luggage.; 持てます is the polite potential form of 持つ: the potential form is 持てる.)

### G3.13.1 The special cases 見られる、聞ける and the alternatives 見ることができる、聞くことができる (vs. 見える、聞こえる)

The transitive verbs 見る and 聞く are paired with their intransitive counterparts 見える and 聞こえる. However, the potential forms of 見る and 聞く, 見られる and 聞ける, exist. For these two case, expression of the “ability to perform a verb” meaning is left to the intransitive counterparts. The potential forms take on a special, additional layer of meaning: **to be given the opportunity** to see or hear something.

E.g. 今日は<sup>は</sup>晴れて、富士山が見える。(It cleared up today and Mt. Fuji is visible.; 晴れる: (of sky) to clear up)

E.g. 友達のおかげで、映画はタダで<sup>み</sup>見られた。(Thanks to my friend, I was able to watch the movie for free.; タダ: free-of-charge)

E.g. 周り<sup>まわ</sup>がうるさくて、彼が言っていたことがあんまり聞こえなかった。(The surroundings were noisy and I couldn't really hear what he was saying.; 周り: surroundings)

E.g. 久しぶりに彼の声が<sup>きこ</sup>聞けた。(For the first time in a long time, I was able to hear his voice.)

That said, it is actually more common to express “given the opportunity” as “the seeing/hearing thing is doable (～{こと/の}ができる) “, as in the following examples.

E.g. 友達のおかげで、映画はタダで見る{こと/の}ができた。(Thanks to my friend, I was able to watch the movie for free.; タダ: free-of-charge)

E.g. 久しぶりに彼の声が聞く{こと/の}ができた。(For the first time in a long time, I was able to hear his voice.)

### G3.13.2 Potential to exist: あり得る<sup>え/う</sup>

Interestingly, ある doesn't have a potential form. The round-about way of saying “possible to exist” is 「あることができる」, but this is almost never used. Instead, we use あり得る<sup>え/う</sup>, which is actually a compound verb made from ある and the auxiliary verb 得る<sup>え/う</sup> (meaning to be able to), and not considered to be a potential form of ある by natives (see discussion on [Reddit](#)).

For 得, the unconjugated form can be read as う (slightly more formal and traditional), but all conjugated forms use え. I'd stick to え always, the modern pronunciation (see discussion on [\[HN\]](#)).

E.g. そんなことはあり得る。(That kind of situation/event is possible.)

E.g. そんなことはあり得ない。(That kind of situation/event is impossible.)

E.g. 彼が寝坊<sup>ねぼう</sup>したこともうあり得るね。(It is possible that he overslept.; 寝坊する: to oversleep)

E.g. 其れは、あり得ない話だよ。(That's an impossible story/scenario.)

### G3.14 ～にする、～になる auxiliary verbs

All forms in this section allow further conjugations based on the rules of ～する and ～なる.

For adjectives, both <adj>にする and <adj>になる have the standard interpretation of causing something to become the adjective, or to become the adjective itself respectively:

- (revision and extension of §G2.11) <na-adj>にする/<i-adj root>くする means to make something become <adj>.

E.g. 静かにする (be/make quiet)、きれいにする (make clean).

E.g. 強くする (make stronger)、小さくする (make smaller).

- <na-adj>になる/<i-adj root>くなる means to become <adj>.

E.g. 去年から背が高くなったね。 (Your height has gotten taller from last year, huh?; 背: height)

E.g. 運動しているから、強くなる。 (Because I am exercising, I'll become stronger.)

E.g. 勉強をたくさんしたから、頭がよくなった。 (Because I studied a lot, I became smarter.)

For nouns, <nn>にする has a special meaning, though <nn>になる preserves the standard interpretation:

- (new!) <nn>にする means to decide on <nn> (“do with <nn> as destination”), and is commonly used when ordering things from a menu.

E.g. 私は、ハンバーガーとサラダにします。 (I'll go with the hamburger and salad.; にします is the polite form of にする.)

E.g. 他にいいものがたくさんあるけど、やっぱりこれにする。 (There are many other good things, but as I thought, I'll go with this one.; 他に: besides/in addition to)

- <nn>になる means to become <nn>.

E.g. 医者になる。 (Become a doctor.)

For verbs, while we recognise that adverbs can modify verbs, we do not have a way to convert verbs into a modifying adverb, unlike what we can do with adjectives. Instead, we refer to the verb using こと (event/thing) or 様 (manner), then tag on ～にする or ～になる. In fact, ～ことにする、～ことになる、～ようにする、～ようになる have special meanings (the last two are usually written in 仮名 alone).

<v>ことに{する/なる} have an nuance of *deciding to* <v>. <v>ようにする specifically means *to try to do* <v>. <v>ようになる specifically indicates a *change towards* <v> which has/will take place.

- <v>ことにする means to decide to <v>. A related form, <v>ことにしている, means to decide to make it a rule/practice to <v> (“to continuously decide to <v>”).

E.g. 海外に行くことにした。 (I decided that I will go abroad.)

E.g. 私は6時に起床することになっている。 (I make a practice of getting up at six.)

- <v>ことになる means to have been arranged/decided so that <v>.

E.g. 海外に行くことになった。 (It's been arranged/decided that I will go abroad.)

- <v>ようにする means to try to make sure that <v>.

E.g. 肉を毎日食べないようにする。 (I will try not to eat meat everyday.)

To express something like “I’m trying to study”, use 「勉強するようにしている」. My previous attempt “勉強しているようにする” is unnatural, because ようにする refers to you trying to do something *in the future*, and 勉強している is already happening. Furthermore, this incorrect form may be misconstrued as “I’m acting like I’m studying”. [GMN]

- <v>ようになる means to come to be that/start to <v>. The implicit nuance is on a change of state from not <v> to <v>.

E.g. 肉を毎日食べないようになった。 (I started to not eat meat everyday.)

Furthermore, because potential verbs describe a state of possibility rather than an actual action, <v potential>ようになる is often used to describe a change (from a state of infeasibility) to a state of feasibility.

E.g. 日本に来て、スシが食べられるようになった。 (After coming to Japan, I became able to eat sushi.)

E.g. 1年間練習したから、ピアノが弾けるようになった。 (Because I practised for a year, I became able to play the piano.; 弾く: to play a stringed/keyboard instrument)

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が見えなくなった。 (After going underground, Mt. Fuji became not visible.; 見える → 見えない → 見えなくなる → 見えなくなった)

### G3.14.1 ~なくなる versus ~ないようになる

In the final example in the previous section, 見えないようになった is also acceptable. Both mean the same, though 見えないようになった focuses on the *change*. 見えなくなった focuses on the *result*, and is more commonly used. ([HN], [goo]), [GMN]

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が見えなくなった。 (After going underground, Mt. Fuji became not visible.; 見える → 見えない → 見えなくなる → 見えなくなった)

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が見えないようになった。 (After going underground, Mt. Fuji became not visible.)

### G3.14.2 Decoupling form and function in Japanese grammar

Read the main discussion on [SOF](#) courtesy of MT.

The phrase 「見えなくなった」 is grammatically correct, but explaining how it came to is not straightforward.

One important takeaway is that “Japanese is not like Indo-European languages, and so at some point, clinging to Indo-European grammatical categories can get in the way”.

It is a misconception to parse 見えなくなった as “見えなく (adverb form of adjective 見えない) + なった (past tense of なる)”.

An adverb refers to a grammatical *function*, specifically the function of describing the *manner* something is or some action is done. Since 見えなく does not mean “in a manner that is not visible”, it is not serving the function of the adverb. “In English, you can say adverbs end in ‘ly’. Does that mean that *bully* is an adverb or that *silly* is an adverb?”



見えなく merely takes on the same grammatical *form* as adverbs. 見えない is in the *form* of an い-adjectives, and so it conjugates like い-adjectives: conjugation rules are based on form, not function. In Japanese, 見えなく is the 連用形 (conjunctive form) of 見えない, the form used during conjugation with other grammatical units. No native will understand 見えなく as “in a manner that is not visible”; “it’s just part of the form into which the word must *inflect* to function properly in the sentence”.

Specifically, 見えなくなった is made of 見える + ない + なる. To link these into a phrase, each component must be converted into the 連用形 (actually ない comes after the 未然形 (nai stem of a verb) of 見える, which is 見え). Thus the required forms are 見え (未然形)、なく (連用形)、なった (past), resulting in 見えなくなった.

### G3.15 Conditionals

There are four ways to say “if” in Japanese.

#### G3.15.1 Conditional form 〜ば

*The Takoboto dictionary refers to this as the “provisional form”, for some reason.*

This is the simplest, most general conditional, and is a conjugation of nouns, adjectives and verbs. Refer to §GA.1 for detailed conjugation rules. It means “if <future ...>ば, then <...>”. The focus is on the conditional predicate, i.e. the part before the ば, not on the statement that follows.

The conjugation rule for nouns and な-adjectives is suffixing 「〜であれば」, which is actually using the conditional form あれば of the verb ある. 「である」 is a formal expression we will see much later (???).

In the examples that follow, the focus is underlined.

E.g. 友達に会えれば、買い物に行きます。(If I can meet my friend, we will go shopping.; 会えれば is the conditional form of the potential verb 会える)

E.g. お金があればいいね。(If I had money, it would be good, huh?)

E.g. 楽しければ、私も行く。(If it’s fun, I’ll go too.)

E.g. 楽しくなければ、私もう行かない。(If it’s not fun, I’ll also not go.)

E.g. 食べなければ病気になるよ。(If you don’t eat, you will become sick.)

#### G3.15.2 Past conditional form 〜たら[ば]

The past conditional form conveys the same idea as the basic conditional form (§G3.15.1), but with a difference in focus: the focus is on the statement that follows the conditional predicate, i.e. the part after the たら[ば], not on the predicate itself. The optional [ば] is used for formality; in causal speech it is omitted.

The predicate always takes on the past tense, though this doesn’t necessarily mean the predicate must have happened in the past. It can be a future, not-yet-happened event too, just like English’s “if ... *were* to happen/if I *were* ..., then ...”.

In the examples that follow, the focus is underlined.

E.g. 暇だったら [ば]、遊びに行くよ。(If I am free, I’ll go to play.)

E.g. 学生だったら**ば**、学生割引<sup>わりびき</sup>で買えます。 (If you're a student, you can buy with a student discount.)

E.g. 友達に会えたら**ば**、買い物に行きます。 (If I can meet my friend, we will go shopping.)

E.g. お金があったら**ば**いいね。 (If I had money, it would be good, huh?)

There is also a second usage, to express surprise at an unexpected **past** outcome, via the schema <past predicate/prior event>たら**ば**、<unexpected **past** outcome>.

E.g. 家に帰<sup>うち</sup>ったら**ば**、誰もいなかった。 (When I went home, there was (unexpectedly) no one there.)

E.g. アメリカに行<sup>ふと</sup>ったら**ば**、たくさん太りました。 (As a result of going to America, I (unexpectedly) got really fat.; 太りました is the past polite form of 太る)

The way to disambiguate between the two usages is to first recognise that in either case, when we see/hear たら**ば**, we focus on what comes next. Then, if what comes next is in present tense, there's no surprise nuance; if what comes next is in past tense, then there is a surprise nuance.

### G3.15.3 Expected consequence conditionals with と

This is similar in nuance to the Cだったら E construct (see Table 139), with the added element of expectedness.

A と B means that if A happens, then as a natural consequence B is *expected* to happen. The schema is C[だ]と E. Note that the state-of-being **だ** must be made explicit for nouns and な-adjectives, for disambiguation with other usages of と!

E.g. 先生**だと**、きっと<sup>としうえ</sup>年上なんじゃないですか。 (If he's a teacher, surely he is senior, right?; きっと: surely; なん is the contraction of なの (noun explanatory ender), じゃないですか is a polite form of asking)

E.g. ボールを落とすと落ちる。 (If you drop the ball, it will fall.)

E.g. 電気を消すと暗<sup>くら</sup>くなる。 (If you turn off the lights, it will become dark.; 暗い: dark)

E.g. 学校に行かないと友達と会えないよ。 (If you don't go to school, you can't meet your friends.)

E.g. たくさん食べると太るよ。 (If you eat a lot, you will get fat.)

### G3.15.4 Contextual conditionals with なら**ば**

Contextual conditionals express the nuance that the statement will occur *given that* the contextual predicate holds. It's translated as "If given <predicate>, then <statement>". The schema is <context>なら**ば**、<statement>. The optional **ば** is used for formality; in casual speech it is omitted.

E.g. みんなが行く**ならば**私も行く。 (If given that everyone is going, then I'll go too.)

E.g. アリスさんが言う**ならば**問題ないよ。 (If given that Alice says so, then there's no problem.)

E.g. 図書館はどこですか。図書館**ならば**、あそこです。 (Where is the library? If given that you're talking about the library, then it's over there.)



### G3.15.5 もし as an uncertainty embellishment for conditionals

The adverb もし (and related ones like もしや、もしかし) are only a supplement to add the nuance of uncertainty on whether the predicate/condition is true (“perhaps/by any chance”). One of the four forms above must still be used.

E.g. もしよかったら、映画を見に行きますか。 (past conditional; If by any chance it’s ok with you, go to watch movie?; 見に is the adverb of 見る)

E.g. もし時間がないなら、明日でもいいよ。 (contextual conditional; If by chance given that there’s no time, tomorrow is fine as well.)

## G3.16 Prohibition, requirement and permission

Expressing the idea that something must not be done, must be done, or that it’s ok to do/not do is common in Japanese.

Table 10: Prohibition, requirement and permission summary.

Class	Tense	Normal	Polite	Translation
Prohibition	Present	You must not overexert.	無理してはだめ。 無理してはいけない。 無理してはならない。 無理しちゃだめ。 無理しちゃいけない。 無理しちゃならない。	無理してはだめです。 無理してはいけません。 無理してはなりません。 無理しちゃだめです。 無理しちゃいけません。 無理しちゃなりません。
	Past	You had to not overexert.	無理してはだめだった。 無理してはいけなかった。 無理してはならなかった。 無理しちゃだめだった。 無理しちゃいけなかった。 無理しちゃならなかった。	無理してはだめでした。 無理してはいけませんでした。 無理してはならませんでした。 無理しちゃだめでした。 無理しちゃいけませんでした。 無理しちゃならませんでした。
Requirement	Present	You must overexert.	無理しなくてはだめ。 無理しなくてはいけない。 無理しなくてはならない。 無理しなくちゃ。	無理しなくてはだめです。 無理しなくてはいけません。 無理しなくてはなりません。 -
			無理しないとだめ。 無理しないといけない。 無理しないとならない。 無理しないと。	無理しないとだめです。 無理しないといけません。 無理しないとなりません。 -
	Past	You had to overexert.	無理しなければだめ。 無理しなければいけない。 無理しなければならぬ。 無理しなきゃ。	無理しなければだめです。 無理しなければいけません。 無理しなければなりません。 -
			無理しなくてはだめだった。 無理しなくてはいけなかった。 無理しなくてはならなかった。 無理しないとだめだった。 無理しないといけなかった。 無理しないとならなかった。 無理しなければだめだった。 無理しなければいけなかった。 無理しなければならなかった。	無理しなくてはだめでした。 無理しなくてはいけませんでした。 無理しなくてはならませんでした。 無理しないとだめでした。 無理しないといけませんでした。 無理しないとならませんでした。 無理しなければだめでした。 無理しなければいけませんでした。 無理しなければならませんでした。
Permission	Present	You can overexert.	無理してもいい。 無理しても大丈夫。 無理しても構わない。	無理してもいいです。 無理しても大丈夫です。 無理しても構いません。
	Past	You could overexert.	無理してもよかった。 無理しても大丈夫だった。 無理しても構わなかった。	無理してもよかったです。 無理しても大丈夫でした。 無理しても構いませんでした。
	Present-negative	There is no need to overexert.	無理しなくてもいい。 無理しなくても大丈夫。 無理しなくても構わない。	無理しなくてもいいです。 無理しなくても大丈夫です。 無理しなくても構いません。

Past-negative	There was no need to overexert.	無理しなくてもよかった。 無理しなくても大丈夫だった。 無理しなくても構わなかった。	無理しなくてもよかったです。 無理しなくても大丈夫でした。 無理しなくても構いませんでした。
---------------	---------------------------------	--	--

### G3.16.1 Prohibition (things that must not be done) ～ては{だめ/いけない/ならない}

There are three adjectives that convey prohibition: **だめ**、**いけない**、**ならない**. Of the three, **だめ** is casual (**ダメ** is even more casual, used in friendly settings; [HN]). Also, **ならない** is used more for general rules, laws and policies that apply for more than one person, so it can be interpreted as the sternest of the three. In terms of sternness, **だめ** < **いけない** < **ならない**.

**いけない** comes from **いけない** which means bad/wrong/naughty, but when used in the prohibitory manner is written in 仮名 alone.

All conjugations of the three adjectives are shown in Table 11. The polite forms taken by **いけない** and **ならない** can be explained by interpreting them as present-negative forms of the verbs **いける** (meaning to go well) and **なる** (to become) respectively. Though be cautioned, don't mix form with function [G3.14.2].

Table 11: Prohibition conjugations.

Present prohibition	だめ	いけない	ならない
Past prohibition	だめだった	いけなかった	ならなかった
Present prohibition (polite)	だめです	いきません	なりません
Past prohibition (polite)	だめでした	いきませんでした	ならませんでした

The long-form schema for prohibition is <v te>は{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

E.g. ここに入**って**は**いけません**。(You must not enter here.)

E.g. それを**食****って**は**だめ**！(You can't eat that!)

E.g. 夜、遅くまで**電****話****し****て**は**ならない**。(You must not use the phone until late at night.)

E.g. 早く**寝****て**は**なりません**でした。(I wasn't allowed to sleep early.)

E.g. **死****ん****で**は**ダメ**だよ！(You can't die!)

E.g. **泳****い****で**は**なりません**。(Do not swim.)

The contractions for expressing prohibition involve the following replacements. Note that the {だめ/いけない/ならない} must not be omitted for contracted prohibition.

In short, ては⇒ちゃ, では⇒じゃ.

$$\begin{array}{l} \overbrace{\dots\text{ては}}^{\text{v te}} \{ \text{だめ/いけない/ならない} \} \mapsto \overbrace{\dots}^{\text{v te fragment}} \text{ちゃ} \{ \text{だめ/いけない/ならない} \} \\ \overbrace{\dots\text{では}}^{\text{v te}} \{ \text{だめ/いけない/ならない} \} \mapsto \overbrace{\dots}^{\text{v te fragment}} \text{じゃ} \{ \text{だめ/いけない/ならない} \} \end{array}$$

The second form is used for verbs with endings in {ぐ, む, ぬ, ぶ}; their て-forms use で.

The contracted schema for prohibition is <v te fragment>{ちゃ/じゃ}{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

E.g. ここに入**っちゃ****いけません**。(You must not enter here.)

E.g. それを**食べちゃ**だめ！ (You can't eat that!)

E.g. 夜、遅くまで**電話し**ちゃならない。 (You must not use the phone until late at night.)

E.g. 早く**寝**ちゃなりませんでした。 (I wasn't allowed to sleep early.)

E.g. **死**んじゃダメだよ！ (You can't die!)

E.g. **泳**いじゃなりません。 (Do not swim.)

*Side note: 「死んじゃった」 is actually a contraction of 「死んでしまう」, where しまう is an auxiliary verb meaning “to do accidentally”, and しまう is contracted to じゃう, then conjugated into the past tense as じゃった. It's got nothing to do with the 死んじゃ we see in this section, which comes from 死んでは.*

Finally, the ちゃ/じゃ contractions here are slightly feminine.

### G3.16.2 Requirement (things that must be done)

Requirement is expressed as the negation of prohibition. The <v te> is the one that is negated, and there are three grammatical schemae that can be used. All are correct, and are all used at least in formal writing, so learn them all.

The three long-form grammatical schemae for requirement:

1. <v te-negative>は{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かなくてはなりません。 (I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしなくてはいけなかった。 (I had to do homework.)

2. <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない}. This uses the expected consequence conditional (§G3.15.3). The literal meaning is: if you don't do something, the expected consequence is no good. This is the easiest form, and is used even outside of the expected consequence characterisation.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かないとなりません。 (I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしなるといけなかった。 (I had to do homework.)

3. <v conditional-negative>{だめ/いけない/ならない}. This uses the conditional form (§G3.15.1). For requirement, because the verb is negated, the conditional-negative always contains ～なければ.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かなければなりません。 (I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしなければいけなかった。 (I had to do homework.)

In casual speech, however, people default to either the <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない} or the contractions that follow. When used to express requirement, the expected consequence conditional と (§G3.15.3) loses the expected consequence nuance (it's used in more situations that what it was originally defined for).

The contractions for expressing requirement involve the following replacements. **Note that the {だめ/いけない/ならない} is omitted for contracted requirement.**

In short,      なくて ⇨ なくちゃ,      なければ ⇨ なきゃ.

[first schema]	$\overbrace{\dots \text{なくては}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\}}^{\text{v te-negative}} \mapsto \overbrace{\dots \text{な} \quad \text{くちゃ}}^{\text{v negative fragment}}$
[second schema]	$\overbrace{\dots \text{ない} \text{と}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\}}^{\text{v negative}} \mapsto \overbrace{\dots \text{ない} \text{と}}^{\text{v negative}}$
[third schema]	$\overbrace{\dots \text{なければ} \{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\}}^{\text{v conditional-negative}} \mapsto \overbrace{\dots \text{な} \quad \text{きゃ}}^{\text{v negative fragment}}$

For the first schema contraction, **なくちゃ** is the colloquial form of **なくては**, which is an abbreviation of **なくてはいいけない**. For the third schema contraction, **なきゃ** is the colloquial form of **なければ**, which is the conditional-negative form of the verb **ある**. In a sense, every verb has two colloquial “requirement” forms: **…なくちゃ** and **…なきゃ**, based on their negative forms.

Note that these contractions cannot be conjugated into the past tense, i.e. “**～なくちゃった**”, “**～なきゃった**”, “**～なくちゃない**”, “**～なきゃない**” do not exist! (TNSJ) If you want to mean requirement *in the past*, use any of the three long form schemae above. If you want to mean prohibition, use the one contracted schema in §G3.16.1. If you want to mean not a requirement (i.e. okay to not do), use the one schema in §G3.16.3.

Here are the three contracted grammatical schemae for requirement.

1. <v negative fragment ending in な>くちゃ.

E.g. 毎日学校に行か**なくちゃ**。(I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をし**なくちゃ**。(I have to do homework.)

2. <v negative>と.

E.g. 毎日学校に行**かないと**。(I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をし**ないと**。(I have to do homework.)

3. <v negative fragment ending in な>きゃ.

E.g. 毎日学校に行**かなきゃ**。(I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をし**なきゃ**。(I have to do homework.)

(Notice that the homework example has been changed to present tense; the past tense has no contractions.)

Finally, the **なくちゃ** contraction here is slightly feminine.

### G3.16.3 Permission (things that are okay to do or not to do) ～でもいい

The schema for permission is simply <allowed v te>も{いい/大丈夫/構**わ**ない}. Other permissive enders work too but these three are the most common. 構**わ**ない is the negative form of 構**わ**う, meaning to mind. For <v te>もいい, the も may be dropped in casual speech.

E.g. 全部食べて[**も**]いいよ。(You can go ahead and eat it all.; “Even if you eat it all, it’s good, you know.”)

E.g. 全部食べなくて[**も**]いいよ。(You don’t have to eat it all.)

E.g. もう帰って[**も**]いい? (Can I go home already?)

E.g. これ、ちょっと見て[**も**]いい? (Can I take a quick look at this?)

E.g. 全部飲んでも大丈夫だよ。 (It's okay if you drink it all.)

E.g. 全部飲んでも構わないよ。 (You can drink it all, I don't mind.)

### G3.17 Desires, invitation and suggestions

This section concerns the expression of direct desires and discreet suggestions.

#### G3.17.1 Desiderative form ～たい

*Takoboto and most sources simply call this the たい form, but desiderative, meaning expressing a desire to, is more descriptive.*

The conjugation rule is simple: <stem>たい. This transforms the verb into an い-adjective (in terms of form), but still retaining the behaviour of verbs to use verb particles を、に、へ (§G2.9). Its form conjugate like い-adjectives: ～たい (present-positive desiderative), ～たくない (present-negative desiderative), ～たかった (past-positive desiderative), ～たくなかった (past-negative desiderative).

Note that ある does not have a desiderative form: inanimate objects cannot desire anything. いる's desiderative form is いたい.

The desiderative form can only be used from the first person, because you cannot read other people's mind and express what they want to do. To refer to other people's desires, use direct or indirect quotations (???). Questions about other people's desires are permitted because we are not making presumptions.

E.g. ずっと一緒にいたい。 (I want to be together forever.)

E.g. 何をしたいですか。 (What do you want to do?)

E.g. 犬と遊びたいですか。 (Do you want to play with dog?)

E.g. オン前に行きたい。 (I want to go to a hot spring.)

E.g. ケーキ、食べたくないの? (You don't want to eat cake?)

E.g. 食べなくなかったけど食べなくなった。 (I didn't want to eat, but I became wanting to eat.)

E.g. 食べなくなかった。 (I became not wanting to eat.; to parse this, split it as 食べた|くなくなかった: eat + negative desire + became.)

#### G3.17.2 Auxiliary adjective ほしい

The 「<nn>が欲しい」 construct means to want <nn>. To express that we want a verb <v> done, or that we want the listener to do <v>, we use the auxiliary adjective ほしい. This auxiliary usage is written in 仮名 alone.

The auxiliary adjective ほしい is actually rarely used in practice, since there are other more appropriate ways to make requests (???). Note that ～ほしい does NOT express that you want to do something yourself; that is expressed by ～たい.

E.g. 大好きぬいぐるみが欲しい! (I want a big stuffed doll!; ぬいぐるみ: stuffed toy)

E.g. 全部食べてほしいんだけど…。 (I want it all eaten but...; This does not say “I want to eat it all”: that would be 全部食べたいんだ。)

E.g. 部屋をきれいにしてほしいのよ。 (I want the room cleaned up, you know.)

### G3.17.3 Volitional form: invitation 〜<sup>お</sup>う/〜よう/〜ましょう

“Volitional” means “relating to the use of one’s will”. The volitional form is used to express that the speaker is setting out to do something. In simpler terms, it expresses the idea of invitation, and translates to “Let’s/Shall we” in English. Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of conjugations. The volitional conjugations for the two exception verbs are best memorised, there’s no simple rule explanation (しよう、来よう).

Both casual and polite volitional forms exist, and the polite form must come at the end of the sentence.

Note that the volitional form only has one tense: starting from the present, looking into the future. It cannot be used with a past tense verb like “食べたよう”.

E.g. 今日は何をしようか。(What shall we do today?)

E.g. 今日は何をしましょうか。(What shall we do today? (polite))

E.g. テーマパークに行こう！(Let’s go to the theme park!)

E.g. テーマパークに行きましょう！(Let’s go to the theme park! (polite))

E.g. 明日は何を食べようか。カレーを食べよう！(What shall we eat tomorrow? Let’s eat curry!)

E.g. 明日は何を食べましょうか。カレーを食べましょう！(What shall we eat tomorrow? Let’s eat curry! (polite))

### G3.17.4 Suggestions {ば/たらどう}

Suggestions are expressed by suffixing 「どう」 to the conditional form (ば; §G3.15.1) or the past conditional たら (§G3.15.2). In English, the literal translation is “If you do <v>, how is it?” and the natural translation is “How about doing <v>?”

E.g. たまにご両親と話せばどう？(How about talking with your parents once in a while?; たまに: occasionally; 話せば is the conditional form of 話す)

E.g. 銀行に行ったらどうですか。(How about going to the bank?)

## G3.18 Quotation: performing actions on relative clauses

We first came across relative clauses in §G2.10.1, where they are used as noun modifiers using the schema <relative verb clause><nn>.

In order to perform an action (e.g. thinking, saying, hearing, variants of each, or even simply referring to it in a bigger complex sentence) on a relative clause, we use the concept of **quotation**, which encapsulates the relative clause into a unit, upon which we can perform actions. This is an important construct in Japanese as the Japanese seldom affirm definite statements, and prefer to express uncertainty or probability, which requires performing corresponding actions (e.g. thinking) on relative clauses.

### G3.18.1 Direct quotation 「…」と

The と particle is the quote marker particle, as first seen in §G2.1. The syntax is 「<quote>」と <v>. <v> can be anything like 言う、聞く、呼ぶ (to call)、叫ぶ (to scream)、呟く (to mutter), etc. The <v> doesn’t need to immediately follow と; other adverbs and sentence parts-of-speech can come in between, so long as <v> appears in the clause somewhere after と.

E.g. アリスが、「寒い」と言った。(“Cold”, said Alice.)

E.g. 「寒い」とアイリスが田中に言った。(“Cold”, said Alice to Tanaka)

E.g. 「今日は授業がない」と先生から聞いたんだけど。(It is that I heard from the teacher “there is no class today”...)

### G3.18.2 Indirect quotation と、って

Also known as interpreted quotation, indirect quotation quotes *along the lines* of what the speaker actually said. Thoughts and considerations are often expressed as indirect quotes, with the verbs 思う and 考える respectively. The と particle is used here too, **except that unconjugated nouns and な-adjective state-of-being must be explicitly declared with な**.

In the following examples, the indirect quotation is underlined.

When 何 is used to mean “what”, it is read as なに; when it is used to mean “how many”, it is read as なん. ([NHK])

E.g. 先生から今日は授業がないと聞いたんだけど。(I heard from the teacher that there is no class today.; Note the absence of direct quotation marks.)

E.g. カレーを食べようと思ったけど、食べる時間がなかった。(I thought about setting out to eating curry but didn’t have time to eat.; **DO NOT confuse なかった and なった: the former is the past-negative of ある, and the latter is the past tense of なる.**)

E.g. 今、どこに行こうかと考えている。(Now, I’m considering where to set out to go.; this is an example of the question marker in indirect quotations, §G3.4.4)

E.g. 彼は、これは何だと言いましたか。(What did he say this is?; **Here, the explicit state-of-being assertion だ is compulsory!**)

E.g. 彼は、何と言いましたか。(What did he say?)

E.g. 彼は、これは何かと言いました。(He asked what this is.)

E.g. 彼は高校生だと聞いたけど、信じられない。(I heard that he is a high school student, but I can’t believe it.)

The casual version of the と particle is って. Specifically, <quote>と<v> can be shortened to <quote>って. The verb is dropped and the speaker will hope that the listener can **understand everything from context! Usually, the omitted verb after って is 言った (“to say”), so if it’s any other verb, don’t drop it.**

E.g. 今、時間がないと聞いたんだけど、本当？ (I heard you don’t have time now, is that true?)

E.g. 今、時間がないって聞いたんだけど、本当？ (I heard you don’t have time now, is that true?)

The following are examples of contextual guessing in action. **The omitted verb is assumed to be 言った by default.**

E.g. 今、時間がないってけど、本当？ (You **said** you don’t have time now, is that true?)

E.g. 智子<sup>ともこ</sup>は来年、海外に行くんだって。(Tomoko **said** that she’s going overseas next year.)

E.g. もうお金がないって。(I already **told** you I have no money.)

E.g. え？何だって？ (Huh? What did you **say**?)



### G3.18.3 って as a replacement for topic particle は

って can be used to talk about practically anything, not just as the informal form of the quotation marker と. It is used everywhere in casual speech, usually to bring up a topic.

E.g. 明日って、雨が降るんだって。(About tomorrow, I hear that it's going to rain.; first って is a replacement for は, second って contains the hidden verb “to hear”. *A bit weird. I wouldn't use the trailing って like this; I'll just omit it.*)

E.g. アリスって、すごくいい人でしょう？(Alice is a very good person, right?; でしょ[う] is the [formal] conjectural form of です.)

## G3.19 Definitions and descriptions with the abstract という/って (and slang つう)

言う means to say, and when used in the abstract way, is written as いう. It can be used with the と particle to define, describe and to refer to something itself.

### G3.19.1 Definition という

言う has a second meaning, “to call/name”. However, since nothing is actually said, it is common to write it in 仮名 only (also ok to write it in 漢字).

E.g. これは、日本語で何といいますか。(What do you call this in Japanese?; 言う here means to call/name)

E.g. 私は、アリスといいます。(I am called Alice.; 言う here means to call/name)

In the following examples, the <called> という <thing> schema is used.

E.g. これは、何という魚ですか。この魚は、鯛<sup>たい</sup>といいます。(What is this fish referred to as? It's known as Tai.)<sup>4</sup>

E.g. ルミネというデパートはどこにあるか、知っていますか。(Do you know where the department store called “Lumine” is?)

E.g. 「友達」は、英語で「friend」という意味です。(The meaning of “tomodachi” in English is “friend”).

### G3.19.2 Referring to relative clause という{の/こと} and {こう/そう/ああ/どう}いう{の/こと} and って

When a relative clause is encapsulated with 「と」, it must be followed by a verb. Sometimes, we want to simply refer to the relative clause in a bigger complex sentence, and in this case the いう verb serves as a generic verb (it can but in this usage it doesn't mean that you're saying the quote). The schema <quote> という{の/こと} is a very common construction.

E.g. 主人公が犯人だったという{の/こと}が一番面白かった。(The most interesting thing was that the main character was the criminal.)

E.g. 日本人はお避<sup>さ</sup>けに弱いという{の/こと}は本当？(It is true that Japanese people are weak to alcohol?)

E.g. 独身<sup>どくしん</sup>だという{の/こと}は、嘘だったの？(Was it a lie that you are single?)

<sup>4</sup>This example can also be written as 「この魚は何といいますか。」([HN]), but could technically be misconstrued as “About this fish, what does it say?”. Prefer the <called> という <thing> schema.



E.g. リブートという{の/こと}は、パソコンを再起動<sup>さいきどう</sup>するという{の/こと}です。(Reboot means to restart your computer.)

E.g. みきさんが洋介別れたということだ。ということは、みきさんは、今彼氏<sup>し</sup>がいないということ？そう。そういうこと。(I heard that Miki-chan broke up with Yousuke. Does that mean Miki-chan doesn't have a boyfriend now? That's right. That's what it means.; **ということだ specifically indicates hearsay or conjecture about others' feelings**)

If the relative clause can be inferred from context, it can be replaced with a generic way of doing something, using the pre-noun adjectivals こういう、そういう、ああいう、どういう (and the こんあ、そんあ、あんあ、どんあ forms too).

E.g. あんたは、いつもこういう時に来るんだから、困るんだよ。(It's because you always come at times like these that I'm trouble.)

E.g. そういう人と一緒に仕事をするのは、嫌だよね。(Doing work together with that type of person would be unpleasant, huh?)

E.g. ああいう人と結婚できたら、幸せになれるとお見ます。(I think if you can marry that type of person, you can become happy.)

E.g. 大学にいかないって、どういう意味なの？(What do you mean, "I'm not going to university"?)

Finally, って is not only a short form for と<v> after quotations. It is also a short form for the generic verb という and any following particles, so <quote>という<particles> can be shortened to <quote>って. Again, the speaker will hope that the listener can **understand everything from context**.

E.g. 来年留学するという{の/こと}は、智子<sup>ともこ</sup>のこと？(The studying abroad next year thing, is that Tomoko?)

E.g. 来年留学するって智子<sup>ともこ</sup>のこと？(The studying abroad next year thing, is that Tomoko?)

There's a further abbreviation of って to て (and replacement of と with て, which is slightly easier to say), **but this only works for the generic verb. For actually said things, this contraction is invalid! This is stepping into the territory of native lazy speak, I'd say don't worry about this too much.**

E.g. てことは、みきさんは、いま彼氏<sup>し</sup>がいないてこと？(both て replaced という; the second one could've also replaced the trailing こと)

E.g. ていうか、もう帰らないとだめですけど。(ていうか instead of というか for rephrasing and refining definitions, §G3.19.3)

E.g. みきさんが、明日来ないって。(Miki-chan says she isn't coming tomorrow.; **“みきさんが、明日来ないて。” is wrong!**)

### G3.19.3 Rephrasing and refining definitions with というか、connector

The definition expression という (§G3.19.1) can be suffixed with the question marker か to add a questioning element, useful for rephrasing or redefining something. This is common in casual speech. As a connector, it tags to the thing that's being rephrased, as in <to rephrase>というか、<rephrase>.

E.g. みきちゃんは、あんたの彼女でしょう？う～ん、彼女というか、友達というか、なんというか...{} (Miki-chan is your girlfriend, right? Um, you might say girlfriend, or friend, or something...)

E.g. お酒は好きというか、ないと生きていけない。(I like alcohol, or rather, I can't live on without it.; 生きていけない is the negative potential form of 生きていく (meaning to live on). This is tricky to parse. The presence of けない correctly hints to us that some negative potential form is in use, but it is not the negative potential form of 生きている (that would be 生きていられない). The presence of いけない might also wrongly lead us to think 生きる is prohibited (that would be 生きてはいけない). The correct way to parse is to recognise that け must be the え form of some く verb, which leads to 生きていく. To disassociate from the prohibition いけない, recognise that the は particle is missing, which is required by the prohibition schema てはいけない.)

E.g. 多分行かないと思う。というか、お金がないから、行けない。(Don't think I'll go. Or rather, I can't go because I have no money.)

E.g. というか、もう帰らないとだめですけど。(Rather than that, I have to go home already.)

#### G3.19.4 Referring to relative clause with annoyance つう (slang)

The generic verb という can be shortened to つう. It is harder to say (violates core slang principle of making things easier to say, §G3.24), but it has a hard, hissing sound, so it is used to convey anger. It is masculine. It can sometimes be further shortened to just つ. つって is the て-from of つう.

E.g. つうかというか、なんでお前がここにいんるんのよ！(Or rather, why are you here?!)

E.g. 宿題で時間がないつってと言ってんのに、みきちゃんとデートしに行ったらしい。(Although he's saying he doesn't have time because of homework, I hear he went on a date with Miki-chan.; デートする → デートし (stem); らしい: appearance, based on evidence/trustworthy hearsay)

E.g. 明日は試験だぞ。つっても、勉強はしてないだろうな。(Yo, tomorrow's the test. Even if I say that, you probably didn't study anyway, huh?; してない is a contraction of していない (from している))

E.g. だから、違うんだつうの！(Like I said, you're wrong!)

The annoyance can be further emphasised using つつう.

E.g. だから、違うんだつつうの！(Like I said, you're wrong!)

#### G3.19.5 Referring to relative clause with exasperation ってば/ったら (slang)

To take annoyance to the next level, the generic verb 「という」's conditional form 「といえば」 (§G3.15.1) and past conditional form 「といったら」 (§G3.15.2) can be abbreviated to ってば or ったら respectively. The (abbreviated) conditionals of という are used to express the exasperation of repeating yourself multiple times, or with someone not listening to you.

E.g. もう行くってば！(I told you I'm going already!)

E.g. あなたったら、いつも忘れるんだから。(Because you're always forgetting.)

#### G3.19.6 Expressing disagreement or dissatisfaction (whiningly) with だって

だって is a conjunction used to express disagreement or dissatisfaction whiningly.

E.g. しないとだめだよ。だって、時間がないからできないよ。(Have to do it, you know. But (even so), can't do it because there is no time.)

E.g. 行かなくなくてもいいよ。だって、みんな行くって。私もいかないと。(Don't have to go, you know. But (even so), everybody said they're going. I have to go too.)

## G3.20 Trialling something out or attempting something

The “try” in English is heavily overloaded. In Japanese, there are separate grammatical expressions for each sense of “try”. We’ve already seen one sense: <v>ようにする, meaning to try to make sure that <v>, as in *putting in effort* to make a habit of <v>.

This section concerns two other senses: *trialling* something out, and *attempting* to do something.

### G3.20.1 Trialling something out with the auxiliary verb してみる

This is expressed with <v te>みる, using the auxiliary verb みる (from 見る). Think of it as <v> and see (the outcome). Further conjugations follow rules of the 見る verb. The polite form is みます.

E.g. お好み焼きを初めて食べてみたけど、とてもおいしかった！ (I tried eating okonomiyaki for the first time and it was very tasty!)

E.g. お酒を飲んでみましたが、すごく眠くなりました。 (I tried drinking alcohol and I became extremely sleepy.; 眠く is the adverbial form of 眠い)

E.g. 新しいデパートに行ってみる。 (I’m going to check out the new department store.)

E.g. 広島のお好み焼きを食べてみたい！ (I want to try eating Hiroshima okonomiyaki!; みたい is the desiderative form of みる)

### G3.20.2 Attempting something with <v volitional>と{する/<v>}

This is expressed with <v volitional>とする. Attempting to do something requires exercising the will to set out to do something, hence the involvement of the volitional form. The volitional (and と) together convey the information that we’re discussing attempting. Further conjugations follow the rules of the verb する.

E.g. 毎日、勉強を避けようとする。 (Everyday, she attempts to avoid study.; 避けよう is the volitional form of 避ける.)

E.g. 無やりに部屋に入ろうとしている。 (He is attempting to force his way into the room.)

E.g. 早くな寝ようとしたけど、結局は徹夜した。 (I attempted to sleep early but ended up staying up all night.)

E.g. お酒を飲もうとしたが、奥さんが止めた。 (he tried to drink alcohol but his wife stopped him.)

To describe the attempt itself with another verb <v> (e.g. to think to attempt, to decide to attempt), use <v volitional>と<v>.

E.g. 勉強をなるべく避けようと思った。 (I thought I would attempt to avoid as much as possible studying.; なるべく: as much as possible)

E.g. 毎日事務に行こうと決めた。 (I decided to attempt to go to the gym everyday.)

## G3.21 Giving and receiving objects and favours

Giving and receiving gifts is a big part of Japanese culture. There are four verbs of interest: あげる、やる、くれる、もらう.

The act of giving is associated with the imagery of the gift/favour “going up” to the recipient, and the act of receiving is associated with the imagery of the gift/favour “coming down” from the

giver. This leads to the verbs for giving (first person) あげる (上げる), and giving (second person) くれる (whose honorific version of 下さる).

### G3.21.1 Giving [as a favour] [て]あげる、[て]やる、[て]くれる

There are three verbs for the act of giving, each with their own use.

- あげる: to give (first person, or third person from giver's POV). The speaker must use あげる when the speaker is giving something, and the auxiliary verb <v te>あげる when the speaker is doing someone a **favour**.

E.g. 私が友達にプレゼントをあげた。(first person; I gave present to friend.; the sentence ordering can be mixed up, e.g. 「私がプレゼントを友達にあげた。」)

E.g. これは先生にあげる。(first person; I'll give this to teacher.)

E.g. 学生がこれを先生にあげる。(third person; The student give this to teacher (looking at it from the giver's POV).; changing POV to that of recipient warrants a change to くれる)

E.g. 車を買ってあげるよ。(first person; I'll give you the favour of buying the car./I'll buy the car for you.)

E.g. 代わりに行ってあげる。(first person; I'll give you the favour of going as your substitute.; かわりに: as a substitute for)

E.g. 友達が父にいいことを教えてあげた。(third person; Friend gave the favour of teaching something good to my dad (looking at it from giver's POV).; changing POV to that of recipient warrants a change to くれる)

- やる: to give (first person), when the receiver is a pet/animal. This is never used for people, but is included here to point out that やる here means "to give" and not "to do" (colloquial).

E.g. 犬に餌をやった? (Did you give the dog food?; 餌: food for animals)

- くれる: to give (second person, or third person from recipient's POV). The speaker must use くれる when someone else is giving something to the speaker, or the auxiliary verb <v te> くれる when someone else is doing the speaker a favour.

As the recipient, the speaker uses くれる to emphasise the action of giving, and もらう to emphasise the action of receiving.

E.g. 友達が私にプレゼントをくれた。(second person; Friend gave present to me.)

E.g. これは、先生がくれた。(second person; Teacher gave this to me.)

E.g. 車を買ってくれるの? (second person; Will you give me the favour of buying a car?/ Will you buy me a car?)

E.g. 代わりに行ってくれる? (second person; Will you give me the favour of going as my substitute?/Will you go as my substitute?)

E.g. 先生がこれを学生にくれる。(third person; The teacher give this to student (looking at it from the recipient's POV).; changing POV to that of giver warrants a change to あげる)

E.g. 友達が父にいいことを教えてくれた。(third person; Friend gave the favour of teaching something good to my dad (looking at it from recipient's POV).; changing POV to that of giver warrants a change to あげる)

To better illustrate the difference between first and second person (あげる、くれる), compare the following sentences.

E.g. 先生が教えてあげるんですか。(Teacher, will you be giving the favour of teaching to (anybody *other* than the speaker)?)

E.g. 先生が教えてくれるんですか。(Teacher, will you be giving the favour of teaching to (anybody *including* the speaker)?)

When speaking as the recipient of an action or favour, as a recipient the verb くれる must be used.

E.g. 私が全部食べてあげました。(I gave the favour of eating it all.; *it's incorrect to use 食べてくれる here as "I" am not receiving the favour*)

E.g. 友達がプレゼントを私にくれた。(Friend gave present to me.; *it's incorrect to use あげた here because "I" am not the giver*)

### G3.21.2 Receiving [as a favour] [て]もらう

There is only one verb for receiving, もらう. To indicate who the speaker is receiving something from, use the from-marker particler から. The past form もらった is much more commonly used, to indicate that the speaker received something. The auxiliary verb <v te>もらう is used when the speaker is receiving the favour of someone doing <v te> for their sake.

As the recipient, the speaker uses くれる to emphasise the action of giving, and もらう to emphasise the action of receiving.

Important: for もらう, に marks the giver! <receiver>が, <giver>{に/から}. The subject is performing the receiving, and the target of receiving is the giver.

E.g. 私が友達にプレゼントをもらった。(I received present from friend.)

E.g. 友達からプレゼントをもらった。(I received present from friend.)

E.g. これは友達に買ってもらった。(About this, I received the favour from friend of buying this.)

E.g. 宿題をチェックしてもらいたかったけど、時間がなくて無理だった。(I wanted to receive the favour of homework checking, but there was no time and it was impossible.; もらう → もらいたい → もらいたかった)

As a non-typical use case, もらう can be used by the giver speaker if they want to emphasise that they are the one from whom the receiver received something.

E.g. その時計は私からもらったのよ。(He received that watch from me.)

### G3.21.3 Soliciting favours (≠ request) with auxiliary verbs てくれる、てもらえる

Not to be confused with making requests (§G3.22)! Asking for favours is softer and less direct: "would you do X for me", while making a request is more direct: "please do X".

The previous sections dealt with expressing the *actual event* of giving a gift or favour. The *solicitation* of a positive favour can be expressed as a question with <v te>てくれる? or <v te>てもらえる? (note the potential form of もらえる). Because the speaker is the recipient of the favour, あげる is not applicable.

〜てくれる is used to ask for favours, but when its imperative form is used, it becomes a command  
〜てくれ (§G3.22.4).

E.g. あなたが、私に千円を貸してくれる？ (Will you give me the favour of lending 1000 yen?; 貸す: to lend)

E.g. 私が、あなたに千円を貸してもらえる？ (Can I receive the favour of you lending 1000 yen?)

The examples include the explicit giver and receiver. They are usually omitted if obvious.

E.g. 千円を貸してくれる？ (Will you give me the favour of lending 1000 yen?)

E.g. 千円を貸してもらえる？ (Can I receive the favour of you lending 1000 yen?)

The request can be made softer by using the negative てもらえない？ (and their polite forms てもらえません。、てもらえませんか。).

E.g. ちょっと静かにしてくれない？ (Won't you be a little quiet?)

E.g. 感じて書いてもらえませんか。 (Can you write this in kanji for me?)

The solicitation of a negative favour can be expressed as a question as <v te-negative> してくれる？ or <v te-negative> もらえる？. Basically negate the <v te> and attach で instead of て, then either くれる？ or もらえる？ as before.

E.g. 全部食べないでくれませんか。 (Can you not eat it all?)

E.g. 高いものを買わないでくれる？ (Can you not buy expensive things?)

### G3.22 Making requests (≠ favours)

*Not to be confused with asking for favours (§G3.21.3)! Asking for favours is softer and less direct: “would you do X for me”, while making a request is more direct: “please do X”.*

The following sections discuss four ways to issue requests, in decreasing order of politeness:

ください > ちょうだい > なさい > imperative form.

#### G3.22.1 Honorific requests with ～てください。、～て

ください。 is the most common way of making requests. It is a special conjugation of くださる, the honorific form of くれる (§G3.21.1, §G3.21.3). ～ください must come at the end of the sentence or relative clause, just like です、ます。

On its own, くれる/ください can mean “please give me/hand me an object” as a transitive verb, using the schema <object>をください。

E.g. それをください。 (Please give me that.)

E.g. それをくれる？ (Can you give me that?)

E.g. 「それをください」とお父さんが言った。 (Father said, “Please give me that”).

ください can also mean “please do for me” as an auxiliary verb, with the schema <v te> ください。 Negative requests are made the same way as with solicitation of favours (§G3.21.3), using <v te-negative> ください。

E.g. 漢字で書いてください。 (Please write it in kanji.)

E.g. ゆっくり話してください。 (Please speak slowly.)

E.g. 落書きを書かないでください。 (Please don't draw graffiti.; 落書き: graffiti)



E.g. ここに来ないでください。 (Please don't come here.)

In casual speech, the ください is commonly dropped, so the naked te-form (or naked te-negative form) is used for making requests. Potential confusions with って, which is a short form for the indirect quotation <quote>と<v> (§G3.18.2) or the generic verb <quote>という<particles> (§G3.19.2).

E.g. 日本語で話して。 (Please speak in Japanese.)

E.g. 消しゴムを貸して。 (Please lend me the eraser.; 消すゴム: eraser)

E.g. 遠いところに行かないで。 (Please don't go to a far place.)

### G3.22.2 Casual requests with 〜ちょうだい。

頂戴 is 謙譲語 (humble language) for the transitive verb “to receive” and the auxiliary verb “please give me/do for me” (as 〜をちょうだい/〜てちょうだい). It is usually written using 仮名 alone. When written in 漢字, it is used as part of very formal expressions like 頂戴致します (致す: to do (humble)).

The grammatical rules for ちょうだい are exactly the same as ください, so it must come at the end of the sentence or relative clause. The same schemae apply: <object>をちょうだい and <v te>ちょうだい.

E.g. スプーンをちょうだい。 (Please give me the spoon.)

E.g. ここに名前を書いてちょうだい。 (Please write your name here.)

### G3.22.3 Polite firm requests with 〜なさい/〜な

なさい is a special honorific conjugation of する, and is a soft (polite) yet firm way of issuing a command. Common example usage situations include a mother scolding her child and a teacher wanting a delinquent student to pay attention. The schema is <v stem>なさい.

E.g. よく聞きなさい! (Listen well!)

E.g. ここで座りなさい。 (Sit here.; 座る: to sit)

E.g. やめなさい! (Stop!)

In casual speech, さい can be dropped, leaving <v stem>な. Do not confuse this (e.g. 返信しな) with the imperative-negative form (e.g. 返信するな, §G3.22.4), which is <v dict>な!

E.g. まだいっぱい合うから、たくさん食べな。 (There's still a lot, so eat a lot.; 食べな is the contraction of 食べなさい)

E.g. それでいいと思うなら、そうしなよ。 (If you think that's fine, then go ahead and do it.; しな is the contraction of しなさい)

### G3.22.4 Imperative form

The imperative form is the most direct and is thus rarely used in everyday conversation. It is a coarse type of speech that's only really used in fictional works, or in places where a stern command must be given (e.g. traffic stop signs). Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of conjugations. Here, する、来る and くれる are exceptions (しろ、こい、くれ).

〜てくれる is used to ask for favours (§G3.21.3), but when its imperative form is used, it becomes a command 〜てくれ.

E.g. 好きにしろ。 (Do as you please.)

E.g. あっち行け！ (Go away!)

E.g. 頑張れ！ (Keep at it!; imperative form of 頑張る)

E.g. 早く酒を持ってきてくれ。 (Hurry up and bring some alcohol.; 持つ → 持ってくる → 持ってきてくれ)

E.g. 日本語で話してくれ。 (Speak in Japanese.)

E.g. 消しゴムを貸してくれ。 (Lend me the eraser.; 消すゴム: eraser)

E.g. 遠いところに行かないでくれ。 (Don't go to a far place.)

E.g. 止まれ。 (Stop (road sign).)

E.g. やめろ！ (Stop!)

E.g. 死ね！ (Die!)

Do not confuse this (e.g. 返信するな) with the polite firm request contraction ~な (e.g. 返信しな, §G3.22.3), whose schema is <v stem>な!

E.g. それを食べるな！ (Don't eat that!)

E.g. 変なことを言うな！ (Don't say weird things!)

### G3.23 The number system

Read the supplementary article on [Tofugu](#).

Finally we reach the point in the textbook that talks about the number systems in the Japanese language. There are three counting languages, based on the origins of the words: 和語 (Japanese language), 漢語 (Chinese origin/Sino-Japanese word), and 外来語 (loanword of Western origin).

The 漢語 counting method is the most common (いち、に、さん、し、よん、ご、ろく、しち、はち、く、じゅう). However, 4 is most often pronounced as よん (from 和語) to avoid the homophone with 死 (death), 7 is most often pronounced as なな (from 和語) to avoid confusion with いち, and 9 is most often pronounced as きゅう to avoid the homophone with 苦 (suffering). Above 10, the reading is almost always よん and なな.

The 和語 counting method (ひ、ふ、み、よ、い、む、な、や、こ、とお) is exclusively used for small numbers from 1 to 10 (and exceptions like 20 days/-th day, 20 years old, sometimes 30 and 40). The exception is the reading for 4 (よん) and 7 (なな), which are almost always used regardless of how big or small the number is.

The 外来語 counting method follows English pronunciations (ワン、ツー、スリー、フォー、ファイブ、シックス、セブン、エイト、ナイン、テン) and is most notably used for the セット counter (for sets). It is rarely used for pure counting.

It is customary to write large numbers only in numbers as even 漢字 can become difficult to decipher. Even though Japanese uses a new word for every  $10^4$  (like Chinese, and instead of the  $10^3$  divide used by English and other languages), when written in numerals, the same  $10^3$  divide is used. E.g. 一萬 is written 10,000 or 1 0 0 0 0.



### G3.23.1 Numbers smaller than 1

Zero in Japanese is 零<sup>れい</sup>, but more commonly pronounced as either ゼロ or マル. For reading decimals, we say 点<sup>てん</sup> for the dot, and read each individual number after the decimal point.

E.g. 0.0021 is ゼロ、点、ゼロ、ゼロ、二<sup>に</sup>、一<sup>いち</sup>.

For negative numbers, simply say 「マイナス」 before the number.

E.g. -29.0021 is マイナス、二十<sup>にじゅう</sup>九<sup>きゅう</sup>、text{点}{てん}、ゼロ、ゼロ、二<sup>に</sup>、一<sup>いち</sup>.

### G3.23.2 Dates

Read the main article on [Wikipedia](#).

A date is formally written as YYYY 年 MM 月 DD 日. For instance, at the time of writing, today's date is 2024 年 12 月 6 日.

The date can alternatively be written using the Japanese regnal (counting up from the monarch's ascension) calendar, using the format 元号<sup>げんごう</sup> *n* 年<sup>ねん</sup> (元号: era name). *n* starts as 1 in the Gregorian year the era's emperor ascends to the throne (also known as the 元年<sup>がんねん</sup>, "origin year" of era), and counts up to 2 the following Gregorian year. For instance, at the time of writing, today's date is 令和<sup>れいわ</sup>6 年 12 月 6 日. The year 令和<sup>れいわ</sup>6 年 can be abbreviated to R6 as well. Because the final year in a previous era is the same as the first year in the following era, during years of transition there are two ways to refer to that year (e.g. 2019 is both 平成<sup>へいせい</sup>31 and 令和<sup>れいわ</sup>1).

For the modern eras (starting from 1868), each emperor corresponds to one era. Each emperor inherits their era's 元号<sup>げんごう</sup> posthumously as <元号>天皇<sup>てんのう</sup>, so it is rude to refer to the emperor using the era name! The reigning emperor is to be referred to as 天皇陛下<sup>てんのうのうへい か</sup> ("His Majesty the Emperor") or 今上天皇<sup>きんじょうてんのう</sup> ("current emperor").

The eras are summarised in Table 12.

Table 12: Modern eras in the Japanese regnal calendar.

元号 <sup>げんごう</sup>	Emperor	元年 <sup>がんねん</sup>	Abbreviation range	Notable years
明治 <sup>めいじ</sup> Meiji	睦仁 <sup>むつひと</sup> Mutsuhito	1868・明治 1	M1–M45	
大正 <sup>たいしょう</sup> Taishō	嘉仁 <sup>よしひと</sup> Yoshihito	1912・明治 45・大正 1	T1–T15	
昭和 <sup>しょうわ</sup> Shōwa	裕仁 <sup>ひろひと</sup> Hirohito	1926・大正 15・昭和 1	S1–S64	1945 = 昭和 20
平成 <sup>へいせい</sup> Heisei	明仁 <sup>あきひと</sup> Akihito	1989・昭和 64・平成 1	H1–H31	
令和 <sup>れいわ</sup> Reiwa	德仁 <sup>なるひと</sup> Naruhito	2019・平成 31・令和 1	R1–present (令和 7)	2020 = 令和 2 2025 = 令和 7

### G3.23.3 Systemic reading changes for counters

Once acquainted with the basic three numbering systems, the next thing is to gain exposure to the various counters (similar to the Chinese language). Pronunciations morph a little based on a largely deterministic set of rules, as shown in Table 13. Detailed examples are in the supplementary PDF.

The known counters 枚<sup>まい</sup>、台<sup>だい</sup>、秒<sup>びょう</sup>、番<sup>ばん</sup>、日<sup>にち</sup>、駅<sup>えき</sup> do not encounter these reading changes.

Table 13: Systemic reading changes of numeric counters. The じゅう row always admits じつ, but that pronunciation is rare. <sup>†</sup>Informal pronunciation.

Numeral	/k/	/s/	/t/	/h/	/f/	/p/	/w/	/n/	(rest)
既知 個、軒、階、月、回 歳、冊、足 着、頭、通り 本、杯、匹、発					分	?	羽	人、年、月、時、時間	
何 (なん/g/) <sup>何</sup>		(なん/z/) <sup>何</sup>		なん/b/ (なん/p/) <sup>何</sup>	なん/p/				
いち	いつ/k/	いつ/s/	いつ/t/	いつ/p/	いつ/p/	いつ/p/			
に									
さん	(さん/g/) <sup>何</sup>			さん/b/ (さん/p/) <sup>何</sup>	さん/p/		さんば		
よん					よん/p/			よ/n/	(し〜) <sup>何</sup> よ〜
ご									
ろく	ろっ/k/			ろっ/p/	ろっ/p/	ろっ/p/			
なな									しち〜
はち	(はっ/k/) <sup>何</sup>	はっ/s/	はっ/t/	はっ/p/	はっ/p/	はっ/p/			
きゅう									く〜
じゅう	じゅっ/k/	じゅっ/s/	じゅっ/t/	じゅっ/p/	じゅっ/p/	じゅっ/p/	じっば		
ひゃく	ひゃっ/k/			ひゃっ/p/	ひゃっ/p/	ひゃっ/p/	ひゃくつば		
せん	(せん/g/) <sup>何</sup>			せん/b/ (せん/p/) <sup>何</sup>	せん/p/		せんば		
まん				{まん/b/ (まん/p/) <sup>何</sup>	まん/p/		まんば		

### G3.23.4 Ordinals counters ~目/第~

Read the discussion on [Reddit](#).

The 目 suffix or 第 prefix can be attached to any of the counting numerals to indicate ordinal position. Note that 第 forces 漢語 readings of certain counters (notably 日 → 日), as shown by example in §SB.24.

Use of the 目 suffix is preferred when:

- in slightly casual settings
- order is not predetermined or fixed (e.g. rankings)
- order is not significant (e.g. rankings)

Use of the 第 prefix is preferred when:

- in slightly formal settings
- the order is predetermined and fixed (e.g. chapters in a book, episodes of a show, questions in a test)
- the order is significant (e.g. first impression, first bank)

## G3.24 Casual and slang speech

Just like how English slang is designed for communication efficiency (or style), and is pretty wack when compared to proper standard English, Japanese slang is the same. Slang vocabulary is growing with each new generation. Japanese slang is also heavily influenced by local dialects, though most of the content here is suited for the greater 東京 area.

In Japanese slang, anything goes and rules that apply to written Japanese are often broken, but you have to break them correctly. This is something that requires real practice with real people in real-world situations. Generally, the fundamental goal of slang is to make things easier to say by reducing mouth movement: many sounds are shortened or slurred together for that purpose.

E.g. ここはつまらないつまらないから、私んちの家へ行こう。(It's boring here, let's go to my place.; つまらない: boring)

E.g. **まったく**まったく、いつまでこんなところで、**グズグズすんだ**するんだよ。(Good grief, when are you going to linger in this kind of place until?; **グズグズする**: to linger/hesitate)

### G3.24.1 Sentence ordering

A complete grammatically correct sentence typically ends with a verb.

The usual ordering comprises of six elements:

0. <topic>**は**
1. <いつ>**に** (when)
2. <どこ>**で** (where)
3. <誰>**が** (who)
4. <誰>**と** (with who)
5. <どの>**ように** (how)
6. <何>**をする** (verb)

In Japanese slang, this is often bent. In conversations, it's typical to say the first thing that comes up in our thoughts, without thinking about how to structure the whole sentence properly. Often, this first thought is the verb. Once the verb has already out of your mouth, you'd then follow up with an explanation of what you mean: the surrounding context and such.

E.g. **それは何?** (proper; What is that?)

E.g. **何それ?** (slang; What is that?; a contraction of **何?それ。**)

E.g. **見た?あの人?** (Did you see? That guy?)

E.g. **もう食べた?昨日買ったアイス。** (Have you eaten it? The ice cream I bought yesterday.)

### G3.24.2 Seeking positive confirmation with **じゃない** and **じゃん**

**じゃない** is an い-adjective that can be used as a question to weakly assert the positive (with a seeking confirmation tone, like the **ね** particle). It expresses the nuance that you're relatively sure but it's still a question. **じゃん** is its slang contraction, and can be attached to the end of any sentence and any part-of-speech. regardless **じゃない** is slightly feminine, while **じゃん** is neutral.

E.g. **サラリーマンだから、残業はたくさんするんじゃない?** (Because he's a salaryman, he probably does a lot of overtime (don't you think?).)

E.g. **まあ、いいじゃない。** (Well, it's probably fine (don't you think?).)

E.g. **まあ、いいじゃん。** (Well, it's probably fine (don't you think?).)

E.g. **ほら、やっぱりレポートを書かないとだめじゃん。** (See, as I thought, you have to write the report.)

E.g. **誰もいないからここで着替えてもいいじゃん。** (Since there's nobody, it's probably fine to change here.)

E.g. **たかし君は、ここにいる?知らない。あっ!やっぱやっぱり、いるじゃん!** (Is Takashi-kun here? Dunno. Ah! See, he's here!)

The questioning, seeking confirmation tone can be strengthened by adding the question particle **か (じゃんか)**, even in informal settings.

E.g. **駅の近くにカラオケがあるじゃんか。** うん、あそこのすぐ隣。<sup>となり</sup>(There's a karaoke place near the station, right? Yes, it's right next to it.; **すぐ**: immediately/directly, **隣**<sup>となり</sup>: next to/adjacent)

### G3.24.3 Showing contempt for an action with auxiliary verb やがる

The auxiliary verb やがる (used as <stem>やがる) indicates hatred, contempt or disdain for another's action. This is derogatory and is only used inside of movies, comic books and games.

E.g. あんなやつに負けやがって。じゃ、どうすんだよ？ (Losing to a guy like that. Well, what are you going to do?)

E.g. やる気か？だったらさっさと来やがれ！ (You want to fight? If so, then hurry up and come on!; ~やがれ is the imperative form of ~やがる)

### G3.24.4 The <sup>なに</sup>何 mispronunciation and filler word <sup>なん</sup>なんか

% When used to mean “what”, 何 can be read as either <sup>なに</sup>なに or <sup>なん</sup>なん depending on the word that comes after (e.g. <sup>なに</sup>何色 (what colour), <sup>なん</sup>何人 (how many people)).

<sup>なに</sup>何か means “something” and its correct reading is <sup>なに</sup>なにか, but in slang it is often contracted to <sup>なん</sup>なんか.

E.g. <sup>なん</sup>なんか<sup>何</sup>か食べる？

Also, <sup>なん</sup>なんか is a filler word like “like...” in English. It has no special meaning, though it may express slight uncertainty about the word that comes immediately after. This filler word is written in 仮名 only and has got nothing to do with the word <sup>なに</sup>何か for “something”.

E.g. 今日は、なんか忙しいみたいよ。 (I guess he's like busy today.)

E.g. なんかね。お風呂って超気持ちいいよね！ (Like, baths feel really good, huh?)

E.g. お母さんが、なんか明日まで戻らないんだってよ。 (Mom said she's not coming back until like tomorrow.)

E.g. なんかさ。ボブは、私のことなんか本当に好きかな？ (Hey like, does Bob like really like somebody like me?; さ particle (§G3.25), かな question particle (§G3.25.1)).

## G3.25 More sentence ending particles な、さ and gender-specific ones わ、ぞ、ぜ

な、さ are casual forms of the ね、よ particles respectively, which were introduced in §G2.12.

- な: a rough casual form of ね (to express seeking and expectation of agreement, like “right?/ isn't it?” in English), and is preferred when ね sounds too soft or reserved for what you're trying to say.

E.g. 今、図書館に行くんだよな。うん、なんで？ (You are going to the library now huh? (seeking explanation) Yeah, why?)

E.g. 日本語は、たくさん勉強したけどな。まだ全然わからない。大丈夫よ、きっとわかるようになるからさ。ならいいけどな。 (I studied Japanese a lot, right? But I still don't get it at all. No problem, you know? Because you'll become able to understand for sure. If so, it would be good.)

- さ: a very casual form of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like “you know...” in English), and is used like the English filler “like...”. It's not a very sophisticated manner of speech, but it's over-used and an easy habit to fall into, just like how “like” is over-used in English.

あのさ... うん。この間<sup>あいだ</sup>さ... うん。ディズニーランドに行ったんだけどさ、なんかさ、すごい込んで... うん。何もできなくてさ... (Hey...{} Yeah. This one time...{} Yeah. I went to Disney Land and it was really crowded...{} Uh huh. Couldn't do anything...{}; 間<sup>あいだ</sup>: period of time during, 込む: to be crowded)

The following three are sentence-ending particles used purely for emphasis and have no further special meaning. They make your statements sound much stronger and gender-specific.

- わ: feminine emphasis version of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like "you know..." in English).

E.g. もう時間がないわ。 (There is no more time.)

- ぞ、ぜ: masculine/"cool" emphasis versions of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like "you know..." in English).

E.g. おい、行くぞ! (Hey, we're going!)

E.g. これで、もう終わりだぜ。 (With this, it's over already.)

Note that females can use ぞ/ぜ, and males can use わ too, for coolness or softness respectively.

### G3.25.1 Question particle かな and gender-specific ones かしら、かい、だい

The な (casual ね) particle can be combined with the question particle か to form かな, typically used when the speaker is considering something. かしら is the feminine version of かな.

E.g. 今日は雨が降るかな? (I wonder if it'll rain today.)

E.g. いい大学に行けるかな? (I wonder if I can go to a good university.)

E.g. いい大学に行けるかしら? (I wonder if I can go to a good university.)

かい (only for yes/no question) and だい (only for open-ended question) are masculine question particles.

E.g. おい、どこに行くんだい? (Hey, where are you going?)

E.g. さきちゃんって呼んでもいいかい? (Can I call you Saki-chan?)

E.g. 一体いつに帰ってくるつもりだったんだい? (What time were you planning on coming home exactly?)

E.g. 俺は土曜日、映画を見に行くけど、一緒に行くかい? (I'm going to see a movie on Saturday, want to go together?)

### G3.26 Example conversations

Here are two example conversations to apply what we've learnt in this entire "essential grammar" section.

- アイス: 加賀先生、ちょっと質問を聞いてもいいですか。 (Kaga-sensei, is it ok to ask you a question?)

加賀先生: はい、いいですよ。 (Sure.)

アリス: 「Hello」を日本語で何と言えばいいですか。 (How do you say "Hello" in Japanese?; quotation + conditional form of 言う)

加賀先生: そうね。だいたい、「こんにちは」と言いますよ。ただし、書く時は「こ

んにちわ」**じゃなくて**、「こんいちわ」と書かなくてはなりません。(Well, mostly, I think people say “konnichiwa”. However, when you write it, it is not “konnichiwa”; you must write “konnichiha”.; nested quotation + quotation; negative sequence of states)

アリス：そうですか。<sup>ほか</sup>他に何かいい<sup>ひょうげん</sup>表現はありますか。(Is that so? Are there any other good expressions?; 他: other (Do not confuse with <sup>かれ</sup>彼!) “Other something good expression, exist?”)  
加賀先生：これも覚え<sup>ほか</sup>といてね。朝は、「おはよう」と言うの。でも、上の人には「おはようございます」と言ってください。(Do remember this too (in preparation for the future). In the morning, everybody says “ohayou”. But, to a higher person, please say “ohayou-gozzaimasu”.; 覚える → 覚えておく → 覚えとく → 覚えといて<sup>ください</sup> (te-form request of casual form of 覚えておく))

アリス：はい、わかりました。<sup>まちが</sup>間違えないようにします。いい勉強になりました！(Ok, I got it. I'll try not to make that mistake. That was very informative (“it became good study”)!)

- <sup>ようすけ</sup>洋介：お！アリスだ。あのね、質問を聞いてもいい？(Oh! It's Alice. Hey, can I ask you a question?)

アリス：何？(What's up?)

洋介：ちょっと英語を**教えてもらいたい**んだけどさ、もし時間があれば、教えてくれない？(I want to learn English, so if you have time, can you teach me? 教えてもらいたい is the desiderative form of 教えてもらう.)

アリス：え？英語を勉強するの？(Huh? You're going to study English?)

洋介：うん、アメリカで留学**してみたい**な**と思**ってね。去年も**行**こうとしたけど、お金がなくて…(Yeah, I was thinking about trying out studying abroad in America. I attempted going last year too, but I didn't have money.; 留学してみたい + な sentence ending particle + quotation + 思**って**; 行こうとする: to attempt to go)

アリス：そうなの？いいよ。いつ教えてほしいの？(Really? No problem. When do you want me to teach you?)

洋介：いつでもいいよ。(Anytime is good.)

アリス：じゃ、来週の木曜日からはどう？(Then, how about from next Thursday?)

洋介：うん、いいよ。ありがとう！(Yeah, that's good. Thank you!)

ありす：勉強を**怠**けたり、**来**な**か**ったりしないでね。(Don't shirk on your studies or not come, ok?; 怠<sup>なま</sup>ける: to laze)

洋介：そんなことしないよ！(I won't do anything like that!)

## G4 Special expressions

This section is named “special expressions” because except the first few subsections, most of the grammar here applies to more specific use-cases. However, this “special expressions” section as whole is necessary for everyday conversations.

### G4.1 Causative, passive and causative-passive forms

We finally learn the last three major verb conjugations.

#### G4.1.1 Causative form $\sim\overset{\sim}{\text{○}}\{\text{せる/す}\}$

The causative form of verbs indicate that someone *was made to* perform the verb. It has two senses: making somebody do something, and letting someone to do something. **Disambiguation between the two senses is based on context!**

When the causative form is used with あげる/くれる, it almost always means to “let someone do”. Otherwise, it usually means “make someone do”.

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All causative form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

When listening,  $\sim\overset{\sim}{\text{○}}\text{せ}$  is the signal for passive voice, though for る-verbs there is potential conflict with the potential form.

E.g. 全部食べさせた。 (Made/let someone eat it all.)

E.g. 全部食べさせてくれた。 (Let someone eat it all.)

E.g. 先生が学生に宿題をたくさんさせた。 (Teacher made students do lots of homework.)

E.g. 先生が質問をたくさん聞かせてくれた。 (Teacher let someone ask lots of questions.; 聞く → 聞かせる (causative) → 聞かせてくれる (to give the favour))

E.g. 今日は仕事を休ませてください。 (Please let me rest from work today.; 休む → 休ませる (causative) → 休ませてください (desiderative of causative, “let-do” sense))

E.g. その部長は、よく長時間働かせる。 (That manager often makes people work long hours.; 働く (to work) → 働かせる (causative))

When *asking* for permission to let someone do something (including letting yourself do something), it's more common to use the 「～でもいい」 grammar (§G3.16.3).

E.g. お手洗いに行かせてくれませんか。 (Can you let me go to the toilet? (sounds like a prisoner, even in English))

E.g. お手洗いに行ってもいいですか。 (Is it ok to go to the toilet?)

In very rough/casual slang, the causative form may be expressed with the う-verb ending  $\sim\text{す}$ . For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All causative form verbs are う-verbs. Further conjugations follow う-verb rules (with す ending).

E.g. 同じことを何回も言わす言わせるな! (Don't make me say the same thing again and again!)

E.g. お腹空いているんだから、なんか食べさしてくれ食べさせてくれよ。 (I'm hungry, so let me eat something.; 食べる → 食べさす → 食べさしてくれる → 食べさしてくれ (imperative))



#### G4.1.2 Interlude I: passivisation, direct and indirect/adversative passives

Read the supplementary materials on [TFG1] and [TFG2].

There is no such thing as a “suffering passive”: there is nothing in the language that indicates that someone is suffering from a passive verb. The “suffering” connotation comes from the passive verb indicating that the experiencer has no control over the performed action. ([TK])

Note that parts-of-speech (e.g. object, subject) are purely grammatical (syntactic) roles. An entity being the performer of the action or the receiver of the action’s effects are semantic roles. Semantic roles do not change under passivisation (otherwise the sentence’s meaning changes), whereas grammatical roles may change.

(SL) In English, passivisation can only be applied to a sentence containing a transitive verb. When it occurs, the object is promoted to the subject position, and the subject is demoted to an oblique (a non-required argument).

In Japanese, passivisation is a bit more flexible: intransitive verbs can be passivised too.

We now distinguish between the direct and indirect/adversative passives *in Japanese*.

- **Direct passive (transitive only):** used to express that the transitive verb was done to someone/something (subject experiencer; marked by が), by someone (origin oblique/optional performer; marked by に). The effect that the action has on the experiencer is very obvious, since the verb is done directly to them (promoted to subject grammatical role). The subject (demoted to an oblique) is often omitted as it’s not important. The Japanese direct passive is equivalent to the English passive.

The semantic performer is the syntactic origin after passivisation and marked by に. This usage of に as *origin* rather than *destination* is very similar to もらう’s usage (§G3.21.2, [TFG]), since the passive subject is the receiver (experiencer) in the transaction (action).

E.g. ピカソにキスされた。(I was kissed by Picasso.)

E.g. タバコが吸われた。(A cigarette was smoked.)

- **Indirect passive (both transitive and intransitive):** used to express that someone (origin performer; marked by に) did a transitive/intransitive verb, involving an optional direct object (only for transitive verbs; marked by を), and it had an effect on someone (experiencer; marked by は/が; [TK]). There is no equivalent in English. The adversative nuance is not guaranteed, though very likely present in indirect passive sentences.

E.g. (私は) (あのおじさんに) タバコを吸われた。(I got smoked on (by that man).; [TFG1])

In the above example, the passive verb is 吸われた, the experiencer is me, and the performer is あのおじさん (marked by origin particle に). The indirect passive emphasises that this act of smoking was done to me, and that I did not have control over it, creating the nuance that the act was a nuisance.

E.g. ブラット・ピットに目の前でタバコを吸われて、<sup>きぜつ</sup>気絶するかと思った。(I got smoked on by Brad Pitt right in front of me, and I thought I was going to faint.; <sup>きぜつ</sup>気絶: loss of consciousness; more natural translation would be “Brad Pitt smoked right in front of me, and I thought I was going to faint.”; [TFG1])



In the above example, the indirect passive is used, but the effect may not be adversative depending on the context: I could be fainting from the smoke, or from the fact that it's Brad Pitt.

Except for a few cases, the indirect passive is always formed with verbs that were intentionally performed by *someone*. The performer of the verb (marked by に) is therefore usually a person. Only (some) weather-related verbs are acceptable exceptions to this rule, where the performer is a weather-related object. More details in §G4.2.3.

E.g. 私は本に頭に落ちられた。 (My head was fallen on by a book.; [TFG1]) **Unnatural sentence: the performer should not be an object.**

E.g. 突然雨に降られた。 (All of a sudden, I was rained on.; 降る is intransitive; [TFG1])

E.g. 花子が隣の学生にピアノを朝まで弾かれた。 (Hanako had the student next to her play the piano on her until morning.; a more natural translation is “Hanako was adversely affected by the student next to her playing the piano until morning.”; [Wiki])

For a deeper treatment of the passive voice, refer to the postlude §G4.2).

### G4.1.3 Passive form ～られる

The passive voice in Japanese is often used in written essays and articles. Read more about passivisation in §G4.1.2.

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All passive form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules. **Note that for る-verbs and 来る, the passive form is identical to the potential form (～られる); disambiguation requires context and is otherwise impossible.**

When listening, ～られる is the signal for passive voice, though for る-verbs there is potential conflict with the potential form.

In Japanese, the standard SOV sentence schema is <subject>が<object>を<transitive v>, or <performer>が<experiencer>を<transitive v> in semantic terms. After passivisation into the **direct passive**, it becomes <performer>に<experiencer>が<transitive v passive form>. Notice that the semantic performer is now the syntactic origin (marked by に), and the semantic experiencer is now the syntactic subject (marked by が/は). This is very similar to もらう's usage of に as a origin particle (§G3.21.2, [TFG]), since **the passive subject is the receiver (experiencer) in the transaction (action).**

E.g. ポリッジが誰かに食べられた! (The porridge was eaten by somebody!)

E.g. みんなに変だと言われます。 (I am told by everybody that (I'm/it's) strange.)

E.g. 光の速さを超えるのは、不可能だと思われる。 (Exceeding the speed of light is thought to be impossible.)

E.g. この教科書は多くの人に読まれている。 (This textbook is being read by a large number of people.)

E.g. 外国人に質問を聞かれたが、答えられなかった。 (I was asked a question by a foreigner, but I couldn't answer.)

E.g. このパッケージには、あらゆる物が含まれている。 (Everything is included in this package.; あらゆる: all, 含む: to contain)

% Because an indirect sentence is more polite in Japanese, the passive voice is used to show a level of politeness above the normal **ます** form. In a similar sense to how it's more polite to address someone indirectly, and how it's more polite to ask negative questions than positive ones (§G3.4.2), the passive form makes the sentence less direct because the subject (now the experiencer) does not directly perform the action. In increasing levels of politeness of expressing “what will you do?”:

1. (active voice) どうする？
2. (active voice, polite) どうしますか。
3. (passive voice, polite) どうされますか。
4. (??? voice, honorific, S???) どうなさいますか。
5. (??? voice, honorific, less certainty, S???) どうなさいますでしょうか。

With increasing indirection and politeness, the sentence grows longer and longer.

E.g. <sup>りようしゅうしょう</sup>領収証はどうされますか。(What about your receipt?)

E.g. 明日の<sup>かいぎ</sup>会議に行かれるんですか。(Are you going to tomorrow's meeting?; passive voice deliberately used for politeness)

#### G4.1.4 Causative-passive form ～<sup>あ</sup>せられる

The causative-passive form is used to express the idea that the action of “making someone do something” was performed to that person, or in short, the idea that someone was made to do something. The verb is first conjugated to the causative then the passive, never the other way round.

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All passive form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

The causative-passive form is a variant of the passive voice, so the **に** particle marks the *origin*, i.e. the performer of the action.

When listening, ～<sup>あ</sup>せられ is the signal for causative-passive voice.

E.g. 朝ごはんは食べたくなかったのに、食べさせられた。(Despite not wanting to eat breakfast, I was made to eat it.)

E.g. 日本では、お酒を飲ませられることが多い。(In Japan, the event of being made to drink is numerous.)

E.g. あいつに二時間も待たせられた。(I was made to wait 2 hours by that guy.)

E.g. <sup>おや</sup>親に毎日宿題をさせられる。(I was made to do homework everyday by my parents.; <sup>おや</sup>親: parents)

The following shortened causative-passive form only exists for う-verbs with \* \ {す}-ending.

In very rough/casual slang, the shortened causative-passive form (derived from the shortened causative form, §G4.1.1) may be used. This form only exists for う-verbs with the exception of those with a す-ending in dictionary form, because wherever the shortened causative form ends with ～さす, the shortened causative-passive form would have 「…**さされる**」 in it, which is not allowed.

E.g. 学生が廊下<sup>ろうか</sup>に<sup>た</sup>立たされた<sup>た</sup>立たせられた。(The student was made to stand in the hall.; <sup>た</sup>立つ: to stand)

E.g. 日本では、お酒を飲まされる<sup>飲ませられる</sup>ことが多い。(In Japan, the event of being made to drink is numerous.)

E.g. あいつに二時間も待たされた<sup>待たせられた</sup>。(I was made to wait 2 hours by that guy.)

## G4.2 Postlude: a deep dive into passivisation in Japanese

Read the article chain starting from [TMJK1].

*This website is a teachers' reference, and I obtained it from a Quora answer. For the interest of time and for the sake of not losing focus on the main task at hand (learning how passivisation works in Japanese), I'll be taking notes after translating the website. I hope that one day I'll be able to read such websites directly without the help of translation. What's holding me back at the moment is lacking a fair bit of grammar knowledge and a lot of vocabulary knowledge...*

### G4.2.1 Introduction into the passive voice 受動態<sup>じゅうどうたい</sup>

Read the main article on [TMJK1].

The passive voice (受身<sup>うけみ</sup>、受動態<sup>じゅうどうたい</sup>) has multiple interpretations. There are distinct subsets of passive voice (expressions *A* and *B* on TMJK's Venn diagram) that are highly similar. At the beginner level, where the students' grammar and vocabulary knowledge are very limited, it is not possible to cover the nuances between similar usages. Instead, we'll first study parts of *A* and *B* that are as far away as possible from where they may overlap, such that their differences are more perceivable and gentler to learn. Some beginner-level grammar will be used; such grammar is not meant for natives but is useful for non-native learners.

There are over ten types of passive voice, if we want to pedantically differentiate them all.

### G4.2.2 Classifications of the passive voice

Read the main article on [TMJK2].

The reason passive voices are difficult for students is that they have to learn so many forms in one day, at one go.

From the みんなの日本語 textbook, there are six:

1. 私は部長に褒められました。(I was praised by my boss.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))  
私は部長に仕事を頼まれました。(I was requested by my boss to do work.; 頼む: to request/entrust to (transitive))
2. 私は誰かに足を踏まれました。(My foot was stepped on by someone. 踏む: to step on (transitive))  
私は母に漫画の本を捨てられました。(My manga books were thrown away by my mom.; 捨てる: to throw away (transitive))
3. 大阪で展覧会が開かれます。(The exhibition will be held in Osaka.; 開く: to open (business) (intransitive))  
大阪で国際会議が行われます。(An international conference will be held in Osaka.; 行う: to perform/carry out (transitive))
4. この美術館は来月壊されます。(This art museum will be demolished next month.; 壊す: to break/demolish (transitive))

この美術館は200年前に建てられました。(建てる: to construct (transitive))

5. 日本の車はいろいろな国へ輸出されています。(Japanese cars are exported to many countries.; 輸出する: to export (transitive))

洗濯機はこの工場で組み立てられています。(Washing machines are assembled in this factory.; 組み立てる: to assemble (transitive))

6. 「源氏物語」は紫式部によって書かれました。(The Tale of Genji (Heian-period classic) was written by Murasaki Shikibu.; 書く: to write (transitive))

電話はグラハム・ベルによって発明されました。(The telephone was invented by Graham Bell.; 発明する: to invent (transitive))

There are two particles 「に」 and 「より」 associated with the passive voice. To learn them both in one day is asking too much from learners. みんなの日本語 also misses out passive intransitive verbs such as 「雨に降られた。」.

From the 大地 textbook, there are four:

1. 私は先生に呼ばれました。(I was called by my teacher.; 呼ぶ: to call out to (transitive))

私は先生に注意されました。(I was reprimanded by my teacher.; 注意する: to reprimand)

2. (†) 私は子どもにカメラを壊されました。(I had my camera broken on by my child.; 壊す: to break/demolish (transitive))

(†) 私は雨に降られました。(I was rained on.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall (intransitive))

3. 大阪で会議が開かれます。(The meeting is held in Osaka.; 開く: to open (business) (intransitive))

金沢は小京都と言われています。(Kanazawa is said to be a Little Kyoto (small town with historical features reminiscent of Kyoto).; 言う: to be called/defined (transitive))

4. 源氏物語は紫式部によって書かれました。(The Tale of Genji (Heian-period classic) was written by Murasaki Shikibu.; 書く: to write (transitive))

Here, (†) are examples of the intransitive passive. The 「～と言われています」 construct (言う → 言われる (passive) → 言われている (progressive passive) → 言われています (polite progressive passive)) is very often used in the passive voice (“it is said that…”).

The burden on learners can be significantly reduced by dividing the teaching up into parts. For the six forms in みんなの日本語, we can group them into two groups: {1, 2} and {3, 4, 5, 6}. The first two kinds involve emotion, while the last four don't.

Furthermore, a distinct feature of the Japanese passive voice is the adversative passive interpretation (迷惑の受身). However, whether an action is adversative depends less on the sentence structure, and much more on the meaning of the verb used. [There is therefore nothing inherently in the grammatical rules and syntax that suggest adversativity.](#) The passive voice can be used for *both* positive and negative emotions, even if the passive voice always conveys the idea that the experiencer has no control over the action and its performer.

E.g. 私は先生に褒められました。(non-adversative; I was praised by my teacher.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))

E.g. 私は先生にしかられました。 (adversative; I was scolded by my teacher.; しかる: to scold (transitive))

To start off, fix the experiencer to always be “me”, and fix the sentence structure to be 「私は<performer>に<verb passive>」. The experiencer will change later as we progress further (§G4.2.4).

### G4.2.3 The grammar rules of passives

Read the main articles on [TMJK3] and [TMJK4].

For the sake of ease of understanding, we categorise the passive voice into two broad groups:

- ちよくせつうけみ 直接受身のグループ (direct passive group). Broadly speaking, in this group, the subject (suffixed by は/が) has something done to them directly by someone (suffixed by に).

Members include:

- ▶ 直接受身 (direct passive), a.k.a. 直接対象たいしょうの受身 (direct target passive)、相手あいての受身 (other party passive)

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> IS the promoted object of the corresponding active voice sentence.

- ▶ ちゅうりつ 中立の受身 (neutral passive)

- かんせつうけみ 間接受身のグループ (indirect passive group). Broadly speaking, in this group, the subject (suffixed by は/が) has something done to them indirectly by someone (suffixed by に).

Members include:

- ▶ 間接受身 (indirect passive)

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

- ▶ 迷惑めいわくの受身 (adversative passive)
- ▶ 持ち主ぬしの受身 (possessive passive)

<experiencer-owner>{が/は}<performer>に<ownee>を<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

- ▶ 自動詞自動詞の受身 (intransitive passive)

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v intransitive passive>.

At the end of the day, from this landscape, the syntax is mostly the same.

We now look at the direct, indirect, possessive and indirect passives more closely. Here are their definitions (定義).

1. ちよくせつうけみ 直接受身 (direct passive).

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> IS the promoted object of the corresponding active voice sentence.

- There is a corresponding active voice sentence.

のうどうぶん [能動文] 太郎たろうはジョンなぐを殴なぐった。 (Taro punched John.; 殴なぐる: to punch (transitive))

<sup>じゅどうぶん</sup>  
[受動文] ジョンは太郎に殴られた。 (John was punched by Taro.; <sup>なぐ</sup>殴る: to punch (transitive))

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed (depends on the passivised verb).*

[迷惑の意味がない] 私は先生に褒められた。 (I was praised by my teacher.; <sup>ほめる</sup>褒める: to praise (transitive))

[迷惑の意味がある] 私は先生にしかられた。 (I was scolded by my teacher.; <sup>しかる</sup>しかる: to scold (transitive))

- *Exists in English.*

Because the direct passive is equivalent to the English passive, the direct passive is easy for English speakers to understand.

## 2. <sup>かんせつうけみ</sup>間接受身 (indirect passive).

When translating indirect passives into English, purposely place the origin at the end of the sentence as “by <origin>”, then the rest of the sentence is usually expressed as “<experiencer> got <v passive> on by <origin>”.

<experiencer> {が/は} <performer> に <v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

<sup>のうどうぶん</sup> <sup>となり</sup> <sup>せき</sup> <sup>おおごえ</sup>  
[能動文] 隣の席の人が大声で話した。 (The person in sitting next to me spoke loudly.; 話す: to speak (transitive))

<sup>じゅどうぶん</sup> <sup>となり</sup> <sup>せき</sup> <sup>おおごえ</sup>  
[受動文] 私は隣の席の人に大声で話された。 (I was spoken to loudly by the person sitting next to me.; 話す: to speak (transitive))

The passive sentence contains the experiencer semantic role 「私」 (syntactic subject). In the closest equivalent active sentence, this subject does not take on the semantic experiencer role (of the verb 話す). Another way to think about this: the semantic experiencer (syntactic subject) in the passive sentence was not promoted from a grammatical object of any active sentence. Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

The *indirect* passive is named as such because 「私」 was not directly affected by verb 「話す」, only *indirectly* so.

- *Adversative nuance is guaranteed.*

See above point.

- *It is difficult to translate to English.*

The indirectness of the indirect passive has no equivalent in English.

## 3. <sup>もちぬしうけみ</sup>持ち主受身 (possessive passive). The possessive passive is sometimes grouped together with 間接受身のグループ, and sometimes considered to be in a category of its own.

<experiencer-owner> {が/は} <performer> に <ownee> を <v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

E.g. (私は) スリに財布を取られた。 (My wallet was stolen by a pickpocket.; スリ: pickpocket, 取る: to steal (transitive))

The *possessive* passive is named as such because the direct object (suffixed by を) of the passive verb belongs to the subject (suffixed by は/が).

- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

[能動文] 弟が私の携帯を壊した。(My younger brother destroyed my cell phone.; 携帯: mobile phone; 壊す: to break/destroy (transitive))

[受動文] 私は弟に携帯を壊された。(I got my cell phone destroyed by my brother.; 壊す: to break/destroy (transitive))

In the possessive passive sentence, the experiencer semantic role is 「私」 (syntactic subject). In the closest equivalent active sentence, 「私」 is merely a label to 財布 and does not take on the experiencer semantic role. Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed (depends on the passivised verb).*

[迷惑の意味がある] (私は) 田中さんに日本語をけなされた。(adversative; I got my Japanese disparaged by Tanaka-san.; けなす: to speak ill of/disparage (transitive))

[迷惑の意味がない] (私は) 田中さんに日本語を褒められた。(non-adversative; I got my Japanese praised by Tanaka-san.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))

Some usage pointers.

- When the passive sentence involves body parts of the owner, the direct passive is unnatural.

[自動詞の受身、自然] (私は) 隣の人に満員電車で足を踏まれた。(I got my foot stepped on on me by someone next to me on a fully-booked train.; more natural translation is “My foot was stepped on by someone next to me on a fully-booked train.” 踏む: to step on (transitive))

[直接受身、不自然] 私の足が踏まれた。

- When the passive sentence involves possessions of the owner, the direct passive is also possible.

[自動詞の受身、自然] (私は) 田中さんにパソコンを壊された。(I got my computer broken on me by Tanaka-san.; 壊す: to break/destroy (transitive))

[直接受身、自然] 私のパソコンが田中さんに壊された。(My computer was broken by Tanaka-san.)

- When the passive sentence involves parties related to the owner, the direct passive is also possible.

[自動詞の受身、自然] (私は) 先生に息子をけなされた。(I got my child disparaged on me by his teacher.; けなす: to speak ill of/disparage (transitive))

[直接受身、自然] 私の息子は先生にけなされた。(My child was disparaged by his teacher.)

#### 4. 自動詞の受身 (intransitive passive).

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v intransitive passive>.



- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

Similar explanation to the other members of the indirect passive group. The experiencer semantic role is present in the intransitive passive (suffixed by は/が), but completely absent in the closest equivalent active sentences: active intransitive verbs only involve a subject (which would be the origin of the passivised intransitive verb, not the experiencer). Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed.*

[迷惑の意味がある] 恋人に逃げられた。(adversative; I had my lover run away on me.; 逃げる: to run away (intransitive))

[迷惑の意味がある] 子どもに泣かれた。(adversative; I had my child cry on me.; 泣く: to cry (intransitive))

[迷惑の意味がある] 雨に降られた。(adversative; I had the rain fall on me.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall)

[迷惑の意味がない] 綺麗な女性に微笑まれて、ドキドキした。(non-adversative; I got smiled on by a pretty lady, and my heart pounded.; 微笑む: to smile (intransitive))

[迷惑の意味がない] 私は風に吹かれていた。(non-adversative; I got blown on by the wind.; 吹く: (of the wind) to blow (intransitive))

[迷惑の意味がない] 彼女に甘えられると、結構嬉しい。(non-adversative; If I get fawned on by her, I will be fairly happy.; 甘える: to fawn on/give lots of attention and praise (intransitive verb))

[迷惑の意味がない] 先生に喜ばれた。(non-adversative; I got being pleased on by the teacher.; 喜ぶ: to be delighted (intransitive))

Some usage pointers.

- Among intransitive verbs, non-volitional ones (非意志) are harder and less natural to passivise. A notable exception is 降る for precipitation/ash.

[非意志、自然] 雨に降られた。(I had the rain fall on me.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall (intransitive))

[非意志、不自然] 雨に止まれた。~~(止む: to cease/stop/be over (intransitive))~~

[非意志、不自然] ドアに急に開かれました。

[非意志、不自然] 石に突然、落ちられました。

[非意志、不自然] 電気に消えられて、困りました。

[非意志、不自然] 涙に不意に出られて、恥ずかしかった。

Even though all these attempted intransitive passive verbs have the adversative nuance, they are nonetheless considered unnatural. (Perhaps for a reason only accessible to higher level learners...)

#### G4.2.4 Indirect passives to convey adversative emotions, and involving a third person subject 間接受身のグループ

Read the main article on [TMJK5].

Indirect passives can be purposefully used to convey negative feelings evoked from an indirect action.

- If the speaker has only a general relationship with 田中さん or アンさん, the speaker state say the following objectively (客観的事実を述べます):

[A1、能動文] アンさんは海外へ引っ越した。(Ann-san moved abroad.; 引っ越す: to change residence (intransitive))

[B1、能動文] 田中さんはアンさんに花束を贈った。(Tanaka-san gifted Ann-san a bouquet.; 贈る: to gift (transitive))

- However, if the speaker likes アンさん and sees 田中さん as a love rival, then the actions of アンさん and 田中さん in A1 and B1 would be unpleasant, even if their actions did not *directly* affect the speaker. The speaker would therefore use the *indirect* passive voice to express their feelings.

[A2、受動文] (私は) あんさんに海外へ引っ越されて、寂しくてたまらない。(I got Ann-San moved abroad on me, and I feel unbearably lonely.; たまらない: intolerable/unbearable)

[B2、受動文] (アンさんに花束を贈ろうと思っていたのに、) (私は) 田中さんに先に贈られてしまった。(Despite me thinking of gifting a bouquet to Ann-sann, I got Tanaka-san gifting before me on me.; しまう: to do/happen unintentionally (AUX))

The subject/experiencer in passive sentences is a person, and is most commonly 「私」. If so, it is often omitted (省略されます). If the subject/experiencer is not a human, then it would be something similar to a person, such as an organisation a person belongs to.

In §G4.2.2, we fixed the subject/experiencer to 「私」. We now vary this. The subject/experiencer can be a third person/party (第三者) that is neither the speaker nor the origin/performer of the passivised action. To do this, simply state the third party subject explicitly, suffixed with は/が.

- [C1#、受動文] 田中さんはアルバイトに休まれました。(Tanaka-san had a day off taken on him by the part-timer.; 休む: to take a day off (intransitive))

[D1#、受動文] E.g. 川口さんは友達に手紙を読まれました。(Kawaguchi-san got his letter read on him by his friend.; 読む: to read (transitive))

However, the above sentences would sound incomplete to the native ear. They are missing the *feelings* of the third party.

(The # here mean “may be acceptable to some readers”; courtesy of SL.)

- [C2、受動文] 田中さんはアルバイトに休まれて、とても困りました。(Tanaka-san had a day off taken on him by the part-timer, and was very troubled.; 休む: to take a day off (intransitive))

[D2、受動文] 川口さんは友達に手紙を読まれて、恥ずかしい思いをしました。(Kawaguchi-san got his letter read on him by his friend, and he felt embarrassed unintentionally.; 読む: to read (transitive), しまう: to do/happen unintentionally (AUX))

When the feelings of the aggrieved party is made explicit, the indirect passive flows more naturally.

#### G4.2.5 The three passive voice particles に、から、によって

Read the main articles on [\[TMJK5\]](#), [\[TMJK6\]](#), [\[TMJK7\]](#).

The に particle marks the origin/performer of the passive voice. The origin/performer in the indirect passive group can only be suffixed by に.

[間接受身] 私は友達に夜遅く遊びに来られました。(I got visited for playing late at night on by my friend.; 来る: to come (intransitive))

In direct passive sentences, three particles are possible: に、から、によって. The default particle is still に, and there are some cases where に can't be used, or another particle is more suitable.

Some rules of thumb:

- For passivised verbs that act on people, express the origin's emotion, or have a sense of mobility or direction, both に、から can be used to mark the origin/performer.

Examples of verbs expressing emotion: 愛する、憎む<sup>にく</sup> (to hate)、好む<sup>この</sup> (to like)、嫌う、恐れる<sup>おそ</sup> (to fear)、惜しむ<sup>お</sup> (to regret/be stingy)、尊敬する、軽蔑する<sup>けいべつ</sup> (to scorn)、怪しむ<sup>おそ</sup> (to suspect).

Examples of verbs with a sense of mobility or direction: 招待する<sup>しょうたい</sup> (to invite)、呼ぶ、誘う<sup>さそ</sup> (to invite/tempt)、振り向く<sup>むか</sup> (to turn around)、迎える<sup>むか</sup> (to go out and greet).

[直接受身] 私は先生{に/から}褒められた。(act on people; I was praised by my teacher.; 褒める<sup>ほめる</sup>: to praise (transitive); Both に、から are possible, によって is more formal and not used here.)

[直接受身] ジュリエットはロミオ{に/から}愛されました。(emotion; Juliet was loved by Romeo.; 愛する: to love (transitive))

[直接受身] 周恩来は今も中国の人々{に/から}尊敬されている。(emotion; Zhou Enlai is still respected by the Chinese people today.; 尊敬する: to respect (transitive))

[直接受身] たなかさんは、刑事{に/から}怪しまれた。(emotion; Tanaka-san is suspected by the detective.; 怪しむ: to suspect (transitive))

[直接受身] 私は先生{に/から}声をかけられた。(mobility/direction; I was called out to by my teacher.; 声をかける: to call out to (expression/intransitive))

[直接受身] 突然、友達{に/から}呼び止められた。(mobility/direction; Suddenly, I was stopped by my friend.; 呼び止める: to call and stop sb/sth (transitive))

[直接受身] あまりにひどい恰好だったので、みんな{に/から}振り向かれた。(mobility/direction; Because I looked very bad, I was turned around to by everyone.; 恰好/格好<sup>かっこう</sup>: appearance, 振り向く<sup>むか</sup>: to turn around (expression/transitive))

[直接受身] 田中選手はチームメイト{に/から}温かく迎えられた。(emotion; The contestant Tanaka was warmly welcomed by his teammates.; 迎える<sup>むか</sup>: to go out and greet (transitive))

- For passivised verbs that refer to a give-receive transaction, because に already marks the receiver, it cannot be used again in the same sentence to mark the origin (giver) in the same transaction. から must be used to mark the origin.

Examples of verbs related to give-receiving: 授与する<sup>じゅうよ</sup> (to award)、渡す<sup>わた</sup> (to hand over)、送る<sup>おく</sup> (to send)、贈る<sup>おく</sup> (to gift)、与える<sup>あた</sup> (to bestow/give to someone of lower status).

[直接受身] 本は先生{から}学生に渡された。(give-receive; The book was passed to the student by the teacher.; 渡す: to hand over (transitive))

[直接受身] 花束は部長{から}田中さんに贈られた。(give-receive; The bouquet was given to Tanaka-san from boss.; 贈る: to gift (transitive))

[直接受身] 卒業証書は校長先生先生{から/によって}学生に授与されました。(give-receive; The graduation certificates were awarded to the students by the principal.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

[直接受身] 金メダルは総理大臣{から/によって}優勝者に授与された。(give-receive; The gold medal was awarded to the champion by the Prime Minister.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

If the sentence contains に to mark the *location* destination of the verb, then に can still be used (because it's a different sense in the same sentence) to mark the origin.

[直接受身] 私は先生{に/から}お寿司屋さんに誘われた。(I was invited to the Sushi restaurant by teacher.; 誘う: to invite (transitive))

- For *formal* passivised verbs that refer to a give-receive transaction (same as previous point but formal), and for verbs that involve creation of a work, によって is used. As an exception, the 罰する verb (to punish (transitive)) must use によって.

Example verbs related to creation: 描く (to draw)、作曲する (to compose (music))、発明する (to invent)、発見する (to discover)、作る、書く (to write).

[直接受身] 卒業証書は校長先生先生{から/によって}学生に授与されました。(give-receive; The graduation certificates were awarded to the students by the principal.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

[直接受身] 金メダルは総理大臣{から/によって}優勝者に授与された。(give-receive; The gold medal was awarded to the champion by the Prime Minister.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

[直接受身] 運命はベートーベン{によって}作曲された。(creation; "Fate" was composed by Beethoven.; 作曲する: to compose (music) (transitive/intransitive))

[直接受身] 東京都庁は丹下健三氏{によって}設計された。(creation; The Tokyo Metropolitan Government Building was designed by Mr. Kenzo Tange.; 設計する: to design (transitive))

[直接受身] アメリカ大陸はコロンブス{によって}発見された。(creation; The American continent was discovered by Columbus.; 発見する: to discover (transitive))

[直接受身] 田中氏は法律{によって}罰せられた。(punish; Mr. Tanaka was punished by the law.; 罰する: to punish (transitive))

Further exploration of the passive voice will be left to a future date.

## GA Grammar mega summary

### GA.1 Conjugation rules summary

#### GA.1.1 Nouns

Table 14: Noun conjugation rules.

Purpose	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
State-of-being	Present-positive	<noun>[だ]	<noun>です。
	Present-negative	<noun>じゃない	<noun>じゃないです。 <noun>じゃありません。
	Past-positive	<noun>だった	<noun>でした。
	Past-negative	<noun>じゃなかった	<noun>じゃなかったです。 <noun>じゃありませんでした。
	て-positive	<noun>で	-
	て-negative	<noun>じゃなくて	-
	Conditional-positive	<noun>であれば	-
	Conditional-negative	<noun>じゃなければ	-

In 丁寧語, 「～した」 indicates the past-tense.

As alternative polite forms:

- 「～ないです。」 can be replaced with 「～ありません。」,
- 「～なかったです。」 can be replaced with 「～ありませんでした。」.

#### GA.1.2 な-adjectives

Table 15: な-adjective conjugation rules.

Purpose	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
State-of-being (same as nouns)	Present-positive	<na-adj>[だ]	<na-adj>です。
	Present-negative	<na-adj>じゃない	<na-adj>じゃないです。 <na-adj>じゃありません。
	Past-positive	<na-adj>だった	<na-adj>でした。
	Past-negative	<na-adj>じゃなかった	<na-adj>じゃなかったです。 <na-adj>じゃありませんでした。
	て-positive	<noun>で	-
	て-negative	<noun>じゃなくて	-
	Conditional-positive	<na-adj>であれば	-
	Conditional-negative	<na-adj>じゃなければ	-
Noun modifier	Present-positive	<na-adj>な<noun>	-
	Present-negative	<na-adj>じゃない<noun>	-
	Past-positive	<na-adj>だった<noun>	-
	Past-negative	<na-adj>じゃなかった<noun>	-
Adverb	-	<na-adj>に	-

#### GA.1.3 い-adjectives

All い-adjectives end with ～い that is not part of the 漢字's pronunciation.

Table 16: い-adjective conjugation rules.

Purpose	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
State-of-being	Present-positive	<i-adj root>い	<i-adj root>いです。
	Present-negative	<i-adj root>くない	<i-adj root>くないです。 <i-adj root>ありません。
	Past-positive	<i-adj root>かった	<i-adj root>かったです。
	Past-negative	<i-adj root>なかった	<i-adj root>なかったです。 <i-adj root>ありませんでした。
	て-positive	<i-adj root>くて	-
	て-negative	<i-adj root>くなくて	-
	Conditional-positive	<i-adj root>ければ	-
	Conditional-negative	<i-adj root>くなければ	-
Noun modifier	Present-positive	<i-adj root>い<noun>	-
	Present-negative	<i-adj root>くない<noun>	-
	Past-positive	<i-adj root>かった<noun>	-
	Past-negative	<i-adj root>なかった<noun>	-
Adverb	-	<i-adj root>く	-

Exceptions:

**い-adjectives ending with 「～いい」** When in any form other than present-positive, the root changes from 「～い」 to 「～よ」.

#### GA.1.4 Verbs

Table 17: Verb conjugation rules.

Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
う verb	Present-positive	<*-end root>○	<*-end root>○ <sup>てい</sup> ます。
	Negative	<* \ {う}-end root>○ <sup>あ</sup> ない	<*-end root>○ <sup>てい</sup> ません。
		<う-end root>わ <sup>ない</sup>	
		ない <sup>ある</sup>	
	Past	<す-end root>した	<*-end root>○ <sup>てい</sup> ました。
		<く-end root>いた	
		<ぐ-end root>いだ	
		<{む, ぬ, ぶ}-end root>んだ	
		<{る, つ, う}-end root>った	
	Past-negative	<* \ {う}-end root>○ <sup>あ</sup> なかった	<*-end root>○ <sup>てい</sup> ませんでした。
		<う-end root>わ <sup>なかった</sup>	
		なかった <sup>ある</sup>	
	(Stem)	-	<*-end root>○ <sup>てい</sup>
	Te	<す-end root>して	-
		<く-end root>いて	
		<ぐ-end root>いで	
		<{む, ぬ, ぶ}-end root>んで	
		<{る, つ, う}-end root>って	
	Te-negative	<* \ {う}-end root>○ <sup>あ</sup> なくて	-
		<う-end root>わ <sup>なくて</sup>	
		なくて <sup>ある</sup>	
	Progressive (conjugate ～いる)	<v te>いる	-

Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema	
る verb	Potential (conjugate ～る)	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> る ...	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> ます。 ...	
	Conditional	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> ば	-	
	Conditional-negative	<* \ {う}-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> なければ	-	
		<{う}-end root>わなければ	-	
		なければ <sup>ない</sup>	-	
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	<*-end root>◯ <sup>い</sup> たい ...	-	
	Volitional	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> う	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> ましょう。	
	Imperative	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup>	-	
	Imperative-negative	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> な	-	
	Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す)	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> せる ... <*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> す ...	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> せます。 ... <*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> します。 ...	
		Passive (conjugate ～る)	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> れる ...	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> れます。 ...
		Causative-passive (conjugate ～る)	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> せられる ... <* \ {す}-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> される ...	<*-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> せられます。 ... <* \ {す}-end root>◯ <sup>ゐ</sup> されます。 ...
	Dictionary		<る-end root>る	<る-end root>ます。
	Negative	<る-end root>ない	<る-end root>ません。	
	Past	<る-end root>た	<る-end root>ました。	
Past-negative (Stem)	<る-end root>なかった -	<る-end root>ませんでした。 <る-end root>		
Te	<る-end root>て	-		
Te-negative	<る-end root>なくて	-		
Progressive (conjugate ～いる)	<v te>いる ...	<v te>います。 ...		
Potential (conjugate ～る)	<る-end root>られる ...	<る-end root>られます。 ...		
Conditional	<る-end root>れば	-		
Conditional-negative	<る-end root>なければ	-		
Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	<る-end root>たい ...	-		
Volitional	<る-end root>よう	<る-end root>ましょう。		
Imperative	<る-end root>ろ	-		
Imperative-negative	<る-end root>るな	-		
Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す)	<る-end root>させる ... <る-end root>さす ...	{<る-end root>させます。 ... <る-end root>さします。 ...		
	Passive (conjugate ～る)	<る-end root>られる ...	<る-end root>られます。 ...	
	Causative-passive (conjugate ～る)	<る-end root>させられる ...	<る-end root>させられます。 ...	
exception verb	Dictionary	～する 来る	～します。 来ます。	
	Negative	～しない 来ない	～しません。 来ません。	
	Past	～した 来た	～しました。 来ました。	
	Past-negative	～しなかった 来なかった	～しませんでした。 来ませんでした。	



Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
	(Stem)	-	～し 来 <sup>き</sup>
	Te	～して 来 <sup>き</sup> て	-
	Te-negative	～しなくて 来 <sup>き</sup> なくて	-
	Progressive	<v te>いる <v te>いる	<v te>います。 <v te>います。
	(conjugate ～いる)	...	...
	Potential	～できる 来 <sup>き</sup> られる	～できます。 来 <sup>き</sup> られます。
	(conjugate ～る)	...	...
	Conditional	～すれば 来 <sup>き</sup> れば	-
	Conditional-negative	～しなれば 来 <sup>き</sup> なければ	-
	Desiderative	～したい 来 <sup>き</sup> たい	-
	(conjugate i-adj)	...	...
	Volitional	～しよう 来 <sup>き</sup> よう	～しましょう。 来 <sup>き</sup> ましょう。
	Imperative	～しろ 来 <sup>き</sup> い	-
	Imperative-negative	～するな 来 <sup>き</sup> るな	-
	Causative	～させる 来 <sup>き</sup> させる	～させます。 来 <sup>き</sup> させます。
	(conjugate ～る	...	...
	/conjugate ～す)	～さす 来 <sup>き</sup> さす	～さします。 来 <sup>き</sup> さします。
		...	...
	Passive	～される 来 <sup>き</sup> られる	～られます。 来 <sup>き</sup> られます。
	(conjugate ～る)	...	...
	Causative-passive	～させられる 来 <sup>き</sup> させられる	～させられます。 来 <sup>き</sup> させられます。
	(conjugate ～る)	...	...

Basic rules/observations better expressed via prose:

- All present-negative forms end with 「～ない」.
- The conditional form for all verbs is the same: change the last sound to <sup>え</sup> and attach ば.
- The conditional-negative forms all end in 「～なければ」, which is obtained from replacing い in 「～ない」 with ければ. This replacement rule also applies for い-adjectives, replacing the trailing 「～い」 for 「～ければ」.
- The volitional form for exception verbs kind of follow the rules of る verbs: drop る and replace with よう, but additionally there's also a “hint of past tense” in there, explaining the こ sound in 来<sup>こ</sup>よう.
- The imperative-negative form for all verbs is the same, just attach な to the dictionary form.

Exceptions:

- 行く's past-positive form is 行った, not “行いた”. Only 行く uses った; all other ～く verbs still use いた.
- ある's present-negative form is ない, not “あらない”.
- くれる's imperative form is くれ, not “くれろ”.

The following table is a condensed version, showing where the rules come from.

Table 18: Condensed verb conjugation rules. <v negative fragment>/<vnf> refers to <v negative> but dropping the trailing 「い」 character; <v past fragment>/<vpf> refers to <v past> but dropping the trailing 「た/だ」 character.

Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
	Present-positive	<*-end root>○	<stem>ます。
		<* \ {う}-end root> <sup>え</sup> ない	
う verb	Negative	<う-end root>わない ないある	<stem>ません。
	Past	<す-end root>した	<stem>ました。

Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
		<く-end root>いた	
		<ぐ-end root>いだ	
		<{む, ぬ, ぶ}-end root>んだ	
		<{る, つ, う}-end root>った	
	Past-negative	<v negative fragment>かった	<stem>ませんでした。
	(Stem)	-	<*-end root> <sup>い</sup> 〇
	Te	<v past fragment>て	-
	Te-negative	<v negative fragment>くて	-
	Progressive (conjugate 〜いる)	<v te>いる	-
	Potential (conjugate 〜る)	<*-end root> <sup>え</sup> 〇る ...	<*-end root> <sup>え</sup> 〇ます。 ...
	Conditional	<*-end root> <sup>え</sup> 〇ば	-
	Conditional-negative	<v negative fragment>ければ	-
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	<stem>たい ...	-
	Volitional	<*-end root> <sup>え</sup> 〇う	<*-end root> <sup>え</sup> 〇ましょう。
	Imperative	<*-end root> <sup>え</sup> 〇	-
	Imperative-negative	<v dict>な	-
	Causative (conjugate 〜る /conjugate 〜す)	<*-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇せる ... <*-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇す ...	<*-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇せます。 ... <*-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇します。 ...
	Passive (conjugate 〜る)	<*-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇れる ...	<*-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇れます。 ...
	Causative-passive (conjugate 〜る)	<*-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇せられる ... <*\{す}-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇される ...	<*-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇せられます。 ... <*\{す}-end root> <sup>あ</sup> 〇されます。 ...
る verb	Dictionary	<る-end root>る	<stem>ます。
	Negative	<る-end root>ない	<stem>ません。
	Past	<る-end root>た	<stem>ました。
	Past-negative	<v negative fragment>かった	<stem>ませんでした。
	(Stem)	-	<る-end root>
	Te	<v past fragment>て	-
	Te-negative	<v negative fragment>なくて	-
	Progressive (conjugate 〜いる)	<v te>いる ...	<v te>います。 ...
	Potential (conjugate 〜る)	<る-end root>られる ...	<る-end root>られます。 ...
	Conditional	<る-end root>れば	-
	Conditional-negative	<v negative fragment>ければ	-
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	<stem>たい ...	-
	Volitional	<る-end root>よう	<る-end root>ましょう。
	Imperative	<る-end root>ろ	-
	Imperative-negative	<v dict>な	-
	Causative (conjugate 〜る /conjugate 〜す)	<る-end root>させる ... <る-end root>さす ...	{<る-end root>させます。 ... <る-end root>さします。 ...

Class	Tense	Casual schema		Polite schema	
	Passive (conjugate ～る)	＜る-end root＞られる …		＜る-end root＞られます。 …	
	Causative-passive (conjugate ～る)	＜る-end root＞させられる …		＜る-end root＞させられます。 …	
exception verb	Dictionary	～する	来る	～します。	来ます。
	Negative	～しない	来ない	～しません。	来ません。
	Past	～した	来た	～しました。	来ました。
	Past-negative	～<vnf>かった	<vnf>かった	～しませんでした。	来ませんでした。
	(Stem)	-	-	～し	来
	Te	<vpf>て	<vpf>て	-	-
	Te-negative	<vnf>くて	<vnf>くて	-	-
	Progressive (conjugate ～いる)	<v te>いる …	<v te>いる …	<v te>います。 …	<v te>います。 …
	Potential (conjugate ～る)	～できる …	来られる …	～できます。 …	来られます。 …
	Conditional	～すれば	来れば	-	-
	Conditional-negative	<vnf>ければ	<vnf>ければ	-	-
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	～<stem>たい …	<stem>たい …	-	-
	Volitional	～しよう	来よう	～しましょう。	来ましょう。
	Imperative	～しろ	来い	-	-
	Imperative-negative	～するな	来るな	-	-
	Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す)	～させる … ～さす …	来させる … 来さす …	～させます。 … ～さします。 …	来させます。 … 来さします。 …
	Passive (conjugate ～る)	～される …	来られる …	～られます。 …	来られます。 …
	Causative-passive (conjugate ～る)	～させられる …	来させられる …	～させられます。 …	来させられます。 …

## GA.2 Particle and schema summary

Table 19: All particles seen so far.

Particle	Particle name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
は	introductory topic marker	<main/new topic>は	§G2.2.2, §G2.5
も	inclusive topic marker	<inclusive topic>も	§G2.5
が	subject marker	<subj>が	§G2.5
を	direct object marker	<obj>を<v transitive>	§G2.9
	location-traversed marker	<location>を<motion v (intransitive OK)>	§G2.9
に	target marker	<target>に[は/も]<v>	§G2.9
	location-target marker	<location>に[は/も]<v>	§G2.9
	time-target marker	<time>[に[は/も]]<v>	§G2.9
へ	direction marker	<direction>へ[は/も]<v>	§G2.9
で	context marker	<by-way-of (where/what/how) context>で[は/も]	§G2.9
から	from-marker	<from>から	§G2.9
まで	to-marker	<to>まで	§G2.9
と	together-with marker	<nn>と<v>	§G2.10.4
と	noun exclusive listing connector	(<nn>と)*<nn>	§G2.10.4
どか/や	noun vague listing connector	(<nn>{どか/や})*<nn>	§G2.10.4

Particle	Particle name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
し	reason vague listing connector	(*) (<reason>し)*<reason>	§G3.7
たり[する]	adj/verb vague listing marker	(<past adj/v>り、)*<past adj/v>りする	§G3.8
の	complaining listing marker	{<nn/na-adj>だの/<v>}*	§G2.10.6
と	quote marker	「<quote>」と<v> <quote>と<v>	§G2.1, §G3.18.1, §G3.18.2
って	quote marker (abbreviation)	<quote>って	§G2.1, §G3.18.1, §G3.18.2
って	generic verb (abbreviation)	<quote>って	§G3.19.2
て	generic verb (abbreviation)	て<v>、<sentence>	§G3.19.2
の	label marker	<label nn>の[<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.4
	direction-label marker	<direction>への[<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
	from-label marker	<from>からの[<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
	only-label marker	<only>だけの[<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
	quote-label marker	<quote>との[<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
	regarding-label marker	<regarding>についての[<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
の	subjective label marker	<na-adj label>の[<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.7
(な)	objective label marker	<na-adj label>な<labelled>	§G2.10.7
	mood marker	<nn>な気分	§G2.10.7
の	nominaliser/generic noun	(*) <adj-phrase/v-phrase>の物,こと	§G2.10.4
	enthusiastic extraordinary	<positive adj>の、<negative adj>の <adj>のなんのって	§G2.10.6
の/ん	explanatory ender	(*) <sentence>{の[だ/です], んだ, んです}	§G2.10.4
ので/んで	non-causal explanation/reason marker	(*) <reason>{ので/んで}<result> な{ので/んで}<result> (*) <reason>{の[だ/です]/んだ/んです}	§G3.6.3
から	direct cause marker	(*) <direct cause>から<result> だから<result> (*) <direct cause>から [です]	§G3.6.3
んだった	just-remembered marker	<v dict>んだった	§G2.10.4
んじゃない	prohibition marker (slang)	<v dict>ん{じゃない/じゃありません}	§G2.10.4
んじゃない かった	feeling regret marker (slang)	<v dict>んじゃないかった	§G2.10.4
と	expected consequence marker	(*) <predicate>と<statement>	§G3.15.3
ね	seeking agreement ender	<sentence>ね	§G2.12
よ	presenting new information ender	<sentence>よ	§G2.12
のに	despite marker	(*) <despite>のに、<sentence>	§G3.6.4
けど/が	general connector	(*) <s1>{けど/が}<s2>	§G3.6.5
けれど けれども	contradiction connector	(*) <s1>{けど/が}<contradicting s2>	§G3.6.5
の	casual question ender	<sentence>の	§G2.10.4
か	polite question ender	<sentence>か	§G3.4.1
	casual binary/sarcastic question ender	<sentence>か	§G3.4.1
	whether-or-not question marker	<positive v>か<negative v>か <positive v>かどうか	§G3.4.4
でも	But		
ばかり	only? approximately? <v te>just (time)?		
くらい	approximately/about/around		
より	than		
しか	nothing but/no more than		[Bunpro]
だけで	with only		[Bunpro]
ながら	while		

Particle	Particle name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
ながらも	despite		

Also (see takoboto): かも、じゃん

(\*) Important notes:

- For から::direct cause marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <direct cause>, だから must be used instead of から for disambiguating with the from-marker (e.g. 友達だから).

For けど/が::general connector and けど/が::contradiction connector, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <s1>, だけど/だが must be used instead (e.g. 友達だ{けど/が}).

For し::reason vague listing connector, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <reason>, だし must be used instead (e.g. 友達だし).

- For の::nominaliser/generic noun, if a non-conjugated na-adj is used as the <adj-phrase>, the following な particle must be used for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 静かなの...).

For の::explanatory ender:

- if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <sentence>, the following な particle must be used for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 緊張なのです。).
- polite form (～ますの for verbs and ～ですの for い-adjectives) cannot be used; used ～のです/～んです instead.

For ので::non-causal explanation/reason marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <reason>, なので is used instead for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 静かなので).

For のに::despite marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used as the end of <despite>, the following な particle must be used (e.g. 静かなのに).

Table 20: Other schemae seen so far. <v te fragment> refers to <v te> but dropping the trailing 「て」 character; <v negative fragment> refers to <v negative> but dropping the trailing 「い」 character.

Schema (short)	Schema name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
に行く/に来る	to go/come and then do	<v stem>に行く/に来る	§G3.1
へ行く/へ来る	to go/come for the purpose of doing	<v stem>へ行く/へ来る	§G3.1
である	resultant state (implicit preparation)	<v te>ある	§G3.10
ておく/とく	completed action (explicit preparation)	<v te>おく/<v te fragment>とく	§G3.11
ていく	spatial/temporal do and go	<v te>いく	§G3.12
てくる	spatial/temporal do and come	<v te>くる	§G3.12
ことができる	given opportunity to do	<v>{こと/の}ができる	§G3.13.1
あり得る	potential to exist	<nn>{は/も/etc.}ありえる	§G3.13.2
にする	to make become	{<na-adj>にする <i-adj root>くする}	§G3.14
	to decide on	<nn>にする	§G3.14
ことにする	to decide to do	<v>ことにする	§G3.14
ようにする	to try to do	<v>ようにする	§G3.14
になる	to become	{<na-adj>になる <i-adj root>くなる <nn>になる}	§G3.14
ことになる	to have been arranged/decided to do	<v>ことになる	§G3.14
ようになる	to change state of doing	<v>ようになる	§G3.14
	to change state of feasibility	<v potential>ようになる	§G3.14

Schema (short)	Schema name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
なら[ば]	contextual conditional	<context>なら[ば]、<statement>	§G3.15.4; AUX
-	prohibition	{<v te>は{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v te fragment>{ちゃ/じゃ}{だめ/いけない/ならない}}	§G3.16.1
-	requirement	{<v te-negative>は{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative fragment>くちゃ <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative>と <v conditional-negative>{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative fragment>きゃ}	§G3.16.2
-	permission	{<v te>も{いい/大丈夫/構わない} <v te>いい}	§G3.16.3
-	suggestion	<v conditional>/<v past conditional>どう	§G3.17.4
という	definition connector	<definition>という<thing>	§G3.19.1
というか	re-definition connector	<to be redefined>というか、<redefinition>	§G3.19.3
という{の/こと}	generic verb	<quote>という{の/こと}	§G3.19.2
てみる	trialling something	<v te>みる	§G3.20.1
とする	attempting something	<v volitional>と{する/<v>}	§G3.20.2
てあげる	giving a favour (first person)	<v te>あげる	§G3.21.1
てくれる	giving a favour (second person)	<v te>くれる	§G3.21.1
てもらう	receiving a favour	<v te>もらう	§G3.21.2
てくれる/てもらえう	soliciting a favour	<v te>{くれる/もらえる}	§G3.21.3
てください。/て	honorific request	{<v te>ください。 <v te>}	§G3.22.1
てちょうだい。	casual request	<v te>ちょうだい。	§G3.22.2
なさい/な	polite firm request	{<v stem>なさい <v stem>な}	§G3.22.3

## GB Phrases

- 写真<sup>しゃしん</sup>を取りたいですけど、手伝<sup>てつだ</sup>ってくれませんか？(I want to take a photo, can you help me?)
  - Shorter form: 写真<sup>しゃしん</sup>を撮<sup>と</sup>ってもらえませんか？
- 待ち時間はどのくらいですか。(How long is the wait?)
- はあ!?
- バカにしてる？(Are you making fun of me?) してないしてない。
- フンッ！(Hmph/blow)
- 朝<sup>あさ</sup>早<sup>はや</sup>いです。(Early in the morning.)
- 爽快<sup>そうかい</sup>な朝<sup>あさ</sup>！爽快<sup>そうかい</sup>な目覚<sup>め</sup>め！(Starting a new day full of energy!)
- まだ寝<sup>ね</sup>たいの！(I don't want to get up already!) ういちゃん朝<sup>あさ</sup>だよ！(Wakey, wakey, Ui-chan!) やだ！(No!)
- まだ6時<sup>ろくじ</sup>だよ？(It's only 6 AM.) もう6時<sup>ろくじ</sup>だよ！(It's already 6 AM!)
- 私たち(からしたら)寝<sup>ね</sup>る時間<sup>じかん</sup>だろ？(This is when we normally get into bed.)
- ということで！(And here we are!)
- みんな聞きましたね？(You heard her, everyone.)
- 教<sup>おし</sup>えていただけると嬉<sup>うれ</sup>しいです。
- Conversation:
  - 男子<sup>だんし</sup>: もしもし？
  - 女子<sup>じょし</sup>: もしもし。
  - 男子<sup>だんし</sup>: お疲れ。(Glad you could make it.)
  - 女子<sup>じょし</sup>: お疲れ。
  - 男子<sup>だんし</sup>: ちょっとさ、あの、1<sup>ひとつ</sup>つ、あのちょっと、聞きたいことあって。(So um, there is one thing I'd like to ask you.)
  - 女子<sup>じょし</sup>: うん。(Yeah?)
  - 男子<sup>だんし</sup>: ちょっとあの、今<sup>こん</sup>度<sup>ど</sup>さ、二人<sup>ふにん</sup>でさ、飯<sup>めし</sup>でもいかな？(Would you like to go out for a meal together sometime?; 今<sup>こん</sup>度<sup>ど</sup>: soon; 飯<sup>めし</sup>: meal)
  - 女子<sup>じょし</sup>: ご飯？
  - 男子<sup>だんし</sup>: そうそうそう。
  - 男子<sup>だんし</sup>: 気<sup>き</sup>になって、みゆきさんのこと。(I've been interested about you, Miyuki.)
  - 女子<sup>じょし</sup>: そうなの？(Is that so?)
  - 男子<sup>だんし</sup>: そう。
  - 女子<sup>じょし</sup>: うん、ごはん、いいよ。行こ。(Yeah, dinner's good, let's go!)
  - 男子<sup>だんし</sup>: マジ？(Really?)
  - 女子<sup>じょし</sup>: うん、本<sup>ほん</sup>当<sup>とう</sup>にいいよいいよ。



男子: えじゃちょっとさ、詳しい予定さまた後で、あの話そう。

女子: わかった。

男子: ありがと。

女子: いやこちらこそありがと。(No thank YOU.)

男子: じゃね、おつかれ。

女子: うん、おつかれ。

## GB.1 Business speak

This is advanced territory and would probably only make sense later on in your learning.

Table 21: Business speak conversions.

Normal speak	Business speak
元気？ How are you doing?	ご健勝にてお過ごしでしょうか？ Has your health been alright?
ありがと。 Thank you.	深く御礼申し上げます。 I hereby express my deepest gratitude.
これ、お前の？ Is this yours?	すみません、こちら<name>様のものでよろしかったでしょうか？ Sorry, is this your item?
お前、誰？ Who are you?	大変申し訳ございません、お名前頂戴してもよろしかったでしょうか？ I'm deeply sorry, but would you be okay to tell me your name?
ごめん。 Sorry.	この度は当方の不手際にてご迷惑をおかけしましたこと大変申し訳ございません。 This time, my ineptitude has caused you trouble, for that I'm deeply sorry.
お前キモいんだよ、マジで。 You are disgusting.	そうなんですーすごいですね、あ、すみませんちょっと打ち合わせがございました、こちらにて失礼いたしますどうも。 Wow that's great! Sorry I have a meeting to attend, I'll excuse myself here.
了解しました。 Understood.	承知しました。 Understood.
すみません。もう一度お願いします。 Sorry, one more time please.	恐れ入りますが、もう一度お願いできますでしょうか？ Sorry to trouble you, but could you repeat that one more time?
どうしますか？ What would you like to do?	いかがいたしましょうか？ What can I do for you?
どうしたらいいですか？ What should we do?	皆さんだったら何と応えますか？ How should we respond?
ありがとうございます。 Thank you very much.	心より感謝申し上げます。 I express my heartfelt gratitude.
知らないです。 I don't know.	存じ上げません。 I don't know.
それやっておきます。 I'll do that.	こちら対応させていただきます。 I will assist you with handling that.
ちょっと待ってください。 Please wait for a while.	少々お待ちいただけますでしょうか？ Could you please wait a moment?
後で連絡します。 I'll contact you later.	後ほど改めてご連絡いたします。 I will contact you again later.

## GB.2 I don't know Japanese

See the main reel on [\[IG\]](#).

- 日本語話せません。(I cannot speak Japanese.)
- 日本語わかりません。(I don't understand Japanese.)
- 申し訳ございません。努力はしているのですが、日本語の文法が非常に難しく、何をおっしゃっているが理解することができません。誠に恐縮ではございますが、英語で話して頂くことは可能でしょうか。よろしくお願い致します。(I'm deeply sorry. I'm doing my best but, Japanese grammar is extremely difficult so, I can't understand what you're saying. I'm afraid but, would you possibly speak in English? Thank you in advance.)

## GB.3 電車内で耳にするのアナウンス Announcements you hear on board trains

Read the main article on [CA](#). See a compilation of pre-departure announcements on [YT](#).

Interactions:

- 何かお困りですか？ (Do you need help?)
- 電車が遅れています。(The train is late.)
- 最寄りの(鉄道)駅はどこですか？ (Where is the nearest train station?)
- ○○を往復する旅行をしたいです。(I want a round trip to ○○.)
- ○○に行きたいです。どうしたらいいですか？ (I want to go to ○○. What should I do?)
- ○○行きの電車はどれですか？ (Which is the train heading to ○○?)
- ○○行きの次の電車は何時ですか？ (When is the next train heading to ○○?)
- ○○まであと何駅ですか？ (How many {more/remaining}(あと) stations until we reach ○○?)

Before boarding a train:

- まもなく、電車が参ります。(The train is coming soon.)
- まもなく、○○番線に、{普通/快速}、○○行きが、参ります。{黄色い線/白線}の内側に下がってお待ちください。(Rapid train bound for ○○ will be arriving at platform ○○ shortly. Please stand back behind the yellow/white line and wait.)
- {ドア/扉}が閉まります、ご注意ください。手荷物をお引きください。無理なご乗車はおやめください。(Please stand clear of the closing doors. Please hold on to your hand baggage. Please do not dash for the train.) [\(YJ\)](#)

Possible prefixes:

- ▶ ○○番線から、{上り/下り}、{各駅停車/普通/快速}[列車]、○○行き{が/の}発車{します/いたします}。(The local/normal/rapid train bound for <destination> is departing from platform <n>.)
- ▶ ○○線、(The <line name> Line)
- ▶ ○○番線、(Platform <n>)
- ▶ ○○番線、○○方面、(Platform <n>, towards <direction>)
- ▶ ○○番線の○○線、(The <line name> Line at platform <n>)

Possible suffixes:

- ▶ 閉まるドアにご注意ください。(Please mind the closing doors.)
- ▶ お見送りのお客様は、黄色い線までお下がりください。(Passengers seeing someone off, please step behind the yellow line.)

- まもなく、〇〇番線から、〇〇方面行き、〇〇新幹線が発車します。黄色い線までお下がりください。(The <line> Shinkansen heading towards <direction> will soon depart from platform <n>. Please step behind the yellow line.)
- 駆け込む乗車は、電車のドアに手などを挟まれ大変危険ですのでおやめください。(Please stop making a dash for the train as it may result in your hand, among other things, being stuck between train doors and it is dangerous for that reason.)

On board a train:

- ご乗車ありがとうございます。(Thank you for riding this train.)
- この電車は、〇〇名、〇〇行きです。(This is a <line name> Line train bound for <destination>.)
- この電車は、〇〇[、〇〇]\*行きです。(This train is going to <station A>, <station B>, ...)
- この列車は、〇〇、〇〇、...、に止まります。〇〇を出た後は、終点〇〇に到着するまですべての駅に停車します。(This train will stop at <station A>, <station B>, .... After leaving <station Z>, it will stop at every station before arriving at terminal station <station>.)
- 次は、〇〇に停車します。(This train will next stop at <station>.)

Polite reminders:

- この電車は、優先席があります。お年寄りや、体の不自由なお客様、妊娠中や、乳幼児をお連れのお客様いらっしゃいましたら、席をお譲りください。(There are priority seats in this train. Please give up your seats to the elderly, handicapped passengers, expecting mothers, and passengers accompanying small children.)
- お客様のご協力をお願いします。(We thank you for your cooperation.)
- お客様にお願いいたします。優先席付近では、携帯電話の電源をお切りください。(Please switch off your mobile phones when near the priority seats.)
- それ以外の場所では、マナーモードに設定の上、通話はお控えください。ご協力をお願いいたします。(Please set it to silent mode (manner mode) and refrain from talking on the phone in other areas. Thank you for your cooperation.)

Arriving at a station and service transfers:

- まもなく、〇〇到着します。(We are arriving soon at <station>.)
- まもなく、〇〇、〇〇。お出口は、{ 左側/右側 }です。(We are arriving soon at <station>, <station> (repeat). The doors on the {left/right} side will open.)
- まもなく、〇〇で短い停車を行います。(We will soon make a brief stop at <station>.)
- 〇〇ライン、〇〇線、〇〇線への直通運転の列車は乗り換えます。(Please change here for the <line> Line, ..., and through service to the <line>.)
- こちらで、〇〇線と地下鉄〇〇線に乗り換えてください。(Please change to the <line> Line and the <metro line> Metro Line here.)
- 〇〇線へ乗り換える乗客は、その駅で乗り換えてください。(Passengers changing to the <line> Line, please transfer at this station.)
- 〇〇線へ行く乗客は、こちら〇〇で電車を乗り換えてください。(Passengers going to the <line> Line, please change trains here at <location>.)

Emergency announcements:

- 私達は別の線路へ移ります。もしあなたが立っていたら、つり革か手すりに掴まってください。(We will be changing to another track. If you are standing, please hold on to the hand strap or rail.)

- 事故を防ぐために列車が急に止まる必要があるかもしれません。ですので、気をつけてください。(It may be necessary for the train to stop suddenly to prevent an accident, so please be careful.)
- ご注意ください。緊急ブレーキが用いられました。(Attention please, the emergency brake has been applied.)
- 急停車します。ご注意ください。急停車します。ご注意ください。(The train will make a sudden stop. Please be careful. The train will make a sudden stop. Please be careful.)

## GB.4 原神切り抜き Genshin Extracts

### GB.4.1 チュートリアル動画 胡桃「雪晴梅香」 Collected Miscellany - “Hu Tao: Fragrance in Thaw” JP/EN

璃月人は生活に根づく伝統重んじる。その中でも特に重視されるのが、命の終わりを告げる葬儀だ。葬儀のしきたりは実に煩雑だが、それを一手に引き受けるのが大常道である。(The people of Liyue value tradition, and their traditions are embodied in all manner of rites. Of these, the rites that mark life's end are of utmost importance. Liyue's funeral rites are complex, and only Wangsheng Funeral Parlor can conduct them to the satisfaction of all.)

大杖道は77代続く老舗だ。ここ数年、大杖道の面性は高まりつつある。それもすべて道主胡桃の尽力植える。(Wangsheng has stood for 77 generations and has gained still greater fame in recent years, thanks to their eccentric young director, Hu Tao.)

「お日様が出たら日光浴、お月様が出たら月光浴～」(“When the sun's out, bathe in sunlight. But when the moon's out, bathe in moonlight.”)

胡桃は炎元素を操り、燃え盛る炎によって世の不浄を祓う。HPを消耗することで胡桃はダメージを上げることが可能だ。(Hu Tao manipulates Pyro with ease, and can sacrifice her HP to increase her damage output, cleansing the world of impurities with an unrelenting flame.)

胡桃が料理を完璧調理した時、確率で微妙な品質の料理を追加獲得できる。(When Hu Tao cooks a dish perfectly, she has a chance to obtain a Suspicious dish of the same kind.)

胡桃の通常攻撃は、最大6段の連続攻撃で物理ダメージを与える。重撃は、スタミナを消費し、前方へと突進にお見舞い、経路上の敵にダメージを与えられる。また、ダッシュ時には短時間姿を消し、小柄な敵をすり抜けることが可能だ。(Hu Tao's Normal Attack can combo up to six strikes, dealing Physical DMG to enemies. Hu Tao's Charged Attack consumes a set amount of stamina to lunge forward, dealing Physical DMG to enemies in her path. Hu Tao also has a unique effect when sprinting, allowing her to briefly disappear and pass through certain small foes.)

元素スキルでは、一定のHPを消費し、周囲の敵をノックバックさせ、冥蝶の舞状態に入る。この時、胡桃の攻撃は炎元素に変化する。この変化は、元素付与の影響を受けない。後に、中断耐性の上昇し、HP上限を基準に、攻撃力がアップする。(Hu Tao consumes part of her HP to cast her Elemental Skill, knocking nearby enemies back and entering the Paramita Papilio state. This converts her attack DMG to Pyro DMG, which cannot be overridden by another elemental infusion. Her resistance to interruption is also increased, and she receives an ATK increase based on her Max HP when entering this state.)

冥蝶の舞状態は持続時間の終了、または胡桃の退場により解除される。(Paramita Papilio ends after a set duration or when Hu Tao leaves the field.)

天賦「蝶隠の時」解放後は、冥蝶の舞状態終了時に、胡桃を除いた、チーム全員の会心率は一定時間上がる。(After unlocking the Talent “Flutter By,” ending Paramita Papilio increases the CRIT Rate of all of Hu Tao’s party members other than herself for a set duration.)

また、冥蝶の舞状態時、胡桃の重撃は、敵に血梅香効果を与える。血梅香効果の敵は、一定時間ごとに、炎ダメージを受ける。同一ターゲットの付与できる血梅香効果は、同時に最大一つまでだ。持続時間は胡桃だけが更新できる。(Moreover, while Paramita Papilio is in effect, Hu Tao’s Charged Attacks apply the Blood Blossom effect to enemies it hits. Enemies affected by Blood Blossom will take Pyro DMG at set intervals. This effect automatically expires after a while. Only one Blood Blossom can exist on any one target at a time, and only Hu Tao can refresh its duration.)

大杖道には、生と死の境を渡り歩く秘術が伝わっている。この秘術によって、術者は死を恐れず膨大な力を得る。天賦「血のかまど」を解放すると、胡桃のHPが低い時、炎ダメージが上昇する。(Wangsheng has a long heritage. It’s said that their directors pass down a secret technique to traverse between life and death. Unafraid in the face of death, they instead unleash yet greater power. Once the Talent “Sanguine Rouge” is unlocked, Hu Tao gains a Pyro DMG Bonus when her HP is low.)

「療原の蝶！」 (“Pyre, pyre, pants on fire!”)

灼熱の魂をフリー広範囲炎ダメージを与える 敵に命中すると颯太をのhp上限をもとにhpが回復する これは最大での5体分発の可能だ また命中時にフータウのhpが低ければより高いダメージと回復効果が発生する プー太をの戦いは自らを危険にさらすそのため連携係となったhp道を配りつつ元素スキルと元素爆発を発動するといひ 戦闘が始まったら元素スキルで名超の前状態にはい 通常攻撃と11を織り交ぜこのダメージと千葉以降効果を敵に与えよ 胡桃の大上戸は添付調印の時によりチームメンバーの会心率が上がる [音楽] hpが低下したら敵の密集地帯る 元素爆発発動させるこのダメージを与えつつ自身のhpを回復するという 大杖道の葬儀は厳かでもうもしく 人々は自然と口を注ぐ しかし同株であるふーたんはそんな雰囲気と程遠い性格の持ち主た 大杖道の年長者はこのわんぱくな動詞に不満を抱いたが 葬儀を執り行う姿を見て感嘆の声を漏らしたと言う 成都市は返還であり市は申請をもたらず 市は忌避すべきことなのだろう 胡桃は重々承知している 理解していないのは 一部の年長者の海だ

Hu Tao commands a blazing spirit to deal Pyro DMG in a large AoE When her Elemental Burst hits enemies Hu Tao regenerates a certain percentage of her Max HP A maximum of five enemies can affect this percentage Additionally, using this skill when Hu Tao’s HP is low Deals greater DMG and regenerates more HP Hu Tao’s unique fighting style often imperils her As such, she must coordinate with her teammates And choose the right moment to use her skills and manage her HP Hu Tao often begins by using her Elemental Skill to enter the Paramita Papilio state Then she alternates between Normal and Charged Attacks to deal Pyro DMG Applying Blood Blossoms onto enemies She then leaves the field, using the CRIT Rate increase from “Flutter By” To increase her teammates’ damage output When Hu Tao’s HP is low She can choose a group of enemies upon which to unleash her Elemental Burst Dealing Pyro DMG and regenerating her HP Wangsheng Funeral Parlor conducts rites of utmost solemnity, and its staff are used to speaking little Making Hu Tao’s liveliness seem an ill fit Her elders once criticized her mischief-making But having seen her immaculate conduct of the parlor’s affairs They could do naught but admit their error Life and death are but two halves of an endless cycle Life leads unto death, and death unto new life — why, then, should death be taboo? Hu Tao has had the wisdom to see this, though some of her elders have yet to do so



GB.4.2 チュートリアル動画 スヴィレット「旧世の戒律」 Collected Miscellany - “Neuvillette: Precepts of the Ages” (Source JP/EN)

GB.4.3 チュートリアル動画 フリーナ「鏡中影」 Collected Miscellany - “Furina: Reflection in the Mirror” (Source JP/EN)

GB.4.4 チュートリアル動画 千織「袂に錦の香り満ちて」 Collected Miscellany - “Chiori: Brocade of Fragrant Beauty” (Source JP/EN)

GB.4.5 チュートリアル動画 アルレッキーノ「凶影の残光」 Collected Miscellany - “Arlecchino: Afterglow of Calamity” (Source JP/EN)

GB.4.6 チュートリアル動画 マーヴィカ「烈日の巡礼」 Collected Miscellany - “Mavuika: Pilgrimage of the Blazing Sun” (Source JP/EN)

GB.4.7 チュートリアル動画 ヴァレサ「ヒーロー見参!!」 Collected Miscellany - “Varesa: Hero Incoming!” (Source JP/EN)

果樹園を手伝うヴァレサからは、おっとりとした、些か内気な印象を受ける。(Tending her orchard by day, Varesa is just a mild-mannered fruit farmer, maybe even a little shy.)

「頭突き〜！」 (“Headbutt!”)

だが、仮面をつけると、雰囲気が一変するようだ。(But when she dons her mask, she completely transforms.)

「ジャスティス!!」 (“It’s justice o’clock!”)

「お出かけ？それとも...試合？」 (“Are we going on a trip? Or... to a competition?”)

ヴァレサは落下攻撃を軸に戦い、高速ダッシュが可能な雷元素アタッカーだ。(Varesa is an Electro damage dealer who specialises in Plunging Attacks and has a rapid Sprint.)

仮面をつけると、「猛烈パッション」状態に入り、あらゆる攻撃が強化され、より高いダメージを与えられる。この状態に入る方法は、主に落下攻撃となる。(After donning her mask, Varesa enters the Fiery Passion state. In this state, each of her attacks gains a unique buff and deals increased DMG. Typically, Varesa uses a Plunging Attack to enter the Fiery Passion state.)

元素スキルを発動すると、前方に一定距離突進し、経路上の敵に雷ダメージを与え、一定の夜魂値を獲得する。その後、通常攻撃ボタンを押すと、重撃を放ち、跳び上がる。再び通常攻撃ボタンを押すと、落下攻撃で雷範囲ダメージを与え、同時に一定の夜魂値を獲得する。この方法で夜魂値がマックスになると、猛烈パッション状態となり、元素スキルを1回追加で利用できる。(With her Elemental Skill, Varesa charges forward, dealing Electro DMG to enemies in her path and recovering a set amount of Nightsoul points. By subsequently tapping Normal Attack, Varesa will quickly execute a Charged Attack then leap into the air. By tapping Normal Attack again, she will plunge down at the enemy, dealing AoE Electro DMG, and recovering a set amount of Nightsoul points. After reaching maximum Nightsoul Points with this method, Varesa will enter the Fiery Passion state and gain 1 extra charge of her Elemental Skill.)

「くられ、渾身の一撃！」 (“One fell swoop!”)

元素エネルギーが最大時の元素爆発では、強力な飛び蹴りで雷範囲ダメージを与える。元素爆発発動後、夜魂値が上限まで回復し、猛烈パッション状態となる。(When Energy is full, Varesa can use her Elemental Burst to deliver a powerful flying kick that deals AoE Electro

DMG. This will also restore Varesa's Nightsoul points to maximum, and send her into the Fiery Passion state.)

また、この状態で落下攻撃を放ってから短時間クールタイムを無視して、より少ない元素エネルギーで特殊な元素爆発を1回発動できる、これは落下攻撃ダメージとみなされる。(After performing a Plunging Attack in the Fiery Passion state, the cooldown of Varesa's Elemental Burst is ignored for a short period, during which she can execute a single special Elemental Burst that costs less Energy, and deals Plunging Attack DMG.)

戦闘中、ヴァレサは元素スキルで敵陣に突撃し、通常攻撃ボタンで高く跳び上がった後、落下攻撃を繰り返して夜魂値を溜め、猛烈パッション状態に入る。この状態中、先ほどの手順を繰り返して大ダメージを与え、機を見計らい、少ない元素エネルギーの、または通常の元素爆発を発動するといいたいだろう。(In battle, Varesa strikes at the enemy with her Elemental Skill, then leaps up into the air with a tap of her Normal Attack. Tapping Normal Attack again, she plunges down, gains full Nightsoul points, and enters the Fiery Passion State. Now, Varesa can continue with this same attack routine to deal increased DMG, peppering in high- or low-Energy-cost Elemental Bursts at opportune moments as needed.)

全力疾走するヴァレサを止められる自信があるならいいが、勧めはしない。元素スキル長押しで夜魂の加護状態に入ると、継続的に夜魂値を消費する。移動速度と中断耐性がアップし、地形を利用して遠くへ跳んだり、夜魂値を追加消費して水面と液体燃素の上を移動したりできる。この時、液体燃素のダメージを受けない。(Maybe you think you could stop Varesa on a rampage. While I don't doubt your judgment, I'd advise against it. Hold Varesa's Elemental Skill to enter the Nightsoul's Blessing state and steadily consume Nightsoul points. In this state, she will gain increased movement SPD, resistance to interruption, and sprinting SPD. In addition, she can make flying leaps off the terrain, or consume additional Nightsoul points to move on water, and even on liquid Phlogiston without taking damage.)

燃素を利用できるナタのエリアにいる時、チームにヴァレサがいる状態で料理を使用すると、燃素を一定値回復する。(In areas with Natlan's Phlogiston mechanics, if Varesa is in the party, your own characters can eat food to replenish phlogiston.)

また、特定の移動状態にあるキャラから切り替えると、ヴァレサは夜魂の加護状態で登場する。(Furthermore, if the active character is in a specific movement state, Varesa can take the field already in the Nightsoul's Blessing state.)

同じことでも、それをやる理由は人それぞれだ。例えば威嚇のためによく使われる仮面だが、ヴァレサの場合、勇気を与える道具となっている。(People often do the same thing for very different reasons. Take masks, for instance: Some wear them to intimidate other people, while Varesa wears hers to gain courage.)

いつか仮面を被らず戦えたら、と願っているようだが、仮面を被ること自体、勇気のいる行為だとは気づいていないらしい。(She longs for the day when she no longer needs her mask to feel confident, not realizing that sometimes, it takes more courage to don one's mask than not to.)

無論、仮面には他の役割もある... 以前チュエンマーケットを訪れた際、精巧かつ創意溢れる仮面が並んでいた... 残念ながら、俺には似合わなそうだったが。(Of course, there are masks for all kinds of occasions... Chuwen Fair sells quite a range, actually. I've browsed them before. Outstanding works of art and meticulously made, though, sadly... they don't really suit me.)



GB.4.8 チュートリアル動画 エスコフィエ「包丁の円舞」 Collected Miscellany -

“Escoffier: A Waltz of Scoring Cuts” (Source JP/EN)

「科学料理のシェフ「カーネル・デセル」エスコフィエよ。カトラリーの準備も完了！」 (“Well met. I am Escoffier, Patissiere Supreme and master of precision gastronomy. Utensils at the ready!”)

エスコフィエは味方全体を治療できる氷元素のサブアタッカーだ。敵の氷耐性と水耐性を下げ、チームメンバーの攻撃をサポートする。(Escoffier is an off-field Cryo Damage dealer with group healing abilities. She can also decrease enemies' Cryo and Hydro resistance, boosting the DMG dealt by her teammates.)

元素スキル一回押しでは、敵に氷範囲ダメージを与え、マルチスペクトル調理マシナリーを起動する。これはフィールド上のキャラクターを追尾し、一定時間ごとに周囲の敵に氷ダメージを与える。長押しでは、フィールド上に調理マシナリーを設置する、マシナリーは元素攻撃を吸収し、吸収した元素エネルギーが一定量に達すると、美味しい料理を生成する。(Tap Escoffier's Elemental Skill to deal AoE Cryo DMG to surrounding enemies, and activate her All-Spectrum Multi-Use Cooking Mek. The Cooking Mek will follow the active character, and periodically deal Cryo DMG to surrounding enemies. Hold Escoffier's Elemental Skill to place the Cooking Mek on the field. The Cooking Mek can absorb Elemental Attacks. When the amount of Elemental Energy absorbed reaches a threshold, delicious dishes will be produced.)

「最高の一品よ！」 (“The pinnacle of excellence!”)

元素爆発では、卓越した包丁さばきを披露して、氷範囲ダメージを与え、チーム全員のHPを回復する。その後しばらく、定期的にフィールド上キャラのHPを回復する。回復量はエスコフィエの攻撃力に依存する。(With her Elemental Burst, Escoffier displays her exceptional knife skills, dealing AoE Cryo DMG and restoring HP to all party members. Additionally, for a period of time, the active character will periodically regain HP based on Escoffier's ATK.)

低温保存で鮮度を保持する食材を急速冷凍できれば、非常に便利だ。(Keeping ingredients fresh means keeping them cool, a skill which is second nature to Escoffier.)

エスコフィエの元素スキルや元素爆発が敵に命中すると、チーム内の水・氷キャラの数に応じて、敵の水耐性・氷耐性が下がる。エスコフィエは水・氷キャラと組み合わせると、耐性デバフを最大限に活かし、フィールド上キャラの火力をアップできる。(After Escoffier's Elemental Skill or Burst hits an enemy, their Hydro and Cryo Resistance will be decreased based on the number of Hydro and Cryo characters in the party. By teaming up with Hydro and Cryo characters, Escoffier can maximize her Resistance Reduction and boost her team's damage output.)

戦闘中、エスコフィエは元素スキルで調理マシナリーを出し、敵を倒すのを手伝ってくれる。元素エネルギーが溜まったら、元素爆発でチームのHPを回復し、優雅に戦闘を終わらせるのだ。(In combat, Escoffier summons her Cooking Mek with her Elemental Skill, providing off-field support for her team. When Energy is full, Escoffier unleashes her Elemental Burst, restoring HP for the entire party and bringing the fight to a graceful close.)

俺も刀剣はよく扱うが、エスコフィエの繊細な技術には敵わない。だが俺の経験から言えば、高い技術が幸福をもたらすとは限らない——。技術には危険が伴うのだ。しかし、いくら警告したところで、真理の探求を止めることはできないし、純粋な情熱を否定はできない。幸い、彼女は料理に関心があるだけだ、それだけならば... 杞憂というものだろう。(Though I too possess skill with a blade, I cannot hope to match Escoffier's technical finesse. In my experience, however, cutting-edge technology doesn't always spell happiness — The more intricate it is, the more perilous it tends to be. Of course, warnings like these can do little to curb humanity's quest

for excellence, and I cannot deny the sincerity of such enthusiasm. Thankfully, Escoffier's passion lies exclusively in culinary techniques. It's just cooking, after all — what could possibly go wrong?)

GB.4.9 チュートリアル動画 スカーク「冷界の静けさ」 Collected Miscellany - “Skirk: The Silence of a Frostbound Realm” (Source JP/EN)

「これまでの旅でお前は己の力を示し、強者であることを証明した。私と対等に言葉を交わす資格がある。」 (“You’ve proven your strength to me along your journey, and earned the right to speak to me as an equal.”)

「教えるのは一度だけだ。」 (“I’ll only demonstrate this once.”)

スカークは特殊なエネルギー「蛇の狡智」を使用する氷アタッカーだ。通常攻撃や元素爆発で戦闘を行うが、この元素爆発は元素エネルギーではなく、「蛇の狡智」を使って発動する。(Skirk is a Cryo DMG dealer who inflicts DMG through her Normal Attacks and Elemental Bursts. Her Elemental Bursts do not rely on Elemental Energy, but a special kind of energy known as “Serpent’s Subtlety”).

元素スキル一回押しでは「蛇の狡智」を一定量獲得して、「七相一閃」状態に入る。このとき、通常攻撃、重撃、落下攻撃は、元素付与によって他の元素に変化しない氷ダメージとなる。中断耐性が上がり、通常攻撃と重撃の範囲が広がる。長押しでは、「蛇の狡智」を獲得し、中断耐性がアップした状態で、高速移動をし続ける。(By tapping her Elemental Skill, Skirk will gain a certain amount of Serpent’s Subtlety and enter the “Seven-Phase Flash” state. While in this state, Skirk’s Normal, Charged, and Plunging Attacks will deal Cryo DMG that cannot be overridden by other Elemental infusions. This state also increases her resistance to interruption and the AoE of her Normal and Charged Attacks. By holding her Elemental Skill, Skirk will gain a certain amount of Serpent’s Subtlety, increased resistance to interruption, and will continuously move at high speed.)

チームの仲間が氷関連反応を起こすと、近くに虚境の裂け目が生成される。「七相一閃」状態のスカークが重撃、または元素スキルの長押しで高速移動すると、虚境の裂け目を吸収し、「蛇の狡智」を獲得する。(When a party member triggers a Cryo-related reaction, a Void Rift will be created near your opponent. When Skirk uses a Charged Attack in her Seven-Phase Flash state or holds her Elemental Skill to move swiftly. She will absorb Void Rifts and gain a certain amount of Serpent’s Subtlety.)

「星々よ、静かに眠れ。」 (“Another star goes out.”)

蛇の狡智が50以上のときに元素爆発を発動すると、蛇の狡智を全て消費して連続攻撃を行い、氷範囲ダメージを与える。また、発動時に持っていた50を超える分の蛇の狡智に応じて、元素爆発のダメージがアップする。(When Skirk has at least 50 Serpent’s Subtlety, unleashing her Elemental Burst will expend all of her Serpent’s Subtlety, performing consecutive attacks that deal AoE Cryo DMG. At the same time, the DMG dealt by an instance of this Elemental Burst can be increased by the amount of Serpent’s Subtlety points over 50 points when it is unleashed.)

スカークは戦闘に際して受け身ではなく、積極的に戦い方を変えることで相手の不意を突く。(Instead of simply responding to a crisis as it unfolds, Skirk prefers to catch her opponents off guard by switching up her fighting style.)

「七相一閃」状態の時、彼女は蛇の狡智を消費せずに元素爆発を発動する、この場合、周囲の一定範囲内にある虚境の裂け目を吸収し、スカークの通常攻撃のダメージが上がる。(When Skirk is in the Seven-Phase Flash state, her Elemental Burst can be unleashed without expending

any Serpent's Subtlety. Using her Elemental Burst at this point will absorb the Void Rifts around her in a fixed AoE, increasing her Normal Attack DMG.)

水または氷キャラの仲間と協力して戦うと、スカークの元素爆発および七相一閃モードでの通常攻撃のダメージが上がる。(When fighting alongside companions who wield Hydro or Cryo, Skirk's Normal Attack DMG dealt in the Seven-Phase Flash state, as well as her Elemental Burst DMG, will be increased.)

武芸の習得には多様な術の会得が不可欠だ。弟子から「師」となった彼女なら、よく知っているはずだ。スカークがチームにいるとき、チーム全員の元素タイプが水と氷のみからなる場合、それぞれの元素スキルレベルが1上がる。(Only by constantly learning and adapting may a person become a true martial artist. Having gone from being a disciple to a master herself, Skirk must have acquired her own understanding of this. When Skirk is in the party, and all other party members are either Hydro or Cryo, party members' Elemental Skill Level is increased by 1.)

スカークは戦闘に長けており、様々な戦闘スタイルを見せる。仲間の協力のもと、元素スキルの一回押しで敵に攻撃を仕掛け続け、重撃と元素爆発をタイミングよく発動することで、虚境の裂け目を吸収し、凄まじい攻勢で敵を一掃する。また、元素スキルの長押しで、フィールド上にある虚境の裂け目を吸収し、溜まった「蛇の狡智」で元素爆発を発動して、目の前の敵を粉砕する。(Skirk is a skilled warrior, who is capable of adapting her fighting style to tackle whatever comes her way. With the support of her teammates, Skirk can tap her Elemental Skill while keeping up a steady barrage of Normal Attacks. Then unleash a Charged Attack or Elemental Burst at just the right moment, absorbing nearby Void Rifts and sweeping the battlefield with a ferocious offensive. Skirk can also choose to hold her Elemental Skill to absorb Void Rifts on the field, building up enough Serpent's Subtlety to unleash her Elemental Burst and crush all that lies in her path.)

俺から見たスルトロッチは、決して師にはなれそうにない人物だ。だから今まで通り兄の予言が実証されると、俺の運命に対する不満はさらに深まった。幸い、今のところスカークは、「極悪騎」の悪い部分を受け継いでいないようで、ほっとした。しかし、幸いと言えるのはそこだけだ。多くが運命から逃れようとする一方で、生き残るためその束縛に自ら足を踏み入れる者もいる、これは不可抗力なのだ。この先も、こうした馬鹿げたことは起こり続けるだろう。俺はまだ色々な問いの答えを探している——貴様もそのはずだ。今回はここまでしておこう。後のことは、また会う時に。(I never believed that Surtalogi was cut out to be a teacher, so when my brother's prophecy came true, as always, I found myself resenting fate all the more. Fortunately, thus far at least it seems that Skirk has not inherited the corrupt nature of her master, “The Foul” — an undeniable relief. Yet in the end, that is all it is, and nothing more. Just as many struggle to escape their fate, others are pushed into its jaws to survive. Senseless, yet inevitable... A cruel irony, indeed. But who knows what the future holds? Perhaps more of such ironies lie ahead. There are many questions to which I still seek answers... As I'm sure you do, too. For now, let us leave it at that. We will, no doubt, have much to discuss when next we meet.)

## SA かな 仮名

### SA.1 平仮名 (ひらがな)

Some general notes:

- The ん character is rarely used by itself, but suffixed to another character to add the “n” sound.

#### SA.1.1 Mnemonics

Table 22: 平仮名 mnemonic table. <sup>†</sup>Particle romanisations.

平仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
あ あ	a	a	“A” shape
い い	i	i	<u>e</u> el
う う	u	u	“u” shape
え え	e	e	<u>e</u> xotic swan
お お	o	o	double “o” shape
か か	ka	ka	咖啡
が が	ga	ga	
き き	ki	ki	<u>k</u> ey
きゃ きゃ	kya	kya	
きゅ きゅ	kyu	kyu	
きょ きょ	kyo	kyo	
ぎ ぎ	gi	gi	
ぎゃ ぎゃ	gya	gya	
ぎゅ ぎゅ	gyu	gyu	
ぎょ ぎょ	gyo	gyo	
く く	ku	ku	bird <u>k</u> u-ku
ぐ ぐ	gu	gu	
け け	ke	ke	<u>k</u> elp (loose kelp)
げ げ	ge	ge	
こ こ	ko	ko	<u>c</u> o-habiting worms
ご ご	go	go	
さ さ	sa	sa	<u>s</u> alsa (two hand stir) / NOT “5”
ざ ざ	za	za	
し し	shi	<u>s</u> i/shi	<u>s</u> heep; shepherd’s crook
しゃ しゃ	sha	sha	
しゅ しゅ	shu	shu	
しょ しょ	sho	sho	

平仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
じ	ji	zi/ji	
じゃ	ja	jya/ja	
じゅ	ju	jyu/ju	
じょ	jo	jyo/jo	
す	su	su	<u>s</u> wing
ず	zu	zu	
せ	se	se	せかい 世界
ぜ	ze	ze	
そ	so	so	<u>s</u> oda / “sword” shape
ぞ	zo	zo	
た	ta	ta	“ta” shape
だ	da	da	
ち	chi	ti/chi	the “5”
ちゃ	cha	cha	
ちゅ	chu	chu	
ちょ	cho	cho	
ぢ	ji	di	
ぢゃ	ja	dya	
ぢゅ	ju	dyu	
ぢょ	jo	dyo	
つ	tsu	tu/tsu	<u>t</u> sunami
づ	zu	du	
て	te	te	<u>t</u> elescope
で	de	de	
と	to	to	<u>t</u> oe with splinter
ど	do	do	
な	na	na	<u>n</u> un praying to cross
に	ni	ni	<u>n</u> eedle
にゃ	nya	nya	
にゅ	nyu	nyu	
によ	nyo	nyo	
ぬ	nu	nu	<u>n</u> oodles <b>with tail</b>
ね	ne	ne	ねこ ( <u>n</u> eko) <b>with tail</b>
の	no	no	pig <u>n</u> ose

平仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
は は	ha/wa <sup>†</sup>	ha	“Ha” shape
ば ば	ba	ba	
ぱ ぱ	pa	pa	
ひ ひ	hi	hi	<u>heel</u> / <u>he</u> has a big nose
ひゃ ひゃ	hya	hya	
ひゅ ひゅ	hyu	hyu	
ひょ ひょ	hyo	hyo	
び び	bi	bi	
びゃ びゃ	bya	bya	
びゅ びゅ	byu	byu	
びょ びょ	byo	byo	
ぴ ぴ	pi	pi	
ぴゃ ぴゃ	pya	pya	
ぴゅ ぴゅ	pyu	pyu	
ぴょ ぴょ	pyo	pyo	
ふ ふ	fu	hu/fu	Mount <u>Fu</u> ji
ぶ ぶ	bu	bu	
ぷ ぷ	pu	pu	
へ へ	he/e <sup>†</sup>	he	<u>head</u> band / Mount St. <u>He</u> lens
べ べ	be	be	
ぺ ぺ	pe	pe	
ほ ほ	ho	ho	mutated santa says <u>ho</u> ho ho
ぼ ぼ	bo	bo	
ぽ ぽ	po	po	
ま ま	ma	ma	mutated mom with snake tail
み み	mi	mi	<u>me</u> just turned 21
みゃ みゃ	mya	mya	
みゅ みゅ	myu	myu	
みょ みょ	myo	myo	
む む	mu	mu	cow says <u>mo</u> o
め め	me	me	eye shape <b>without</b> tail
も も	mo	mo	<u>more</u> worms to catch <u>more</u> fish
や や	ya	ya	<u>y</u> acht with anchor down
ゆ ゆ	yu	yu	<u>u</u> -tensils

平仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
よ よ	yo	yo	“yo” shape
ら ら	ra	ra	<u>r</u> abbit
り り	ri	ri	reeds
りゃ りゃ	rya	rya	
りゅ りゅ	ryu	ryu	
りょ りょ	ryo	ryo	
る る	ru	ru	weird <u>r</u> oute <b>with tail</b>
れ れ	re	re	<u>r</u> etching guy kneeled down
ろ ろ	ro	ro	normal <u>r</u> oad <b>without tail</b>
わ わ	wa	wa	<u>w</u> allaby / <u>w</u> asp
を を	wo/o <sup>†</sup>	wo	<u>w</u> oah the water is cold
ん ん	nn	nn	“n” shape
あ あ	?	la/xa	
い い	?	li/xi	
う う	?	lu/xu	
え え	?	le/xo	
お お	?	lo/xo	
や や	?	lya/xya	
ゆ ゆ	?	lyu/xyu	
よ よ	?	lyo/xyo	
っ っ	<sup>†</sup> >	ltu/ltsu/xtsu/repeat >	

## SA.2 片仮名 (カタカナ)

Some general notes:

- Usage of the ・ symbol to denote word boundaries is completely optional.

### SA.2.1 Mnemonics

Table 23: 片仮名 mnemonic table. Some entries were taken from Wikipedia (Hepburn Romanisation) but only the orange and blue ones are taken, since the beige and purple ones are regarded as unofficial (by me).

片仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
ア ア	a	a	“A” shape
イ イ	i	i	eagle perched
イエ イエ	ye	ye	
ウ ウ	u	u	same shape as う



片仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
ウィ	wi	wi	
ウェ	we	we	
ウォ	wo	uxo	
ヴ	vu	vu	
ヴァ	va	va	
ヴィ	vi	vi	
ヴュ	vyu	vyu	
ヴェ	ve	ve	
ヴォ	vo	vo	
エ	e	e	engineer bar
オ	o	o	opera talent (オ) singing
カ	ka	ka	same shape as か
ガ	ga	ga	
キ	ki	ki	same shape as き
キャ	kya	kya	
キュ	kyu	kyu	
キョ	kyo	kyo	
ギ	gi	gi	
ギャ	gya	gya	
ギュ	gyu	gyu	
ギョ	gyo	gyo	
ク	ku	ku	cook's hat
クァ	kwa	kwa	
クィ	kwi	kwi	
クェ	kwe	kwe	
クォ	kwo	kwo	
グ	gu	gu	
グァ	gwa	gwa	
ケ	ke	ke	"k" shape
ゲ	ge	ge	
コ	ko	ko	broken 口 (CN) / two corners
ゴ	go	go	
サ	sa	sa	sardines and salmon (bigger)
ザ	za	za	

片仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
シ シ	shi	si/shi	same direction as し
シャ シャ	sha	sha	
シュ シュ	shu	shu	
シェ シュ	she	she	
ショ ショ	sho	sho	
ジ ジ	ji	zi/ji	
ジャ ジャ	ja	jya/ja	
ジュ ジュ	ju	jyu/ju	
ジェ ジェ	je	jye/je	
ジョ ジョ	jo	jyo/jo	
ス ス	su	su	<u>s</u> uperman
ズ ズ	zu	zu	
セ セ	se	se	same shape as セ
ゼ ゼ	ze	ze	
ソ ソ	so	so	<u>s</u> ewing needles
ゾ ゾ	zo	zo	
タ タ	ta	ta	<u>t</u> idal wave
ダ ダ	da	da	
チ チ	chi	ti/chi	<u>c</u> heer / ち
チャ チャ	cha	cha	
チュ チュ	chu	chu	
チェ チェ	che	che	
チョ チョ	cho	cho	
ヂ ヌ	ji	di	
ヂャ ヌ	ja	dya	
ヂュ ヌ	ju	dyu	
ヂョ ヌ	jo	dyo	
ツ ツ	tsu	tu/tsu	same direction as つ
ツァ ヌ	tsa	tsa	<i>Italia</i> “z”
ツィ ヌ	tsi	tsi	<i>Italia</i> “z”
ツェ ヌ	tse	tse	<i>Italia</i> “z”
ツォ ヌ	tso	tso	<i>Italia</i> “z”
ヅ ヌ	zu	du	
テ テ	te	te	<u>t</u> elephone pole

片仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
ティ ティ	ti	texi	"party"
テュ ティ	tyu	texyu	
デ デ	de	de	
ディ ディ	di	dexi	"candy"
デュ デュ	dyu	dexyu	
ト ト	to	to	totem pole
トゥ トウ	tu	toxu	"two"
ド ド	do	do	
ドゥ ドウ	du	dowu	"dew"
ナ ナ	na	na	narwhal
ニ ニ	ni	ni	same shape as に
ニャ ニャ	nya	nya	
ニュ ニュ	nyu	nyu	
ニョ ニョ	nyo	nyo	
ヌ ヌ	nu	nu	noodles with chopsticks
ネ ネ	ne	ne	neckerchief
ノ ノ	no	no	long nose
ハ ハ	ha	ha	ハ <sup>ヘ</sup> / 八 (CN)
バ バ	ba	ba	
パ パ	pa	pa	
ヒ ヒ	hi	hi	smile hehe
ヒャ ヒャ	hya	hya	
ヒュ ヒュ	hyu	hyu	
ヒョ ヒョ	hyo	hyo	
ビ ビ	bi	bi	
ビャ ビャ	bya	bya	
ビュ ビュ	byu	byu	
ビョ ビョ	byo	byo	
ピ ピ	pi	pi	
ピャ ピャ	pya	pya	
ピュ ピュ	pyu	pyu	
ピョ ピョ	pyo	pyo	
フ フ	fu	hu/fu	flag
ファ ファ	fa	fa	

片仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
フィ	fi	fi	
フュ	fyu	fyu	
フェ	fe	fe	
フォ	fo	fo	
ブ	bu	bu	
プ	pu	pu	
ヘ	he	he	same shape as ヘ
ベ	be	be	
ペ	pe	pe	
ホ	ho	ho	<u>h</u> oly cross
ボ	bo	bo	
ポ	po	po	
マ	ma	ma	<u>m</u> ath angles
ミ	mi	mi	<u>m</u> issiles
ミヤ	mya	mya	
ミュ	myu	myu	
ミヨ	myo	myo	
ム	mu	mu	cow face, says <u>moo</u>
メ	me	me	Arlecchino's eyes (め)
モ	mo	mo	same shape as も
ヤ	ya	ya	same shape as や
ユ	yu	yu	<u>u</u> -turn
ヨ	yo	yo	<u>y</u> oga pose
ラ	ra	ra	<u>r</u> aptor
リ	ri	ri	reeds
リヤ	rya	rya	
リュ	ryu	ryu	
リョ	ryo	ryo	
ル	ru	ru	tree <u>r</u> oots
レ	re	re	<u>r</u> ed hair / right side of ル
ロ	ro	ro	cyclic <u>r</u> oad
ワ	wa	wa	<u>w</u> atermelon slice
ヲ	wo	wo	<u>o</u> atmeal bowl
ン	nn	nn	N/A

片仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
ア	ア	?	la/ <b>xa</b>
イ	イ	?	li/ <b>xi</b>
ウ	ウ	?	lu/ <b>xu</b>
エ	エ	?	le/ <b>xe</b>
オ	オ	?	lo/ <b>xo</b>
ヤ	ヤ	?	lya/ <b>xya</b>
ユ	ユ	?	lyu/ <b>xyu</b>
ヨ	ヨ	?	lyo/ <b>xyo</b>
ー	ー	<+1	— key
ツ	ツ	+1>	ltu/ltsu/ <b>xtsu</b> /repeat >

### SA.3 仮名 Summary

Table 24: 仮名 summary table. <sup>†</sup>Particle romanisation applies only for 平仮名.

平仮名	片仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
あ	ア	a	a
い	イ	i	i
	イエ	ye	ye
う	ウ	u	u
	ウィ	wi	wi
	ウェ	we	we
	ウォ	wo	<b>uxo</b>
	ヴ	vu	vu
	ヴァ	va	va
	ヴィ	vi	vi
	ヴュ	vyu	vyu
	ヴェ	ve	ve
	ヴォ	vo	vo
え	エ	e	e
お	オ	o	o
か	カ	ka	ka
が	ガ	ga	ga
き	キ	ki	ki
きゃ	キャ	kya	kya

平仮名	片仮名	Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
きゅ	キユ	kyu	kyu
きょ	キョ	kyo	kyo
ぎ	ギ	gi	gi
ぎゃ	ギャ	gya	gya
ぎゅ	ギュ	gyu	gyu
ぎょ	ギョ	gyo	gyo
く	ク	ku	ku
	クァ	kwa	kwa
	クィ	kwi	kwi
	クエ	kwe	kwe
	クォ	kwo	kwo
ぐ	グ	gu	gu
	グァ	gwa	gwa
け	ケ	ke	ke
げ	ゲ	ge	ge
こ	コ	ko	ko
ご	ゴ	go	go
さ	サ	sa	sa
ざ	ザ	za	za
し	シ	shi	si/shi
しゃ	シャ	sha	sha
しゅ	シュ	shu	shu
	シェ	she	she
しょ	ショ	sho	sho
じ	ジ	ji	zi/ji
じゃ	ジャ	ja	jya/ja
じゅ	ジュ	ju	jyu/ju
	ジェ	je	jye/je
じょ	ジョ	jo	jyo/jo
す	ス	su	su
ず	ズ	zu	zu
せ	セ	se	se
ぜ	ゼ	ze	ze
そ	ソ	so	so

平仮名		片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
ぞ	ぞ	ゾ	ゾ	zo	zo
た	た	タ	タ	ta	ta
だ	だ	ダ	ダ	da	da
ち	ち	チ	チ	chi	ti/chi
ちゃ	ちゃ	チャ	チャ	cha	cha
ちゅ	ちゅ	チュ	チュ	chu	chu
		チェ	チェ	che	che
ちょ	ちょ	チョ	チョ	cho	cho
ぢ	ぢ	ヂ	ヂ	ji	di
ぢゃ	ぢゃ	ヂャ	ヂャ	ja	dya
ぢゅ	ぢゅ	ヂュ	ヂュ	ju	dyu
ぢょ	ぢょ	ヂョ	ヂョ	jo	dyo
つ	つ	ツ	ツ	tsu	tu/tsu
		ツァ	ツァ	tsa	tsa
		ツイ	ツイ	tsi	tsi
		ツェ	ツェ	tse	tse
		ツォ	ツォ	tso	tso
づ	づ	ヅ	ヅ	zu	du
て	て	テ	テ	te	te
		テイ	テイ	ti	texi
		テュ	テュ	tyu	texyu
で	で	デ	デ	de	de
		ディ	ディ	di	dexi
		デュ	デュ	dyu	dexyu
と	と	ト	ト	to	to
		トゥ	トゥ	tu	toxu
ど	ど	ド	ド	do	do
		ドウ	ドウ	du	dowu
な	な	ナ	ナ	na	na
に	に	ニ	ニ	ni	ni
にゃ	にゃ	ニャ	ニャ	nya	nya
にゅ	にゅ	ニュ	ニュ	nyu	nyu
によ	によ	ニョ	ニョ	nyo	nyo
ぬ	ぬ	ヌ	ヌ	nu	nu



平仮名		片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
ね	ね	ネ	ネ	ne	ne
の	の	ノ	ノ	no	no
は	は	ハ	ハ	ha	ha
ば	ば	バ	バ	ba	ba
ぱ	ぱ	パ	パ	pa	pa
ひ	ひ	ヒ	ヒ	hi	hi
ひゃ	ひゃ	ヒャ	ヒャ	hya	hya
ひゅ	ひゅ	ヒュ	ヒュ	hyu	hyu
ひょ	ひょ	ヒョ	ヒョ	hyo	hyo
び	び	ビ	ビ	bi	bi
びゃ	びゃ	ビャ	ビャ	bya	bya
びゅ	びゅ	ビュ	ビュ	byu	byu
びょ	びょ	ビョ	ビョ	byo	byo
ぴ	ぴ	ピ	ピ	pi	pi
ぴゃ	ぴゃ	ピャ	ピャ	pya	pya
ぴゅ	ぴゅ	ピュ	ピュ	pyu	pyu
ぴょ	ぴょ	ピョ	ピョ	pyo	pyo
ふ	ふ	フ	フ	fu	hu/fu
		ファ	ファ	fa	fa
		フィ	フィ	fi	fi
		フュ	フュ	fyu	fyu
		フェ	フェ	fe	fe
		フォ	フォ	fo	fo
ぶ	ぶ	ブ	ブ	bu	bu
ぶ	ぶ	プ	プ	pu	pu
へ	へ	ヘ	ヘ	he	he
べ	べ	ベ	ベ	be	be
ぺ	ぺ	ペ	ペ	pe	pe
ほ	ほ	ホ	ホ	ho	ho
ぼ	ぼ	ボ	ボ	bo	bo
ぽ	ぽ	ポ	ポ	po	po
ま	ま	マ	マ	ma	ma
み	み	ミ	ミ	mi	mi
みゃ	みゃ	ミャ	ミャ	mya	mya

平仮名		片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
みゆ	みゆ	ミュ	ミユ	myu	myu
みよ	みよ	ミヨ	ミヨ	myo	myo
む	む	ム	ム	mu	mu
め	め	メ	メ	me	me
も	も	モ	モ	mo	mo
や	や	ヤ	ヤ	ya	ya
ゆ	ゆ	ユ	ユ	yu	yu
よ	よ	ヨ	ヨ	yo	yo
ら	ら	ラ	ラ	ra	ra
り	り	リ	リ	ri	ri
りゃ	りゃ	リャ	リャ	rya	rya
りゅ	りゅ	リュ	リュ	ryu	ryu
りょ	りょ	リョ	リョ	ryo	ryo
る	る	ル	ル	ru	ru
れ	れ	レ	レ	re	re
ろ	ろ	ロ	ロ	ro	ro
わ	わ	ワ	ワ	wa	wa
を	を	ヲ	ヲ	wo	wo
ん	ん	ン	ン	nn	nn
あ	あ	ア	ア	?	la/xa
い	い	イ	イ	?	li/xi
う	う	ウ	ウ	?	lu/xu
え	え	エ	エ	?	le/xe
お	お	オ	オ	?	lo/xo
や	や	ヤ	ヤ	?	lya/xya
ゆ	ゆ	ユ	ユ	?	lyu/xyu
よ	よ	ヨ	ヨ	?	lyo/xyo
		ー	ー	<+1	— key
っ	っ	ッ	ッ	+1>	ltu/ltsu/xtsu/repeat >

SB Basic nouns

SB.1 Numbers

Table 25: Basic nouns: numbers.

Name	Meaning	Notes
れい れい れい 零/0/〇	zero	[NHK] also: ゼロ/ (with 漢字 numerals)
いち いち いち 一/1/壹	one	
に に に 二/2/弍	two	
さん さん さん 三/3/参	three	
•  よん よん し 四/4/四	four	[HN] 肆 is obsolete; 四 only when counting up/compound 漢字/banks
ご ご ご 五/5/伍	five	伍 is obsolete
ろく ろく ろく 六/6/六	six	陸 is obsolete
•  なな なな しち 七/7/七	seven	[HN] 漆 is obsolete
はち はち はち 八/8/八	eight	捌 is obsolete
きゅう きゅう きゅう 九/9/九	nine	玖 is obsolete
じゅう じゅう じゅう じゅう 十/一〇/10/拾	ten	
じゅういち じゅういち 十一/11	eleven	
じゅうに じゅうに 十二/12	twelve	
じゅうさん じゅうさん 十三/13	thirteen	
じゅうよん じゅうよん 十四/14	fourteen	
じゅうご じゅうご 十五/15	fifteen	
じゅうろく じゅうろく 十六/16	sixteen	
じゅうなな じゅうなな 十七/17	seventeen	
じゅうはち じゅうはち 十八/18	eighteen	
じゅうきゅう じゅうきゅう 十九/19	nineteen	
に じゅう に じゅう に じゅう 二十/二〇/20	twenty	
さんじゅう さんじゅう さんじゅう 三十/三〇/30	thirty	
よんじゅう よんじゅう よんじゅう 四十/四〇/40	fourty	
ごじゅう ごじゅう ごじゅう 五十/五〇/50	fifty	
ろくじゅう ろくじゅう ろくじゅう 六十/六〇/60	sixty	
ななじゅう ななじゅう ななじゅう 七十/七〇/70	seventy	
はちじゅう はちじゅう はちじゅう 八十/八〇/80	eighty	
きゅうじゅう きゅうじゅう きゅうじゅう 九十/九〇/90	ninety	
ひゃく ひゃく ひゃく 百/一〇〇/100	hundred	
に ひゃく に ひゃく に ひゃく 二百/2百/二〇〇/ 200	two hundred	
•  さんびゃく さんびゃく さんびゃく 三百/3百/三〇〇/ 300	three hundred	
よんひゃく よんひゃく よんひゃく 四百/4百/四〇〇/ 400	four hundred	
ごひゃく ごひゃく ごひゃく 五百/5百/五〇〇/ 500	five hundred	
•  ろくびゃく ろくびゃく ろくびゃく 六百/6百/六〇〇/ 600	six hundred	
ななひゃく ななひゃく ななひゃく 七百/7百/七〇〇/ 700	seven hundred	

Name	Meaning	Notes
• <small>はっぴやく</small> 八百 / <small>はっぴやく</small> 8百 / <small>はっぴやく</small> 八〇〇 / 800	eight hundred	
<small>きゅうひやく</small> 九百 / <small>きゅうひやく</small> 9百 / <small>きゅうひやく</small> 九〇〇 / 900	nine hundred	
• <small>せん</small> 千 / <small>いっせん</small> 一千 / <small>いっせん</small> 一〇〇〇 / <small>いっせん</small> 1000	thousand	
<small>にせん</small> 二千 / <small>にせん</small> 二〇〇〇 / <small>にせん</small> 2000	two thousand	
• <small>さんぜん</small> 三千 / <small>さんぜん</small> 三〇〇〇 / <small>さんぜん</small> 3000	three thousand	
<small>よんぜん</small> 四千 / <small>よんぜん</small> 四〇〇〇 / <small>よんぜん</small> 4000	four thousand	
<small>ごせん</small> 五千 / <small>ごせん</small> 五〇〇〇 / <small>ごせん</small> 5000	five thousand	
<small>ろくせん</small> 六千 / <small>ろくせん</small> 六〇〇〇 / <small>ろくせん</small> 6000	six thousand	
<small>ななせん</small> 七千 / <small>ななせん</small> 七〇〇〇 / <small>ななせん</small> 7000	seven thousand	
• <small>はっせん</small> 八千 / <small>はっせん</small> 八〇〇〇 / <small>はっせん</small> 8000	eight thousand	
<small>きゅうせん</small> 九千 / <small>きゅうせん</small> 九〇〇〇 / <small>きゅうせん</small> 9000	nine thousand	
<small>いちまん</small> 一万 / <small>いちまん</small> 一〇〇〇〇 / <small>いちまん</small> 1万 / 老萬	ten thousand	
<small>じゅうまん</small> 十万 / <small>じゅうまん</small> 一〇〇〇〇〇 / <small>じゅうまん</small> 100000 / 拾万 / 拾萬	hundred thousand	
<small>ひゃくまん</small> 百万 / <small>ひゃくまん</small> 一〇〇〇〇〇〇 / <small>ひゃくまん</small> 1000000 / 老百万 / <small>ひゃくまん</small> 壹百萬	million	
• <small>せんまん</small> 千万 / <small>いっせんまん</small> 一千万 / <small>いっせんまん</small> 一千万 / <small>いっせんまん</small> 1000万 / <small>いっせんまん</small> 一〇〇〇〇万 / <small>いっせんまん</small> 10000000	ten million	
<small>いちおおく</small> 一億 / <small>いちおおく</small> 1億	hundred million	
<small>いっちよう</small> 一兆 / <small>いっちよう</small> 1億	trillion	

SB.2 Counting (generic): つ

Table 26: Basic nouns: counting (generic).

Name	Meaning	Notes
いくつ	how many?	(幾つ)
ひと ひとつ	one item	
ふた ふたつ	two items	
みつ みっつ	three items	
よつ よっつ	four items	
いつ いっつ	five items	
むっ むっつ	six items	
なな ななつ	seven items	
やっ やっつ	eight items	
ここの 九つ	nine items	
とお 十	ten items	

Name	Meaning	Notes
全部 <small>ぜんぶ</small>	all/entire/whole/altogether	also an adverb
以上 <small>いじょう</small>	and above	SUFFIX, also an expression
以下 <small>いげ</small>	and below/subpar	SUFFIX
次 <small>つぎ</small>	next	

### SB.3 Counting people: 人<sup>にん</sup>

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 27: Basic nouns: counting people.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何人 <small>なんにん</small>	how many people?	
• 1人 <small>ひとり</small>	one person; being alone/single	
• 2人 <small>ふたり</small>	two people	
3人 <small>さんにん</small>	three people	
• 4人 <small>よにん</small>	four people	
5人 <small>ごにん</small>	five people	
6人 <small>ろくにん</small>	six people	
• 7人/7人 <small>ななにん しちにん</small>	seven people; former preferred for clarity <b>Actually, we don't talk about しち...right? See grammar book when you get there</b>	[HN1], [HN2]
8人 <small>はちにん</small>	eight people	
9人 <small>じゅうにん</small>	nine people	
10人 <small>きゅうにん</small>	ten people	
100人 <small>ひゃくにん</small>	hundred people	
1000人 <small>せんになん</small>	thousand people	
1万人 <small>いちまんにん</small>	ten thousand people	
一緒 <small>いっしょ</small>	together	

### SB.4 Counting bus/train stations: 駅<sup>えき</sup>

Table 28: Basic nouns: counting bus/train stations.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何駅 <small>なんえき</small>	how many stations?	
• 1駅 <small>ひとえき</small>	one station	
• 2駅 <small>ふたえき</small>	two stations	
3駅 <small>さんえき</small>	three stations	
4駅 <small>よんえき</small>	four stations	
5駅 <small>ごえき</small>	five stations	
6駅 <small>ろくえき</small>	six stations	
7駅 <small>ななえき</small>	seven stations	
8駅 <small>はちえき</small>	eight stations	
9駅 <small>きゅうえき</small>	nine stations	
10駅 <small>じゅうえき</small>	ten stations	
100駅 <small>ひゃくえき</small>	hundred stations	
1000駅 <small>せんえき</small>	thousand stations	
1万駅 <small>いちまんえき</small>	ten thousand stations	

## SB.5 Counting age: 歳

才 may be used as a simpler substitute for 歳 only in handwriting, but note that 才 is technically incorrect as it does not mean age ([HN]).

Table 29: Basic nouns: counting age.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何歳	how old?	
• 1歳未満	less than one year old	e.g. 「～の乳児」; [NHK]
• 1歳	one year old	
2歳	two year old	
3歳	three years old	
4歳	four years old	
5歳	five years old	
6歳	six years old	
7歳	seven years old	
• 8歳	eight years old	
9歳	nine years old	
• 10歳	ten years old	じっさい also possible?
二十歳/20歳	twenty years old	the only exception, to do with coming-of-age
100歳	hundred years old	
1000歳	thousand years old	
1万歳	ten thousand years old	

## SB.6 Counting thin/flat things: 枚

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 30: Basic nouns: counting thin/flat things.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何枚	how many sheets/thin or flat things?	
1枚	one sheet/thin or flat thing	
2枚	two sheets/thin or flat things	
3枚	three sheets/thin or flat things	
4枚	four sheets/thin or flat things	
5枚	five sheets/thin or flat things	
6枚	six sheets/thin or flat things	
7枚	seven sheets/thin or flat things	
8枚	eight sheets/thin or flat things	
9枚	nine sheets/thin or flat things	
10枚	ten sheets/thin or flat things	
100枚	hundred sheets/thin or flat things	
1000枚	thousand sheets/thin or flat things	
1万枚	ten thousand sheets/thin or flat things	

## SB.7 Counting thin long things (bottles): 本

Tofugu: TO READ

bottles/trains/buses/books/films/phone calls

Table 31: Basic nouns: counting thin long things (bottles).

Name	Meaning	Notes
• なんぼん 何本	how many thin long things?	
• いっぽん 1本	one thin long thing	
• にほん 2本	two thin long things	
• さんぼん 3本	three thin long things	
• よんぼん 4本	four thin long things	
• ごほん 5本	five thin long things	
• ろっぽん 6本	six thin long things	
• ななぼん 7本	seven thin long things	
• はっぽん 8本	eight thin long things	
• きゅうぼん 9本	nine thin long things	
• じゅうぼん 10本	ten thin long things	じゅうぼん also possible?
• ひゃっぽん 100本	one hundred thin long things	
• せんぼん 1000本	one thousand thin long things	
• いちまんぼん 1万本	ten thousand thin long things	

## SB.8 Counting drinks (cups/glasses): 杯

Table 32: Basic nouns: counting drinks (cups/glasses).

Name	Meaning	Notes
• なんばい 何杯	how many drinks/cups/glasses?	
• いっぱい 1杯	one drink/cup/glass	
• にばい 2杯	two drinks/cups/glasses	
• さんばい 3杯	three drinks/cups/glasses	
• よんばい 4杯	four drinks/cups/glasses	
• ごばい 5杯	five drinks/cups/glasses	
• ろっぱい 6杯	six drinks/cups/glasses	
• ななばい 7杯	seven drinks/cups/glasses	
• はっぱい 8杯	eight drinks/cups/glasses	
• きゅうばい 9杯	nine drinks/cups/glasses	
• じゅうばい 10杯	ten drinks/cups/glasses	じゅうばい also possible?
• ひゃっぱい 100杯	hundred drinks/cups/glasses	
• せんばい 1000杯	thousand drinks/cups/glasses	
• いちまんばい 1万杯	ten thousand drinks/cups/glasses	

## SB.9 Counting machines/vehicles: 台

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 33: Basic nouns: counting machines/vehicles.

Name	Meaning	Notes
• なんだい 何台	how many machines?	
• いちだい 1台	one machine	
• にだい 2台	two machines	
• さんだい 3台	three machines	
• よんだい 4台	four machines	
• ごだい 5台	five machines	
• ろくだい 6台	six machines	



Name	Meaning	Notes
ななだい 7台	seven machines	
はちだい 8台	eight machines	
きゅうだい 9台	nine machines	
じゅうだい 10台	ten machines	
ひゃくだい 100台	hundred machines	
せんだい 1000台	thousand machines	
いちまんだい 1万台	ten thousand machines	

## SB.10 Counting books: 冊

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 34: Basic nouns: counting books.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なんさつ 何冊	how many books?	
• いっさつ 1冊	one book	
に さつ 2冊	two books	
さんさつ 3冊	three books	
よんさつ 4冊	four books	
ご さつ 5冊	five books	
ろくさつ 6冊	six books	
ななさつ 7冊	seven books	
• はっさつ 8冊	eight books	
きゅうさつ 9冊	nine books	
• じゅうさつ 10冊	ten books	じゅうさつ also possible?
ひゃくさつ 100冊	hundred books	
せんさつ 1000冊	thousand books	
いちまんさつ 1万冊	ten thousand books	

## SB.11 Counting clothes: 着

Table 35: Basic nouns: counting clothes.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なんちやく 何着	how many dresses?	
• いっちやく 1着	one dress	
に ちやく 2着	two dresses	
さんちやく 3着	three dresses	
よんちやく 4着	four dresses	
ご ちやく 5着	five dresses	
ろくちやく 6着	six dresses	
ななちやく 7着	seven dresses	
• はっちやく 8着	eight dresses	
きゅうちやく 9着	nine dresses	
• じゅうちやく 10着	ten dresses	
ひゃくちやく 100着	hundred dresses	
せんちやく 1000着	thousand dresses	
いちまんちやく 1万着	ten thousand dresses	

## SB.12 Counting small things: 個

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 36: Basic nouns: counting small things.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何個	how many small things?	
• 1 個	one small thing	
2 個	two small things	
3 個	three small things	
4 個	four small things	
5 個	five small things	
• 6 個	six small things	
7 個	seven small things	
• 8 個 / 8 個	eight small things	8 個 is casual; [HN]
9 個	nine small things	
• 10 個	ten small things	
• 100 個	hundred small things	
1000 個	thousand small things	
1 万 個	ten thousand small things	
個々	individual	e.g. 「そのクラスの個々のメンバー...」, like CN's 个个

## SB.13 Counting shoes and socks: 足

Table 37: Basic nouns: Nouns: counting shoes and socks.

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 何足	how many pairs of shoes/socks?	
• 1 足	one pair of shoes/socks	
2 足	two pairs of shoes/socks	
3 足	three pairs of shoes/socks	[HN]
4 足	four pairs of shoes/socks	
5 足	five pairs of shoes/socks	
6 足	six pairs of shoes/socks	
7 足	seven pairs of shoes/socks	
• 8 足	eight pairs of shoes/socks	
9 足	nine pairs of shoes/socks	
• 10 足	ten pairs of shoes/socks	
100 足	hundred pairs of shoes/socks	also an organism
1000 足	thousand pairs of shoes/socks	
1 万 足	ten thousand pairs of shoes/socks	

## SB.14 Counting houses: 軒

UNSURE TERRITORY, exceptions of exceptions popping out!

Table 38: Basic nouns: .

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 何軒	how many houses?	exception <sup>2</sup> [myg]
• 1 軒	one house	
2 軒	two houses	

Name	Meaning	Notes
• さんげん 3軒	three houses	exception <sup>2</sup> PREFERENCE? [myg]
よんげん 4軒	four houses	
ごげん 5軒	five houses	
• ろっげん 6軒	six houses	
ななげん 7軒	seven houses	
• はちげん はっげん 8軒/8軒	eight houses	はっげん 8軒 may be casual; [HN]
きゅうげん 9軒	nine houses	
• じゅうげん 10軒	ten houses	
• ひゃっげん 100軒	hundred houses	
• せんげん 1000軒	thousand houses	exception <sup>2</sup> ?
いちまんげん 1万軒	ten thousand houses	?

## SB.15 Counting floors: 階

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 39: Basic nouns: counting floors.

Name	Meaning	Notes
• なんかい なんがい 何階/何階	which floor?	かい 階 is special and can choose to rendaku, prefer first for uniformity; [myg], [TFG]
• いっかい 1階	first floor (ground floor)	
に かい 2階	second floor	
• さんかい さんがい 3階/3階	third floor	かい 階 is special and can choose to rendaku, prefer first for uniformity; [myg], [TFG]
よんかい 4階	fourth floor	
ご かい 5階	fifth floor	
• ろっかい 6階	sixth floor	
ななかい 7階	seventh floor	
• はちかい はっかい 8階/8階	eighth floor	はっかい 8階 is informal; [HN]
きゅうかい 9階	nine floor	
• じゅうかい 10階	tenth floor	[HN]
• ひゃっかい 100階	hundredth floor	
せんかい 1000階	thousandth floor	
いちまんかい 1万階	ten thousandth floor	

## SB.16 Counting locations: 箇所

箇所 is sometimes written as ケ所.

Table 40: Basic nouns: counting locations.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なん かしょ 何箇所	how many locations?	
• いっ かしょ 1箇所	one location	
に かしょ 2箇所	two locations	
さん かしょ 3箇所	three locations	
よん かしょ 4箇所	four locations	
ご かしょ 5箇所	five locations	

Name	Meaning	Notes
ろっ か しよ 6箇所	six locations	
なな か しよ 7箇所	seven locations	
はち か しよ 八箇所	eight locations	
きゅう か しよ 9箇所	nine locations	
じゅう か しよ 10箇所	ten locations	
ひゃく か しよ 100箇所	hundred locations	
せん か しよ 1000箇所	thousand locations	
いちまん か しよ 1万箇所	ten thousand locations	

## SB.17 Counting small animals: ひき 匹

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 41: Basic nouns: counting small animals.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なん ひ き 何匹	how many small animals?	
いっ ひ き 1匹	one small animal	
に ひ き 2匹	two small animals	
さん ひ き 3匹	three small animals	
よん ひ き 4匹	four small animals	
ご ひ き 5匹	five small animals	
ろっ ひ き 6匹	six small animals	
なな ひ き 7匹	seven small animals	
はっ ひ き 8匹	eight small animals	
きゅう ひ き 9匹	nine small animals	
じゅう ひ き 10匹	ten small animals	
ひゃく ひ き 100匹	hundred small animals	
せん ひ き 1000匹	thousand small animals	
いちまん ひ き 1万匹	ten thousand small animals	

## SB.18 Counting big animals: とう 頭

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 42: Basic nouns: counting big animals.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なん とう 何頭	how many big animals?	
いっ とう 1頭	one big animal	
に とう 2頭	two big animals	
さん とう 3頭	three big animals	
よん とう 4頭	four big animals	
ご とう 5頭	five big animals	
ろく とう 6頭	six big animals	
なな とう 7頭	seven big animals	
はっ とう 8頭	eight big animals	
きゅう とう 9頭	nine big animals	
じゅう とう 10頭	ten big animals	
ひゃく とう 100頭	hundred big animals	

Name	Meaning	Notes
1000頭 <small>せんとう</small>	thousand big animals	
1万頭 <small>いちまんとう</small>	ten thousand big animals	

## SB.19 Counting birds and bats: 羽<sup>わ</sup>

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

% Be careful: many winged animals don't use the 羽 counter: flying insects, winged monsters, and flying dinosaurs all use 匹<sup>ひき</sup> (Table 41) or 頭<sup>とう</sup> (Table 42).

All birds are counted with 羽<sup>わ</sup> except *very* big birds like ostriches and emus, those use 頭<sup>とう</sup> (Table 42).

Table 43: Basic nouns: counting birds and bats.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何羽 <small>なん わ</small>	how many birds/bats?	
1羽 <small>いち わ</small>	one bird/bats	
2羽 <small>に わ</small>	two birds/bats	
• 3羽 <small>さん ぼ</small>	three birds/bats	
4羽 <small>よん わ</small>	four birds/bats	
5羽 <small>ご わ</small>	five birds/bats	
6羽 <small>ろく わ</small>	six birds/bats	
7羽 <small>なな わ</small>	seven birds/bats	
8羽 <small>はち わ</small>	eight birds/bats	
9羽 <small>きゅう わ</small>	nine birds/bats	
• 10羽 <small>じゅう</small>	ten birds/bats	
• 100羽 <small>ひゃく っば</small>	hundred birds/bats	
• 1000羽 <small>せん ぼ</small>	thousand birds/bats	
• 1万羽 <small>いちまん ぼ</small>	ten thousand birds/bats	

## SB.20 Counting years: 年<sup>ねん</sup>

[Tofugu: TO READ](#)

Table 44: Basic nouns: counting years.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何年 <small>なんねん</small>	how many years?/which year?	
1年 <small>いちねん</small>	one year/first year	
2年 <small>に ねん</small>	two years/second year	
3年 <small>さんねん</small>	three years/third year	
• 4年 <small>よ ねん</small>	four years/fourth year	
5年 <small>ご ねん</small>	five years/fifth year	
6年 <small>ろくねん</small>	six years/sixth year	
7年 <small>ななねん</small>	seven years/seventh year	
8年 <small>はちねん</small>	eight years/eighth year	
9年 <small>きゅうねん</small>	nine years/ninth year	
10年 <small>じゅうねん</small>	ten years/tenth year	
100年 <small>ひゃくねん</small>	hundred years/hundredth year	
1000年 <small>せんねん</small>	thousand years/thousandth year	
1万年 <small>いちまんねん</small>	ten thousand years/ten thousandth year	

## SB.21 Calendar months and days of a week: 月 and 曜日

The days of the week are named after the East Asian Seven Luminaries: the sun, the moon, and the five planets visible to the naked eye (Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn).

Table 45: Basic nouns: Calendar months and days of a week.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何月	which month?	
いちがつ 一月/1月	January	
にがつ 二月/2月	February	
さんがつ 三月/3月	March	
• 四月/4月	April	
五月/5月	May	
ろくがつ 六月/6月	June	
• 七月/7月	July	なながつ なながつ 七月/7月 is sometimes used for disambiguation; [HN]
はちがつ 八月/8月	August	
• 九月/9月	September	
じゅうがつ 十月/10月	October	
じゅういちがつ 十一月/11月	November	
じゅうにがつ 十二月/12月	December	
何曜日	which day of the week?	
にち 日/日曜/日曜日	Sunday	Sun
げつ 月/月曜/月曜日	Monday	Moon
か 火/火曜/火曜日	Tuesday	fire/Mars (火星)
すい 水/水曜/水曜日	Wednesday	water/Mercury (水星)
もく 木/木曜/木曜日	Thursday	wood/Jupiter (木星)
きん 金/金曜/金曜日	Friday	metal/Venus (金星)
ど 土/土曜/土曜日	Saturday	earth/Saturn (土星)

## SB.22 Counting months: ケ月/月

Tofugu: TO READ

月 is the 和語 reading, so counting uses the 和語 counting system.

Table 46: Basic nouns: counting months.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何ヶ月/何月	how many months?	
• 1ヶ月/1月	one month	ひとつき 1月 is semi-archaic; [HN]
2ヶ月/2月	two months	ふたつき 2月 is semi-archaic; [HN]
• 3ヶ月/3月	three months	
4ヶ月/4月	four months	
5ヶ月/5月	five months	
• 6ヶ月/6月	six months	
7ヶ月/7月	seven months	
• 8ヶ月/8ヶ月/八月/8月	eight months	はっ か げつ 8ヶ月 may be informal; [HN]
9ヶ月/9月	nine months	
• 10ヶ月/10月	ten months	

Name	Meaning	Notes
• ひゃっかげつ 1 0 0 ケ月	hundred months	
せんかげつ 1 0 0 0 ケ月	thousand months	
いちまん かげつ 1 万 ケ月	ten thousand months	

SB.23 Days of the month: 日/日/日

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#). Also see [Instagram reel](#).

For calendar days, the 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 14th, 20th, 24th}. All other numbers use standard 漢語 counting system (日). Furthermore, {17th, 27th} use 七, and {19th, 29th} use 九.

For ordinal days (§SB.24), there are two rules. The ~{日/日}日 schema follows the rules of day intervals (§SB.25), so 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 20th} only. Furthermore, {1st–31st, 49th} use the formal readings: {17th, 27th} use 七 (七 OK for disambiguation) and {19th, 29th, 49th} use 九. On the other hand, the 第~日 schema follows these simplified rules: the standard 漢語 counting system is used for all numbers, and {9th, 19th, 29th, 49th} use 九.

For day intervals (§SB.25), the 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 20th} only. All other numbers use the standard 漢語 counting system (日). Furthermore, days intervals in {1–31, 49} days use the formal readings: {17, 27} days use 七 (七 OK for disambiguation) and {19, 29, 49} days use 九.

For o’clocks and hour intervals (§SB.26), if the ones place is 4, 7 or 9, then 四、七、九 are used, ad infinitum.

Table 47: Basic nouns: calendar days.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なんにち 何日	which day of month/which day?/how many days?	
• ついたち いっ び 1 日 / 1 日	first day of month	いっ び 1 日 is sometimes used in business settings; <a href="#">[TFG]</a>
• ふつ か 2 日	second day of month	
• みっ か 3 日	third day of month	
• よっ か 4 日	fourth day of month	
• いっ か 5 日	fifth day of month	
• むい か 6 日	sixth day of month	
• なのか 7 日	seventh day of month	
• よう か 8 日	eighth day of month	
• ここの か 9 日	ninth day of month	
• とおか 1 0 日	tenth day of month	
• じゅういちにち 1 1 日	eleventh day of month	
• じゅう に にち 1 2 日	twelfth day of month	
• じゅうさんにち 1 3 日	thirteenth day of month	
• じゅうよっ か 1 4 日	fourteenth day of month	
• じゅう ご にち 1 5 日	fifteenth day of month	
• じゅうろくにち 1 6 日	sixteenth day of month	
• じゅうしちにち 1 7 日	seventeenth day of month	じゅうななにち 1 7 日 is sometimes used for disambiguation
• じゅうはちにち 1 8 日	eighteenth day of month	
• じゅう く にち 1 9 日	nineteenth day of month	



Name	Meaning	Notes
• 20日 <small>はつか</small>	twentieth day of month	
• 21日 <small>にじゅういちにち</small>	twenty-first day of month	
• 22日 <small>にじゅう に にち</small>	twenty-second day of month	
• 23日 <small>にじゅうさんにち</small>	twenty-third day of month	
• 24日 <small>にじゅうよっ か</small>	twenty-fourth day of month	
• 25日 <small>にじゅう ご にち</small>	twenty-fifth day of month	
• 26日 <small>にじゅうろくにち</small>	twenty-sixth day of month	
• 27日 <small>にじゅうしちにち</small>	twenty-seventh day of month	にじゅうななにち 27日 is sometimes used for disambiguation
• 28日 <small>にじゅうはちにち</small>	twenty-eighth day of month	
• 29日 <small>にじゅう く にち</small>	twenty-ninth day of month	
• 30日 <small>さんじゅうにち</small>	thirtieth of month	
• 31日 <small>さんじゅういちにち</small>	thirty-first day of month	
• 四十九日 <small>しじゅうく にち</small>	forty-ninth day after death	

SB.24 Ordinal days: ~{日/日}日/第~日

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

目 is casual, 第 is formal. 日 is 和語 and follows pronunciations from §SB.25; 第 is 漢語 and forces 日 to take its 漢語 reading.

Table 48: Basic nouns: ordinal days.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何日 <small>なんにち</small>	which day of month/which day?/how many days?	
第何日 <small>だいにち</small>	which day?	
• 1日目/第1日 <small>いちにち め だいいちにち</small>	first day	
• 2日目/第2日 <small>ふつ か め だいに にち</small>	second day	
• 3日目/第3日 <small>みつ か め だいさんにち</small>	third day	
• 4日目/第4日 <small>よつ か め だいよんにち</small>	fourth day	
• 5日目/第5日 <small>いつ か め だいごにち</small>	fifth day	
• 6日目/第6日 <small>むい か め だいろくにち</small>	sixth day	
• 7日目/第7日 <small>なの か め だいななにち</small>	seventh day	
• 8日目/第8日 <small>よう か め だいはちにち</small>	eighth day	
• 9日目/第9日 <small>ここの か め だいく にち</small>	ninth day	
• 10日目/第10日 <small>とおかめ だいじゅうにち</small>	tenth day	
• 11日目/第11日 <small>じゅういちにち め だいじゅういちにち</small>	eleventh day	
• 12日目/第12日 <small>じゅう に にち め だいじゅう に にち</small>	twelfth day	
• 13日目/第13日 <small>じゅうさんにち め だいじゅうさんにち</small>	thirteenth day	
• 14日目/第14日 <small>じゅうよんにち め だいじゅうよんにち</small>	fourteenth day	
• 15日目/第15日 <small>じゅうごにち め だいじゅうごにち</small>	fifteenth day	
• 16日目/第16日 <small>じゅうろくにち め だいじゅうろくにち</small>	sixteenth day	
• 17日目/第17日 <small>じゅうしちにち め だいじゅうななにち</small>	seventeenth day	
• 18日目/第18日 <small>じゅうはちにち め だいじゅうはちにち</small>	eighteenth day	
• 19日目/第19日 <small>じゅうく にち め だいじゅうく にち</small>	nineteenth day	
• 20日目/第20日 <small>はつかめ だいに じゅうにち</small>	twentieth day	
• 21日目/第21日 <small>にじゅういちにち め だいにじゅういちにち</small>	twenty-first day	
• 22日目/第22日 <small>にじゅう に にち め だいにじゅう に にち</small>	twenty-second day	

Name	Meaning	Notes
にじゅうさんにちめ だいにじゅうさんにち 2 3 日目/第 2 3 日	twenty-third day	
にじゅうよんにちめ だいにじゅうよんにち 2 4 日目/第 2 4 日	twenty-fourth day	
にじゅうごにちめ だいにじゅうごにち 2 5 日目/第 2 5 日	twenty-fifth day	
にじゅうろくにちめ だいにじゅうろくにち 2 6 日目/第 2 6 日	twenty-sixth day	
• にじゅうしちにちめ だいにじゅうしちにち 2 7 日目/第 2 7 日	twenty-seventh day	
にじゅうはちにちめ だいにじゅうはちにち 2 8 日目/第 2 8 日	twenty-eighth day	
• にじゅうくにちめ だいにじゅうくにち 2 9 日目/第 2 9 日	twenty-ninth day	
さんじゅうにちめ だいさんじゅうにち 3 0 日目/第 3 0 日	thirtieth day	
さんじゅうななにちめ だいさんじゅうななにち 3 7 日目/第 3 7 日	thirty-seventh day	
さんじゅうきゅうにちめ 3 9 日目/ だいさんじゅうきゅうにち 第 3 9 日	thirty-ninth day	
• よんじゅうくにちめ だいによんじゅうくにち 4 9 日目/第 4 9 日	forty-ninth day	
ごじゅうきゅうにちめ だいにごじゅうきゅうにち 5 9 日目/第 5 9 日	fifty-ninth day	
ひゃくにちめ だいにひゃくにち 1 0 0 日目/第 1 0 0 日	hundredth day	
せんにちめ 1 0 0 0 日目/ だいせんにち 第 1 0 0 0 日	thousandth day	
いちまんにちめ だいにいちまんにち 1 万 日目/第 1 万 日	ten thousandth day	

SB.25 Counting days: {日/日}間

Read the main article on Tofugu.

The 「〜間」 suffix here means “interval”. While typically dropped in the absence of ambiguity, it is necessary here to distinguish day intervals from days of the month (§SB.23: [WB]).

For formal settings and specifically **days and hours** (with the exception of day of month <sup>なの</sup>七日), <sup>しち</sup>七 is preferred over <sup>なな</sup>七, though the latter may be used for disambiguation with <sup>いち</sup>一.

Table 49: Basic nouns: counting days.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なんにちかん 何日間	which day of month/which day?/how many days?	
いちにちかん 1 日間	one day	
• ふつにかん 2 日間	two days	
みつにかん 3 日間	three days	
よっにかん 4 日間	four days	
いつにかん 5 日間	five days	
• むいにかん 6 日間	six days	
• なのにかん 7 日間	seven days	
• ようにかん 8 日間	eight days	
ここのにかん 9 日間	nine days	
とおにかん 1 0 日間	ten days	
じゅういちにちかん 1 1 日間	eleven days	
じゅうににちかん 1 2 日間	twelve days	
じゅうさんにちかん 1 3 日間	thirteen days	
じゅうよんにちかん 1 4 日間	fourteen days	
じゅうごにちかん 1 5 日間	fifteen days	
じゅうろくにちかん 1 6 日間	sixteen days	
• じゅうしちにちかん 1 7 日間	seventeen days	じゅうななにちかん 1 7 日間 is sometimes used for disambiguation

Name	Meaning	Notes
<small>じゅうはちにちかん</small> 1 8 日間	eighteen days	
• <small>じゅうくにちかん</small> 1 9 日間	nineteen days	
• <small>はつかかん</small> 2 0 日間	twenty days	
<small>にじゅういちにちかん</small> 2 1 日間	twenty-one days	
<small>にじゅうににちかん</small> 2 2 日間	twenty-two days	
<small>にじゅうさんにちかん</small> 2 3 日間	twenty-three days	
<small>にじゅうよんにちかん</small> 2 4 日間	twenty-four days	
<small>にじゅうごにちかん</small> 2 5 日間	twenty-five days	
<small>にじゅうろくにちかん</small> 2 6 日間	twenty-six days	
• <small>にじゅうしちにちかん</small> 2 7 日間	twenty-seven days	<small>にじゅうななにちかん</small> 2 7 日間 is sometimes used for disambiguation
<small>にじゅうはちにちかん</small> 2 8 日間	twenty-eight days	
• <small>にじゅうくにちかん</small> 2 9 日間	twenty-nine days	
<small>さんじゅうにちかん</small> 3 0 日間	thirty days	
<small>さんじゅうななにちかん</small> 3 7 日間	thirty-seven days	
<small>さんじゅうきゅうにちかん</small> 3 9 日間	thirty-nine days	
• <small>にじゅうくにちかん</small> 4 9 日間	forty-nine days	
<small>にじゅうきゅうにちかん</small> 5 9 日間	fifty-nine days	
<small>ひゃくにちかん</small> 1 0 0 日間	hundred days	
<small>せんにちかん</small> 1 0 0 0 日間	thousand days	
<small>いちまんにちかん</small> 1 万 日間	ten thousand days	

SB.26 Counting o’clocks and hours: 時 and 時間

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 50: Basic nouns: counting o’clocks and hours.

Name	Meaning	Notes
<small>なんじ</small> 何時	which hour (of day)?	
<small>れいじ</small> 0 時	zero o’clock (midnight/noon)	
<small>いちじ</small> 1 時	one o’clock	
<small>にじ</small> 2 時	two o’clock	
<small>さんじ</small> 3 時	three o’clock	
• <small>よじ</small> 4 時	four o’clock	
<small>ごじ</small> 5 時	five o’clock	
<small>ろくじ</small> 6 時	six o’clock	
• <small>しちじ</small> 7 時	seven o’clock	<small>ななじ</small> 7 時 is sometimes used for disambiguation
<small>はちじ</small> 8 時	eight o’clock	
• <small>くじ</small> 9 時	nine o’clock	
<small>じゅうじ</small> 1 0 時	ten o’clock	
<small>じゅういちじ</small> 1 1 時	eleven o’clock	
<small>じゅうにじ</small> 1 2 時	twelve o’clock	
<small>じゅうさんじ</small> 1 3 時	thirteen o’clock	
• <small>じゅうよじ</small> 1 4 時	fourteen o’clock	
<small>じゅうごじ</small> 1 5 時	fifteen o’clock	
<small>じゅうろくじ</small> 1 6 時	sixteen o’clock	

SB.27 Counting minutes: 分<sup>ふん</sup>

Table 51: Basic nouns: counting minutes.

Page 140 of 215

Name	Meaning	Notes
にふん 2分	two minutes	
• さんぶん 3分	three minutes	
• よんぶん 4分	four minutes	
ごぶん 5分	five minutes	
• ろっぶん 6分	six minutes	
ななぶん 7分	seven minutes	
• はっぶん 8分	eight minutes	
きゅうぶん 9分	nine minutes	
• じゅうぶん 10分	ten minutes	
じゅうごぶん 15分	fifteen minutes	
• さんじゅうぶん 30分	thirty minutes	
よんじゅうごぶん 45分	fourty-five minutes	
• ひゃくぶん 100分	hundred minutes	
• せんぶん 1000分	thousand minutes	
• いちまんぶん 1万分	ten thousand minutes	

## SB.28 Counting seconds: 秒

Table 52: Basic nouns: counting seconds.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なんびょう 何秒	how many seconds?	
いちびょう 1秒	one second	
にびょう 2秒	two seconds	
さんびょう 3秒	three seconds	
よんびょう 4秒	four seconds	
ごびょう 5秒	five seconds	
ろくびょう 6秒	six seconds	
ななびょう 7秒	seven seconds	
はちびょう 8秒	eight seconds	
きゅうびょう 9秒	nine seconds	
じゅうびょう 10秒	ten seconds	
ひゃくびょう 100秒	hundred seconds	
せんびょう 1000秒	thousand seconds	
いちまんびょう 1万秒	ten thousand seconds	

## SB.29 Counting positions: 番

Table 53: Basic nouns: counting positions.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なんばん 何番	which position?	
いちばん 1番	first position	
にばん 2番	second position	
さんばん 3番	third position	
よんばん 4番	fourth position	
ごばん 5番	fifth position	
ろくばん 6番	sixth position	
ななばん 7番	seventh position	

Name	Meaning	Notes
はちばん 8 番	eighth position	
きゅうばん 9 番	ninth position	
じゅうばん 10 番	tenth position	
ひゃくばん 100 番	hundredth position	
せんばん 1000 番	thousandth position	
いちまんばん 1 万 番	ten thousandth position	

## SB.30 Counting occurrences: 回<sup>かい</sup>

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 54: Basic nouns: counting occurrences.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なんかい 何回	how many times?	
• いっかい 1 回	one time	
に かい 2 回	two times	
さんかい 3 回	three times	
よんかい 4 回	four times	
ご かい 5 回	five times	
• ろっかい 6 回	six times	
ななかい 7 回	seven times	
• はちかい ばっかい 8 回 / 8 回	eight times	ばっかい 8 回 is probably informal
きゅうかい 9 回	nine times	
• じゅうかい 10 回	ten times	
• ひゃっかい 100 回	hundred times	
せんかい 1000 回	thousand times	
いちまんかい 1 万 回	ten thousand times	

## SB.31 Counting methods/ways/kinds: 通り<sup>と</sup>

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 55: Basic nouns: counting methods/ways/kinds.

Name	Meaning	Notes
なんとお 何通り	how many methods/ways/kinds?	
• いっとお 1 通り	one method/way/kind	
に とお 2 通り	two methods/ways/kinds	
さんとお 3 通り	three methods/ways/kinds	
よんとお 4 通り	four methods/ways/kinds	
ご とお 5 通り	five methods/ways/kinds	
ろくとお 6 通り	six methods/ways/kinds	
ななとお 7 通り	seven methods/ways/kinds	
• はちとお ばっとお 8 通り / 8 通り	eight methods/ways/kinds	ばっとお 8 通り is probably informal
きゅうとお 9 通り	nine methods/ways/kinds	
• じゅうとお 10 通り	ten methods/ways/kinds	
ひゃくとお 100 通り	hundred methods/ways/kinds	
せんとお 1000 通り	thousand methods/ways/kinds	
いちまんとお 1 万 通り	ten thousand methods/ways/kinds	

## SB.32 Counting shots/hits/punches: 発

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 56: Basic nouns: counting shots/hits/punches.

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 何発 <small>なんぱつ</small>	how many shots/hits/punches?	
• 1発 <small>いっぱつ</small>	one shot/hit/punch	
• 2発 <small>にぱつ</small>	two shots/hits/punches	
• 3発 <small>さんぱつ</small>	three shots/hits/punches	
• 4発 <small>よんぱつ</small>	four shots/hits/punches	
• 5発 <small>ごぱつ</small>	five shots/hits/punches	
• 6発 <small>ろっぱつ</small>	six shots/hits/punches	
• 7発 <small>ななぱつ</small>	seven shots/hits/punches	
• 8発 <small>はっぱつ</small>	eight shots/hits/punches	
• 9発 <small>きゅうぱつ</small>	nine shots/hits/punches	
• 10発 <small>じゅうぱつ</small>	ten shots/hits/punches	じっぱつ also possible?
• 100発 <small>ひゃくぱつ</small>	one hundred shots/hits/punches	
• 1000発 <small>せんぱつ</small>	one thousand shots/hits/punches	
• 1万発 <small>いちまんぱつ</small>	ten thousand shots/hits/punches	



## VA Interjections and expressions

### VA.1 Greetings

Table 57: Interjections and expressions: greetings. **TO ORGANISE.**

Expression	Meaning	Notes
おはよ	good morning	colloquial
おはよう[ございます]	good morning	(お早う[御座います]); [polite]
こんにちは	hello/good afternoon/good day	(今日は)
こんばんは	good evening	(今晚は)
お休み[なさい]	good night	
お疲れ	thanks for coming/glad you could make it; thanks for helping	
はじめまして	nice to meet you/glad to make your acquaintance/how do you do	(始めまして)
お変わりありませんか	(after some time apart) how have you been?/nothing untoward has happened, has it?	polite
よろしく願います/	I look forward to working with you/please remember me/please treat me favourably/please	(宜しく願います/致します); polite;
よろしく願いたします	help me	also in Table 58
ただいま	I'm home/I'm back	(只今)
お帰り[なさい]	welcome home	
ちょっと	excuse me/hey	also an adverb
もしもし	hello (on phone)/excuse me (calling out to someone)	(申し申し)
お久しぶり	long time no see	polite
こら	hey! (calling out to someone); hey! (to scold)	
こいつ	hey, you!/you bastard!/damn you!	derogatory
お邪魔します	please excuse my intrusion/I'm coming in ("I'm intruding")	
失礼します	excuse me/I'm sorry/I'm coming in ("I'm being rude")	polite
ちょっとそこまで	just out for a bit; euphemism for toilet break	
これまで	that's enough for today	also a noun
お疲れ様	thank you for your hard work/good work/see you/goodbye/goodnight	
また明日	see you tomorrow	
またね	bye/see you later	
行ってくる	I'm off/see you later	
行ってきます	I'm off/see you later	
行ってらっしゃい	have a good day/take care/see you (often in response to 行ってきます)	(行ってらっしゃい)
お邪魔しました	please excuse my intrusion/I'm leaving ("I intruded")	
失礼しました	excuse me/I'm sorry/I'm leaving ("I was rude")	polite
お先に失礼します	pardon me for leaving first (before everyone else still present)	
気をつけて	take care/be careful	[Reddit] ((気を付けて); also in Table 58
お大事に	get well soon/take care of yourself	[Reddit]
元気だね	take care (with nuance of finality)	[Reddit]
ようこそ	welcome	
いらっしゃい	welcome	honorific; also in Table 58
いらっしゃいませ	welcome (in shops and restaurants)	
お待ちしました	thank you for waiting/sorry to have kept you waiting	polite
いただきます	thank you for the meal (just served); I receive (this meal)	(頂きます)
ごちそうさま[でした]	thank you for the meal (consumed)	(ご馳走様[でした]); [polite]

### VA.2 Exclamations

Read the main article for apologies on **CM**.

Table 58: Interjections and expressions: exclamations. **TO ORGANISE.**

Expression	Meaning	Notes
はい	yes/that is correct/I'm here/pardon?	
うん	yes/yeah/mhmm	
ふむふむ	hmm/uh-huh; murmur indicating approval/comprehension	slang
イエス	yes	
そう/そうだ/[そうです/そうでございます]	that's right/indeed (reference to something that was said/done)	e.g. 「そうだよ」、「そうです」, [polite]
そうそう[-]	that's right/indeed/that's it (reference to something that was said/done)	casual
そうそう	oh, yes!/that's it/indeed/I remember	
そういえば	now that you mention it/that reminds me/speaking of which	
ふむ/ふうむ	hmm/I see	
大丈夫	no thanks/I'm good	(そう言えば)
いいえ/いえ	no	(否)
ううん/うーん	um/well/no	
ノー	no/not needed/not allowed	
ちゃう	no/that's wrong/it's not like that; isn't it?/wasn't it?	
もういい	skip it/drop it; I've had enough/that's enough	
ご遠慮いたします	no thanks/I will refrain	(ご遠慮致します; 遠慮の例文から
お願い[します]	please	[humble]

Expression	Meaning	Notes
頼む	please/please do	slang, also a verb
{よろしく願います よろしく願いました}	please do/please take care of	(宜しく願います/致します); polite; also in Table 57
(お/<nn>)/<v-te>ください	please do for me	honorific
ください	please give me (imperative of くださる)	(下さい); honorific
いらっしゃい	please come/go/stay (polite imperative)	also in Table 57
もしよかったら	if you don't mind/if you like/if you're interested	(もし良かったら)
かしこまりました	certainly! (in response to superior/customer)	(畏まりました); polite
ちゃった	finished doing/did completely	slang of しまった/しまいました
ご遠慮ください	please refrain from	
気持ちいい	feels good	also an adjective
乾杯	cheers/bottoms-up	also a verb
うめえ/うめえ/うめー	delicious/skilled/good	colloquial
その/あの[ー]	um/er/well/say	
どれ	well/now	also a pronoun
何だ	what/what the heck/damn	
何だと	what did you just say (to me)?/what's that?	
なんてこと	my goodness!/good lord!/holy cow!	
なんてこった	what the hell/oh great!/son of a X/holy mackerel/oh no!/holy cow!/damn!	
なんでよ	why? why not? what's wrong?	
どうしたの	what's the matter?/what's wrong?	
<nn>{を/は}どうしたの	what happened to <nn>?/what have you done with <nn>?	
どうしよう	what to do	
どうするか	what would you do?/what to do about it?	
かもしれない	perhaps/possibly (sentence ender)	(かも知れない)
みたいだ	it seems that; as if	polite
みたいです	it seems that; as if	polite
みたいな	something like that/sort of like that/similar to that/in that vein	slang, abbreviation of みたいな感じ
ここだけの話	confidential talk/conversation between you and me	
助けて	help!	
危ない	watch out!/look out!/be careful!	
気をつけて	take care/be careful	((気を付けて); also in Table 57)
がんばれ	hang in there/go for it/keep at it/do your best	(頑張れ)
悪い	my bad/sorry	casual; also an adjective
悪かった	my bad/sorry (for past mistake)	casual; also an adjective
ごめん[ね]	I'm sorry/excuse me/pardon me	(御免[ね]); casual
ごめんなさい	I'm sorry/excuse me/pardon me	(御免なさい); semi-formal
許してください	please forgive me	(許して下さい); honorific, semi-formal
お許ください	please forgive me	(お許下さい); honorific, formal
{反省/後悔}しています	I'm sorry ("I am regretful")	({反省,後悔}して居ます); semi-formal
{反省/後悔}しております	I'm sorry ("I am regretful")	({反省,後悔}して居ります); humble, formal
謝罪いたします	I'm sorry (esp. in written apology) ("I perform apology")	(謝罪致します); humble, formal
お詫びいたします	I'm sorry ("I perform apology")	(お詫び致します); humble, formal
お詫び申し上げます	I'm sorry ("I offer my apology")	humble, formal
申し訳ない	I'm sorry/it's inexcusable ("excuse does not exist")	semi-polite
申し訳[ございません/ありません]	I'm sorry/it's inexcusable ("excuse does not exist")	polite
すまん/すいません/[すみません]	excuse me/pardon me/I'm sorry (general/for the inconvenience)	(済みません); [polite]
済まない	excuse me/I'm sorry	also an adjective
失礼しました	I'm sorry/excuse me/my apologies (general/for the inconvenience)	polite
ご迷惑をおかけして申し訳ございません	We apologise for any inconvenience this may cause (common email/announcement-end greeting) ("I have no excuse for causing you this trouble.")	polite, formal
どうも	thanks (abbreviation)	
どうもありがとう	thank you very much	(どうも有[り]難う)
ありがとう[ございます]	thanks/thank you	(有[り]難う[御座います]); [polite]
ありがとう[ございました]	thank you (for past action)	(有[り]難う[ございました]); polite
済まない	thank you	also an adjective
どういたしまして	you're welcome/don't mention it/not at all/my pleasure	(どう致しまして)
とんでもない	it was no bother at all/not at all/don't mention it	
こちらこそ	it is I who should say so	also in Table 74
気にするな	don't worry about it/nevermind	
気にしないで	don't worry about it/forget about it	
お安い御用	no problem/easy task	
問題ない	no problem/not an issue/all right	also an adjective
構わない	no problem/it doesn't matter	
構いません	no problem/it doesn't matter	
おめでとう[ございます]	congratulations!/well done!	(おめでとう[御座います]); [polite]
わかる?	Do you know?/do you think so too?	(分かる?); also a verb
わかる	I know/I think so too	(分かる); also a verb
だろ[う]	seems/I think/I guess/I wonder/I hope; right?/don't you agree?/I thought you'd say that!	conjunctural form of copula だ
わかんない	not understanding/not knowing	(分かんない); slang

Expression	Meaning	Notes
どうかな	how about?/I wonder/I don't know	
なるほど	I see/that's right/indeed	(成る程)
そうか	is that so? (rhetorical); I see/right/oh/OK	
そっか	oh, right/I see/OK/gotcha	
そういうことか	I got it/I see/I now know/so that's the reason	(そういう事か)
了解	OK/roger	also a noun, verb
よし	alright/looking good/OK	
そういうことなら	in that case/that being the case	
嘘	no way! really!? unbelievable!	colloquial
それはそれは	my goodness (surprise/wonder)	
まさか	by no means/never!/no way!	(真逆); also a noun
まさかの時	in case of emergency/for a rainy day/in time of need	
とんでもない	absolutely not!/far from it!/impossible!/what a thing to say!/no way!	
だから	like I said/I told you already	also a conjunction
お[お/ー]い[オ/ー]イ	oi! hey! come on!	
な	hey/listen/look/say	
ほら	look! see! hey!	
もう	jeez/come on	
まったく[もう]	good grief	(全く[もう])
まったく	good grief	slang
何か	what (are you trying to say/do you mean)?	
え	eh? what? oh?	
あれ[っ/え/ー]	huh? eh? what? look! listen!	
あら	oh!/ah!/oh no	feminine
びっくりした	oh my god!/oh my gosh!/you got me!/wow! (surprised/frightened)	
しまった	darn it!/oops!/oh dear!/oh no!	
やれ	oh!/ah!/oh dear!/dear me!/thank God!	
やれやれ	oh!/ah!/oh dear!/good grief!/dear me!/thank God!	
やだ/ヤダ	no way/not a chance	feminine/childish
そんな	no way!/never!	
ふざけんな	stop messing around!/get real!/screw you!	slang
ふざけんじゃねー	stop messing around!/get real!/screw you!	slang
ざけんなよ	fuck you!/don't fuck with me!/don't fuck around!	expletive
ファックユー	fuck you	slang, expletive
そこまで	stop!/not one step further!	
いい加減にしろ	that's enough!/cut it out!/get a life!	
いい加減にしない	shape up!/act properly!	
しっかりしろ	pull yourself together/get a grip/get a hold of yourself/come on	
さあ/さー	come on/come now/come along (to urge/encourage others); here goes (indicates resolve); well (indicates uncertainty/hesitation); about that/actually (interrupting someone)	
さて	well/now/then	CONJUNCTION
クソ	damn/damn it/shit/crap	(糞)
この野郎	you bastard/son of a bitch!	derogatory
ちくしょう	damn it/son of a bitch/god damn it	(畜生)
うぜえ	annoying/noisy	colloquial
うるさい/うるせ{え/ー}/うっせ{え/ー}	shut up!/be quiet!	(うるさい)
静かに	be quiet!	also an adverb
お腹が空く	to become hungry/get an empty stomach	
喉が渇く	to be thirsty	
以上	that's all	
これ以上	any more/anymore/any further/any better/any longer (usu. with negative sentence)	
つまらない物ですが	it's not much, but... (when giving a gift)	humble; (詰まらない物ですが); [KK]
ピコーン/ビュン/ビーン	ding/ping	ONOMATOPOEIC manga slang
パチコーン	thwap/smack (used when winking)	[PX]
尻をひって尻締め	there is no use shutting the stable door after the horse has bolted ("squeezing your buttocks after you have farted")	PROVERB
金言耳に逆らう/忠言耳に逆らう	good advice is harsh to the ear	

VA.3 Sentence builders

Table 59: Interactions and expressions: sentence builders.

Expression	Meaning	Notes
という	called/named	(と言う)
ということば	that is to say/so that means	(と言う事は)
<basis>からすると	judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of	
<basis>からしたら	judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of	
<basis>からすれば	judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of	
<about>ついて	about/concerning/regarding/as for <about>	(就いて)
<about>について	concerning/regarding <about>	(に就いて)

Expression	Meaning	Notes
詳しくは	for more details/further information...	
すべき	should do/ought to do	
すべき	should do/ought to do	

VB 普通名詞 (nouns)

VB.1 Meta: Japanese

Table 60: Nouns: meta: Japanese.		
Noun	Meaning	Notes
文字	letter/character of an alphabet	
絵文字	emoji; pictorial symbol; ASCII art	
普通名詞	common noun	
同義語	synonym	
同意語	synonym	
類語	quasi-synonym (similar meaning but not interchangeable)	
対義語	antonym	
反義語	antonym	
反意語	antonym	
反対語	antonym	
主語	subject	
熟語	compound kanji/idiom	
四字熟語	four-character compound word (esp. idiomatic)	
形容詞	adjective/い-adjective	
形容動詞	adjectival noun/nominal adjective/quasi-adjective/な-adjective	
連体詞	pre-noun adjectival/adnominal adjective	
動詞	verb	
五段動詞	う-verb	
一段動詞	る-verb	
他動詞	transitive verb	
自動詞	intransitive verb	
動作主	agent/performer of an action	
能動態	active voice	
受動態	passive voice	
受身形	passive form	
直接受身	direct passive	
間接受身	indirect passive	
過去形	past tense	
副詞	adverb	
変化	inflection/conjugation	also a verb, also in Table 81
助詞	particle	
接続詞	conjunction	
感動詞	interjection	
丁寧語	polite language (e.g. ます、です)	
尊敬語	honorific language	
謙讓語	humble language (e.g. itadaki)	
読み	reading (of a 漢字, esp. 訓読み)	
言い方	phrasing/language/wording/way of saying something	
ワードチョイス	word choice	
文章語	literary language/words used mainly in writing	
文	sentence; statement (computing)	also in Table 81

Noun	Meaning	Notes
文章 ぶんしやう	sentence	also in Table 81
例文 れいぶん	example sentence	
和語 わご	Japanese language	
漢語 かんご	Japanese word of Chinese origin/Sino-Japanese word	
外来語 がいらいご	loanword in Japanese (esp. those of Western origin)	
語源 ごげん	etymology/origin/derivation of a word	
◎ / 二重丸 にじゅうまる にじゅうまる	“very good”/double circle	
○ / 丸 まる まる	“correct”/“good”/circle	
△ / 三角 さんかくさんかく	not entirely wrong but not entirely right/so-so/average/ triangle	
× / パツ / 罰点 ぼつ ぼつてん	cross mark/“incorrect”	
原文のまま げんぶん まま	sic	(原文の儘)

## VB.2 Grammatical

Table 61: Nouns: grammatical.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
物 もの	thing/object	
こと	thing/matter	(こと)
<to nominalise> こと	nominalising suffix	SUFFIX
<noun> こと <alias>	<noun>, also known as <alias>, ...	SUFFIX
<advice> ことだ	you should/it’s important to <advice>	SUFFIX

## VB.3 Physical

Table 62: Nouns: physical.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ため息 いみぎ	sigh	
ビンタ	slap (in the face)	also a verb
爆発 ばくはつ	explosion/detonation/blast/blowing up/eruption (also of emotion)	also a verb
移動 いどう	movement/transfer/migration/travel	also a verb
行動 こうどう	taking action/act/conduct/behaviour	also a verb
ハグ	hug	
運動 うんどう	exercise/physical training/workout/sports; motion/movement	also a verb
活動 かつどう	activity/action (of person/animal/organisation/volcano)	
静止 せいし	stillness/repose/standing still/dormant (e.g. volcano)	also a verb
動き うご	movement/motion; trend/development/change/fluctuation	

## VB.4 Directions

Read the main articles on [JWA](#) and [KH](#).

For the four cardinal directions, the 訓読み readings are 東・西・南・北. The corresponding 音読み readings are 東・西・南・北.

日本では「東西南北」の順です。Japan uses EWSN (hence the 東西南北).

西洋では「北南東西」の順です。The Western world uses NSEW order.

中国では「東南西北」の順です。 China uses ESWN.

When forming the four intercardinal directions and eight secondary intercardinal directions, there is ambiguity in the ordering of constituent cardinals. All permutations are possible, but there are some rules for when to use which:

- When describing something native to Japan, use Japanese ordering.
- When forming international and Western concepts, such as compass directions, use Western ordering (this is standardised by the World Meteorological Organisation). Note that secondary intercardinal directions take the form <cardinal>-<secondary cardinal>.

The readings of the intercardinal and secondary intercardinals are simply the concatenation of the unmodified constituent 音読み readings. The only exception is when cardinals describing direction spans come together, in which case *rendaku* occurs, so we have 東西 and 南北.

Table 63: Nouns: directions.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
上	up	
下	down	
左	left	
右	right	
左折	left turn	also a verb
右折	right turn	also a verb
先	the way ahead/beyond	also in Table 73
後ろ	back/behind/rear (physical)	[HN]
後	behind (esp. abstract)/after/later	[HN]
中	inside; middle/centre	
～中	during/in the middle of/while (something happening)	SUFFIX
東西南北	east, west, south and north (Japanese order)	四字熟語 [JWA]
東	east (cardinal direction)	[JWA]
西	west (cardinal direction)	[JWA]
南	south (cardinal direction)	[JWA]
北	north (cardinal direction)	[JWA]
東南	southeast (Japanese ordering)	
西南	southwest (Japanese ordering)	
東北	northeast (Japanese ordering)	
西北	northwest (Japanese ordering)	
南東	southeast (intercardinal direction)	[JWA]
南西	southwest (intercardinal direction)	[JWA]
北東	northeast (intercardinal direction)	[JWA]
北西	northwest (intercardinal direction)	[JWA]
東南東	ESE (secondary intercardinal direction)	
南南東	SSE (secondary intercardinal direction)	
西南西	WSW (secondary intercardinal direction)	
南南西	SSW (secondary intercardinal direction)	
東北東	ENE (secondary intercardinal direction)	
北北東	NNE (secondary intercardinal direction)	
西北西	WNW (secondary intercardinal direction)	
北北西	NNW (secondary intercardinal direction)	
上り	upwards/upbound/ascent	



Noun	Meaning	Notes
下り 戻り 入り <containe>入り	downwards/downbound/descent return/backwards; return (computing) entrance/entry containing <containe>	SUFFIX
距離 [お]そば 遠回り 入店 立ち退き	distance/range/interval; difference/gap (e.g. in opinion); metric (mathematical) near/close/beside/vicinity/proximity/besides/while detour/roundabout way entering a store/restaurant; becoming an employee at a store eviction	(側/傍); [honorific]; [goo]
以上 以下 以外	the aforementioned the following excluding/except for/apart from/other than/besides/in addition to	also an expression SUFFIX
昇進 昇格 昇任 格上げ 昇級 昇進人事 昇格人事	promotion in rank (of person) promotion in status (of person/institution) promotion/advancement (of person) upgrade/promotion in status upgrading/promotion/advancement in grade/class/rank promotion/appointment to a more senior position promotion/appointment to a more senior position	also a verb; [goo] also a verb; [goo] also a verb; [goo] also a verb also a verb; [goo]
降格 降任 格下げ 降級 降格人事	demotion/drop in status (of person/institution) demotion (of person) status downgrade/demotion downgrading/demotion/degradation in grade/class/rank demotion to a less senior position	also a verb also a verb also a verb also a verb

## VB.5 Navigation

Table 64: Nouns: navigation.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
立ち入り 禁止 バン/BAN 立ち入り検査 立ち入り禁止 止まれ 路線 始発 始電 終発 最後列車 最終電車 終車 終電 急ぎ	the act of entering prohibition/ban ban (of an online account) on-the-spot/on-site inspection no entry/no trespassing/keep out/off-limits stop (road signage) route/line (bus/train/air) first departure/train/bus (of the day) first train last departure/train/bus (of the day) last train (of the day) last train (of the day) last train/bus (of the day) last train (of the day) haste/hurry/expedition/speed/dispatch	also a verb   [Wiki] [Wiki] [Wiki] (abbreviation of 終発電車); [Wiki] [Wiki]



Noun	Meaning	Notes
[お]うち	one's home/house/family/household (of speaker, by default)	[SE], also a pronoun, [honorific]
へや	room	
だいどころ	kitchen	also: キッチン
かいだん	stairs/stairway/staircase	
がっこう	school	
しょうがく	elementary/primary school	
ちゅうがく	junior high/middle/lower secondary school	
こうこう	senior high school	
だいがく	university/college	
がくえん	campus	
きょうしつ	classroom/lecture room; university department; class/course; school (for specific discipline)	

VB.7 Vehicles

Table 66: Nouns: vehicles.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
くるま	car/vehicle	
きゅうきゅうしや	ambulance	
れっしゃ	train/railway train	
でんしゃ	electric train	
はこ箱	train cabin	also in Table 70

VB.8 Furniture

Table 67: Nouns: furniture.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
いす	chair/stool	
かべ	wall/partition	
かべがみ	wallpaper/background image	
だまくら	body/waifu/husbando pillow	
まくら	pillow	SUFFIX
はしら	pillar/post; support/prop/mainstay	
なべ	pan/saucepan; pot; stew/hot pot	
まど窓	window	also: ウィンドウ (computing)

VB.9 Organisms

Table 68: Nouns: organisms.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ねこ	cat	
こねこ	kitten	
いぬ	dog; spy/loser	
こいぬ	puppy	
さかな	fish	
にんげん	human being/humankind	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ムカデ	centipede	( <sup>むかで</sup> 百足); also a counter for shoes/socks
雑魚	small fish/small fry	also in Table 76
フクロウ	owl	( <sup>ふくろう</sup> 梟)
鳥	bird; bird meat/fowl/poultry (esp. chicken meat)	
たこ	octopus	( <sup>たこ</sup> 蛸); also in Table 76
うなぎ	eel (Japanese eel)	
鳩	pigeon/dove	
はとぼっぼ	pigeon/dove	( <sup>はと</sup> 鳩ぼっぼ); children's language
アヒル	domestic duck	

## VB.10 Food

Table 69: Nouns: food.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ご飯	cooked rice/meal	
朝ご飯	breakfast	
朝ごはん	bread/sandwich for breakfast	slang/pun (ha)
朝食	breakfast	
昼ご飯	lunch	
昼食	lunch/midday meal	
晩ご飯	dinner	
夕食	evening meal/dinner	
晩食	supper/dinner	
テイクアウト	take-out/takeaway food	also a verb
持ち帰り	take-out/takeaway (food), esp. 「持ち帰りにしてください」 (please make it a takeaway)	also a verb
食べ物	food	
料理	cooking/cuisine/dish	also a verb
肉	meat	
果物	fruit	
野菜	vegetable	also: ベジタブル
果菜	fruits and vegetables	
卵	eggs/egg/roe	
マグロ	tuna	( <sup>まぐろ</sup> 鰯)
エビ	prawn/shrimp/lobster	( <sup>えび</sup> 海老)
りんご	apple	( <sup>りんご</sup> 林檎)
いちご	strawberry	( <sup>いちご</sup> 苺)
バナナ	banana	
ゆず	yuzu fruit	( <sup>ゆず</sup> 柚子)
わさび	wasabi/Japanese horseradish	( <sup>わさび</sup> 山葵)
桃	peach	
ラベンダー	lavender (flower)	
飲み	the act of drinking	
飲み物	beverage	
抹茶	matcha, powdered green tea	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ジュース	soft drink (usually fruit-based)/sweet drink/juice	
汁	juice/sap; soup/broth; dipping suace	
コーヒー	coffee	(珈琲)
丼 / 丼	porcelain bowl/meat served over rice	
そば	buckwheat/buckwheat noodles	(蕎麦)
[お]弁当	Japanese box lunch	
[お]だし	dashi (Japanese soup stock made from fish and kelp)	([お]出汁); [polite]
味噌	miso, fermented soybeans condiment	
味噌汁	miso soup	
飴	(hard) candy	
焼き肉/焼肉	Japanese dish of roasted/grilled meat (similar to KBBQ)	
たこ焼き	octopus dumplings/takoyaki	
しゃぶしゃぶ	hot pot dish where thinly sliced meat is boiled quickly then dipped in sauce	ONOMATOPOEIC
デザート	dessert	
のり	edible seaweed	(海苔)
鍋物	stew/food cooked in a pot	
シチュー	stew (esp. Japanese cream stew)	also: クリームシチュー
パン	bread/sweet pastry	
食パン	(rectangular) loaf of bread	
麻婆豆腐	mabo tofu/mapo tofu (spicy Sichuan dish of tofu and minced meat)	

## VB.11 Small objects: stationery

Table 70: Nouns: small objects: stationery.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
書	book/document	
秘書	secret/treasured book	also in Table 76
本	book/volume/script	
帳	book/register	
紙	paper	
手紙	letter/mail	
葉書	postcard	
ボール紙	cardboard	
段ボール	(corrugated) cardboard	
段ボール箱	cardboard box	
箱	box/case/chest/crate; package	also in Table 66
メモ	memo/note	also a verb
ノート	note/notebook/exercise book/laptop computer	also a verb
辞書	dictionary	
計算機	calculator	
そろばん	abacus	算盤
鉛筆	pencil	
カミソリ	razor	(剃刀)

## VB.12 General objects

Table 71: Nouns: small objects: general objects.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
双眼 鏡 <small>そうがんきょう</small>	binoculars/field glasses	
暗視スコープ <small>あんし</small>	night-vision scope	
望遠 鏡 <small>ぼうえんきょう</small>	telescope	
かばん <small>ふくろ</small>	bag/briefcase/basket	( 鞆 )
袋 <small>にようだ</small>	bag/sack/pouch	
荷札 <small>ただ</small>	label/tag	
札 <small>ただ</small>	label/tag; sign/card/plate	

## VB.13 Date

Table 72: Nouns: date.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ひ 日にち	(referring to) the date of an event	「<event>の日にち」
まいにち 毎日	every day	also an adverb, [HN]
ひ び 日々	day after day	also an adverb, [HN]
じゅうまつ 週末	weekend	
せんじつ 先日	the other day/a few days ago	also an adverb
おととい 一昨日	day before yesterday (from now)	also an adverb
きのう 昨日	yesterday (from now)	also an adverb
きょう 今日	today (now)	also an adverb; [goo]
ほんじつ 本日	today (now)	also an adverb; formal, [goo]
あした 明日	tomorrow (from now)	also an adverb
あさって 明後日	day after tomorrow (from now)	also an adverb
ぜんぜんじつ 前々日	two days before (an event)	also an adverb
ぜんじつ 前日	the day before (an event)	also an adverb
どうじつ 当日	the day (of an event)	also an adverb
よくじつ 翌日	the day after (an event)	also an adverb
よくよくじつ 翌々日	two days later (an event)	also an adverb
ぜんせんしゅう 先々週	two weeks ago (from now)	also an adverb, [HN]
せんしゅう 先週	last week (from now)	also an adverb, [HN]
こんしゅう 今週	this week (now)	also an adverb
こんしゅうまつ 今週末	this weekend	
らいしゅう 来週	next week (from now)	also an adverb, [GC]
らいらいしゅう 来々週	two weeks later (from now)	
じしゅう 次週	next week (recurring event, e.g. TV)	also an adverb, [GC]
ぜんしゅう 前週	the week before (an event)	also an adverb, [HN]
どうしゅう 当週	the week (of an event)	also an adverb
よくしゅう 翌週	the week after (an event)	also an adverb, [GC]
よくよくしゅう 翌々週	two weeks after (an event)	also an adverb, [GC]
ぜんせんげつ 先々月	two months ago (from now)	also an adverb
せんげつ 先月	last month (from now)	also an adverb
こんげつ 今月	this month (now)	also an adverb
らいげつ 来月	next month (from now)	also an adverb
ぜんげつ 前月	the month before (an event)	also an adverb

Noun	Meaning	Notes
当月	the month (of an event)	also an adverb
翌月	the month after (an event)	also an adverb
翌々月	two months after (an event)	also an adverb
一昨年	two years ago (from now)	casual, also an adverb, [goo]
去年	last year (from now)	casual, also an adverb, [goo]
一昨年	two years ago (from now)	formal, also an adverb, [goo], [HN]
昨年	last year (from now)	formal, also an adverb, [goo]
今年	this year (from now)	also an adverb
来年	next year (from now)	also an adverb
明年	next year (from now)	formal, also an adverb
再来年	two years later (from now)	also an adverb
前々年	two years before (an event)	
前年	the year before (an event)	also an adverb
当年	the year (of an event)	also an adverb
翌年	the year after (an event)	also an adverb
翌々年	two years after (an event)	also an adverb
シーズン	season (sports/four seasons/TV show/for doing something e.g. ski/examination)	
春	spring	
夏	summer	
秋	autumn	
冬	winter	
誕生日	birthday	

## VB.14 Time

Table 73: Nouns: time.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
時間	time (concept)/class period	also: タイム
タイム	time (to do something); time-out (sports)	
刹那	moment/instant	
瞬間	moment/instant	
一瞬間	an instant/moment (duration)	
一瞬	an instant/moment/for an instant	also an adverb
時	hour/o'clock	also: アワー
時	time/hour of day/moment (points to specific instant)	e.g. 「16歳の時私は...」
刻	(referring to) time of day	
秋	important time	also: 秋
今	now/immediately	also an adverb
今後	from now on (ongoing event)	also an adverb, [goo]
朝	morning	also an adverb, [HN]
今朝	this morning	
午前	before noon/ante meridian (a.m.)	also an adverb, [HN]
昼	noon	also an adverb
午後	afternoon/after noon/post meridian (p.m.)	also an adverb
今日の午後	this afternoon	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
夕方 <small>ゆふぐた</small>	evening/dusk	also an adverb
晩 <small>ばん</small>	evening/night	also an adverb, [HN], [goo]
今晚 <small>こんばん</small>	this evening/tonight	
前夜 <small>ぜんや</small>	last night/the previous night; the night before (festival, major event, etc.)	
夜 <small>よ</small>	evening/night (slightly formal)	also an adverb, [HN], [goo]
今夜 <small>こんや</small>	this evening/tonight (slightly formal)	
夜中 <small>よなか</small>	middle of the night/dead of night	[HN]
夜中 <small>やちゆう</small>	during the night (literary)	[HN]
朝日 <small>あさひ</small>	morning sun/rising sun (the event)	[HN]
日の出 <small>ひので</small>	sunrise (the moment it rises)	[HN]
夕日 <small>ゆうひ</small>	evening sun/setting sun (the event)	[HN]
日の入り <small>ひのいり</small>	sunset (the moment it sets)	[HN]
昔 <small>むかし</small>	olden days	
過去 <small>かこ</small>	the past	also an adverb
その後/[その後] <small>あと/そのち</small>	after that/afterwards/thereafter	[formal]
それから	and then/after that (from a point in time)	
あれから	since then/after that (a familiar past to both speaker and listener)	
これまで	up to now/so far	also an expression
数日 <small>かずじつ</small>	few days	
数日間 <small>かずじつかん</small>	several day period	
先 <small>さき</small>	first/before/ahead of; previous/prior/former/recent/last	[HN] also in Table 63
さっき	a moment ago/a short while ago/just now/some time ago	slang; [HN]
現在 <small>げんざい</small>	the present	also an adverb
最近 <small>さいきん</small>	recently/lately/these days/nowadays	also an adverb
途中 <small>とちゆう</small>	on the way/en route; in the middle of/midway/halfway	
これから	from now on/in the future; from here	also an adverb
それから	and then (from a point in time)	
それまで	until then; to that extent; the end of it/all there is to it	(其れまで)
未来 <small>みらい</small>	the future	[goo]
将来 <small>しょうらい</small>	future prospects (people/organisations/countries)	also an adverb, [goo]
過ぎ <small>す</small>	past/after a point in time (e.g. waiting/now)	also in Table 101
最初 <small>さいしよ</small>	first/beginning	
最終 <small>さいしゆう</small>	last/final	
最後 <small>さいご</small>	end/conclusion/last/final/latest	
長い間 <small>ながあいだ</small>	long time/interval	also an adverb
永遠 <small>えいえん</small>	eternity	

## VB.15 Pronouns and question words

Gramatically, pronouns are used in place of nouns and noun phrases. There are question words associated with each counter, see the supplementary PDF.

Regarding the ことばこそあど言葉:

- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {れ, いつ, なた, こ, ちら, っち} are pronouns
- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {の, んな} are pre-noun adjectivals



- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {う} are adverbs

to read all sub articles [here](#)

Table 74: Nouns: pronouns and question words.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
誰 <sup>だれ</sup>	who	
どなた	who; what is your name (どなた様 <sup>さま</sup> [ですか/でしょうか]。; [extra politeness and distance])	honorific, feminine; [TFG]
どちら <sup>きさま</sup>	who	[honorific]
どいつ	who	rude
誰か <sup>だれ</sup>	somebody	
みんな <sup>みんな</sup> [さん]	everybody	皆
誰 <sup>だれ</sup>	nobody	
誰でも <sup>だれ</sup>	anybody	
彼 <sup>かれ</sup>	he/him	also a noun
彼女 <sup>かのじょ</sup>	she/her	also a noun
さん	Mr./Mrs./Ms.	SUFFIX, honorific, familiar
殿 <sup>どの</sup>	Mr./Mrs./Ms. (in letters to inferiors)	SUFFIX, polite
ちゃん	familiar person	SUFFIX, familiar
君 <sup>くん</sup>	Mr./male of equal or lower status	SUFFIX
君 <sup>きみ</sup>	Ms./female of equal or lower status	SUFFIX, formal, masculine
こっち/[こちら]	this person (closer to speaker)	equal or higher status; [formal]
そっち/[そちら]	that person (closer to listener)	[formal]
あっち/[あちら]	that person/foreign country (distant)	polite; [formal]
こいつ	this person	familiar, derogatory; also an interjection
こいつめ	this rascal (jokingly)!/this bastard (expletive)!	(こいつ奴 <sup>め</sup> ); derogatory
そいつ	that person	familiar, derogatory
あいつ	that person	familiar, derogatory
あいつめ	that rascal (jokingly)!/this bastard (expletive)!	(あいつ奴 <sup>め</sup> ); derogatory
やつ	fellow/guy/chap; he/she/him/her	(奴 <sup>やつ</sup> ); familiar, derogatory
こいつら	these people	(こいつ等 <sup>ら</sup> ); familiar, derogatory
そいつら	those people	(そいつ等 <sup>ら</sup> ); familiar, derogatory
あいつら	those people	(あいつ等 <sup>ら</sup> ); familiar, derogatory
私 <sup>わたくし</sup>	I/me	formal, [HN], [SE]
私 <sup>あたし</sup>	I/me	feminine, less common
うち	I/me	(内 <sup>うち</sup> ); feminine, familiar, also a place
私 <sup>わたし</sup>	I/me	slightly formal/distant
わし	I/me	(僕 <sup>わし</sup> ); masculine, elderly
僕 <sup>ぼく</sup>	I/me	masculine, distant
自分 <sup>じぶん</sup>	myself/oneself/yourself/himself/herself/I/me	distant
俺 <sup>おれ</sup>	I/me	masculine, familiar
私たち <sup>わたしたち</sup>	we/us	(私達 <sup>わたしたち</sup> )
僕ら <sup>わし</sup>	we/us	
俺ら <sup>おれ</sup>	we/us	(俺等 <sup>おれら</sup> )

Noun	Meaning	Notes
こちら	I/me/we/us	
こっちこそ/[こちらこそ]	I (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is I who should say so	actually an expression; [formal]
こっちの方こそ/こちらの方こそ	I (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is I who should say so	formal
そちら	you/your family/your company	polite
そちらの方	you	(more) polite; [TFG]
そっちこそ/[そちらこそ]	you (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is you who should say so	[formal]
そっちの方こそ/そちらの方こそ	you (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is you who should say so	formal
君	you	familiar (equal or lower status)
あなた	you	(貴方); rude (if spoken)/distant; archaic: こなた、そなた
君たち/君ら	you (plural)	(君達)/(君等); familiar (equal or lower status)
あなたたち	you (plural)	(貴方達); rude/distant
THOU SHALT NOT CROSS THIS LINE		
あんた	you	(貴方); rude, expresses annoyance
お前/おめー	you	rude
てめえ	you	(手前); derogatory, inviting fight
貴様	you	extremely derogatory, sensitive, inviting fight
お前たち/お前ら	you (plural)	(お前達)/(お前等); rude
何	what	
どういう	what kind/sort of, referring to what was said	(どういう); actually a pre-noun adjectival
どんな	what kind/sort of	semi-casual; actually a pre-noun adjectival
何か	something	also an interjection
一部	one part/portion/section	also an adverb
全部	all/everything	also an adverb; [goo]
すべて	everything/all/the whole	(全て); also an adverb
何も	nothing	
何でも	anything	
どれ	which (three or more)	also an interjection
どの	which/what (way)	actually a pre-noun adjectival
どれか	one of many/some single one from many	
どれも	all/none	
どれでも	any/whichever	
どっち/[どちら]	which (two)	[formal]
どっか/[どちらか]	one of the two	[formal]
どっちも/[どちらも]	both/neither	[formal]
どっちでも/どちらでも	any of the two	[formal]
これ/こっち/[こちら]	this one (here, closer to speaker)	[formal]
それ/そっち/[そちら]	that one (there, closer to listener)	[formal]

Noun	Meaning	Notes
あれ/あっち/[あちら]	that one (there, distant)	[formal]
これら	these ones (here, closer to speaker)	formal and explanatory
それら	those ones (there, closer to listener)	formal and explanatory
あれら	those ones (there, distant)	formal and explanatory
これ	passionate reference/something (subjective) speaker feels close to	
それ	dispassionate reference/something (objective) speaker maintains a little distance from	
あれ	(mutual) memory reference/something in speaker's (and listener's) distant memory	
アレ	hesitant reference/leave it up to listener to interpret	used in gossip
いつ	when	(何時 ≠ 何時)
いつか	sometime	(何時か)
いつも	always/never	(何時も)
いつでも	anytime	(何時でも)
ここ	now (passionate/subjective)	
ここ<duration>	<duration> includes present moment (<duration> either past or future)	[TFG]
そこ	then (dispassionate/objective)	
あそこ	then (distant memory)	
どこ	where	(何処)
どっち/[どちら]	where/which way/which direction	[formal of どこ]
こちら <sup>へ</sup> /[どの <sup>へ</sup> 辺/どの <sup>あた</sup> り]	where (approximate)	casual, [semi-formal]
どこか/どっか	somewhere	(何処か)
どこ[に]も	everywhere/nowhere	(何処も)
どこでも	anywhere	(何処でも)
ここ/こっち/こちら	here (closer to speaker, no comparison nuance)	
そこ/そっら/そちら	there (close to listener, no comparison nuance)	
あそこ	there (distant, no comparison nuance)	
これ/{こっち/[こちら]}	this way/direction (here, closer to speaker) {comparison nuance}	[formal]
それ/{そっち/[そちら]}	that way/direction (there, closer to listener) {comparison nuance}	[formal]
あれ/{あっち/[あちら]}	that way/direction (there, distant) {comparison nuance}	[formal]
こちら <sup>へ</sup>	around here/this approximate area	casual
そこら <sup>へ</sup>	around there/that approximate area	casual
あそこら <sup>へ</sup>	around there/that approximate area (distant)	casual
この <sup>へ</sup> 辺/この <sup>あた</sup> り	this approximate area/around here	semi-formal
その <sup>へ</sup> 辺/その <sup>あた</sup> り	that approximate area/around there	semi-formal
なぜ	why	(何故); direct/formal/rude, [HN], [SE]
どうして	why/how/by what means	informal, [HN], [SE]
どうしてですか	why/how/by what means	semi-formal, [HN]
どうやって	how/what way/method, referring to an achievement of something	actually a pre-noun adjectival
なんで	why	(何で); informal, speech, [HN], [SE]
なぜか	for some reason	(何故か)

Noun	Meaning	Notes
どう	how/in what way/how about	
どの	which/what (way)	actually a pre-noun adjectival
どうか/どうも	somehow	also an adverb
どういうわけか	somehow	(どういう訳か)
どうでも	anyhow	

## VB.16 Pre-noun adjectivals

**These are adjectives** that occur directly before nouns. There are > 100 of them. From §G2.10.4, these function as pre-noun noun modifiers. These function similarly to determiners in English.

Table 75: Nouns: pre-noun adjectivals.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
我が	my/our	
どの	which/what (way)	
この	this/these (closer to speaker)	
この<number>	part/number <number>	e.g. 「その1」
その	that/those/the (closer to listener)	
あの	that/those/the (distant/mutual memory)	
これらの	these (closer to speaker)	(これ等の); formal and explanatory
それらの	those (closer to listener)	(それ等の); formal and explanatory
あれらの	those (distant)	(あれ等の); formal and explanatory
どんな	what kind/sort of	semi-casual
こんな	this kind/sort of (closer to speaker/passionate reference)	semi-casual
そんな	that kind/sort of (closer to listener/dispassionate reference)	semi-casual
あんな	that kind/sort of (distant memory/sentimental)	semi-casual
どういう	what kind/sort of, referring to what was said	(どう言う)
こういう	this kind/sort of (closer to speaker), referring to what was said	(こう言う)
そういう	that kind/sort of (closer to listener), referring to what was said	(そう言う)
ああいう	that kind/sort of (distant), referring to what was said	(ああ言う)
どうやって	how/what way/method, referring to an achievement of something	
こうやって	this way/method (closer to speaker), referring to an achievement of something	
そうやって	that way/method (closer to listener), referring to an achievement of something	
ああやって	that way/method (distant), referring to an achievement of something	
いろんな	various	(色んな)
いわゆる	the so-called/so to speak	(所謂)
いかなる	any kind of/whatsoever/whatever	(如何なる); [HN]
あらゆる	every kind of	[HN]
小さな	small/little/tiny	
大きな	big/large/great	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
単なる	simple/nothing deeper (joke/coincidence)	[HN]
ほんの	very little/insignificant/only (e.g. distance/time/occurrence); mere (e.g. child)	(本の): [HN]
ただの	ordinary/average/nothing special	(只の): [HN]
大した	considerable/great/important/significant/a big deal	
実の	true/real	
主なる	main/principal/important	
去る	last/previous (～〇月)	also a verb
来る	coming/upcoming (～〇月)	[HN]
明くる	next/following (～日/～朝/～年 etc.)	[HN]

## VB.17 Roles and occupations

Table 76: Nouns: roles and occupations.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
女	female/woman	
女子	woman/girl	
男	male/man	
男子	man/boy	
子ども	child	子供 may be offensive; [r] also in Table 77
少年	boy; juvenile/child (legal contexts)	
未成年	minor; not of age	
成人	adult/grown-up (age); coming of age/becoming an adult	also a verb; [goo]
新成人	new adult (a person in Japan who reaches adulthood at year)	
大人	adult/grown-up (age and maturity)	[goo]
初学者	beginner	
新参	newcomer	
後輩	junior/younger person	
古参	seniority/long service	
先輩	senior/superior/elder	
パイセン	senior/superior/elder	slang
学生	student	
小学生	elementary/primary school student	
中学生	junior high/middle school student	
高校生	high school student	
女子高生	female high-school student	
男子高生	male high-school student	
大学生	university student	
博士	expert/learned person/PhD Dr.	
教授	professor	
学長	university president/chancellor/provost	
初代	first generation/founder	
社長	company president/manager/director	
課長	section manager/chief	
店長	shop manager	
署長	chief of police	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
所長 しよちやう	head of office/laboratory	
番長 ばんちやう	leader of a group of juvenile delinquents/“boss”	
友達 ともだち	friend	
友人 ゆうじん	friend	formal
仲間 なかま	companion/fellow/friend/mate/comrade/partner/colleague/ coworker; group/company/circle	
相手 あいて	companion/partner/company; other party/addressee; opponent (sports)	
彼 かれ	boyfriend	also a pronoun
彼女 かのじょ	girlfriend	also a pronoun
<noun>の卵 たまご	aspiring <noun>/expert in the making	
将軍 しやうぐん	general (military, historical)	
有名人 ゆうめいじん	famous person/celebrity/public figure	
医者 いしや	doctor/physician	
警察 けいさつ	police/police officer/police station	
警察官 けいさつかん	police officer	
貧乏 びんぼ	poor person	
[お]金持ち かねもち	rich person	
冒険者 ぼうけんしや	adventurer	
戦士 せんし	soldier/combatant/warrior	
衛兵 えいへい	soldierguard/sentinel/garrison	
お客さん きゃくさん	guest/visitor/customer/client/shopper/audience/tourist/ sightseer/passenger	honorific
お客様 きやくさま	guest/visitor/customer/client/shopper/audience/tourist/ sightseer/passenger	honorific
天才 てんさい	genius/prodify/natural gift	
凡才 ぼんさい	mediocrity/ordinary ability	
美少女 びしょうじょ	beautiful girl	
ネイティブ	native speaker	also an adjective
推し おし	being a fan/supporter of; one’s favourite (member of idol group/anime/team)	slang
秘書 ひしよ	(private) secretary	also in Table 70
配信者 はいしんしや	distributor (news/information/media); online streamer	
紳士 しんし	gentleman	
婦人 ふじん	adult/married woman	sensitive if misused on juvenile/unmarried
方 かた	person/lady/gentleman	honorific; [HN] also in Table 81
会計士 かいけいし	accountant	
音楽家 おんがくか	musician	
情報提供者 じやうほうていきやうしや	informant/informer/contact; information provider (computing)	
内国人 ないこくじん	national/citizen/native	
外人 がいじん	foreigner (esp. European)	
外国人 がいこくじん	foreigner/foreign citizen/foreign national/non-Japanese	
乳児 にゅうじ	infant/baby (below one year old)	
飛行士 ひこうし	pilot	
宇宙飛行士 うちゅうひこうし	astronaut	
宇宙人 うちゅうじん	alien	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
～好き	love/affection for; enthusiast of; -phile	
～嫌い	dislike/hatred/fear	SUFFIX
話好き	talkative person; talkativeness	
酒好き	person who likes to drink; love/fondness for alcohol	
猫好き	cat lover/ailurophile; love for cats	
猫嫌い	cat hater; dislike of cats	
犬好き	dog lover; love for dogs	
犬嫌い	dog hater; dislike of dogs	
女好き	woman admirer/lustful man; fondness for women; being attractive to women	
女嫌い	misogynist; misogyny	
男好き	amorous (expressing sexual desire) woman; being attractive to men	
男嫌い	misandrist; misandry	
質問者	questioner/interrogator	
芸人	comedian (esp. TV); entertainer/performer (esp. of traditional art)	
美人	beautiful woman/a beauty	
未成年者	minor/underage person	
弱者	weak person; the weak/vulnerable/disadvantaged	
強者	strong person; the strong/powerful	
見本	role model/example	also in Table 81
変態	abnormality; pervert	also in Table 81
犯人	offender/criminal/culprit	
犯罪者	criminal/culprit	
ババ	old woman	ばば (婆); often offensive
問題児	problem child	
バカ	idiot/moron/fool	ばか (馬鹿); also an adjective
アホ	fool/idiot/simpleton	あほ (阿呆); also an adjective
ボケ	fool/idiot	ぼけ (惚け)
タコ	fool/idiot	たこ (蛸); also in Table 68
野郎	bastard/asshole/son of a bitch	slang, derogatory
ガキ	brat/kid/little devil	がき (餓鬼); slang
ばかやろう	goddamn idiot/moron/nitwit	ばかやろう (馬鹿野郎); slang, derogatory
クソ野郎	piece of shit/son of a bitch	くそやろう (糞野郎); derogatory
クソガキ	stupid brat/son of a bitch	くそがき (糞餓鬼); derogatory
畜生	brute/bastard	
雑魚	unimportant person/a nobody	also in Table 68
라이어	liar	
太～	fat/fatty	PREFIX
おやじ	middle-aged man/geezer	おやじ (親父); familiar; also in Table 77
はげ	bald person/baldy; idiot/moron	derogatory
迷惑者	troublemaker/bothersome person/nuisance	





Noun	Meaning	Notes
耳	ear; hearing; ear for music	
口	mouth; opening/hole/gap; gate/door/entrance/exit	
喉	throat; singing voice	
笑顔	smile/smiling face	
笑い	laugh/laughter	
嗤い	sneer	
嘲笑	scornful laughter/ridicule/derision/sneer	also a verb
あくび	yawn/yawning	(欠伸)
キス	kiss	also a verb
チュッ	light smooch/smacking sound	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb, adverb
チュー	kiss	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb, adverb
ブチュッ	loud kiss/smooch; squirting/gushing	ONOMATOPOEIC also an adverb
呼吸	breathing/respiration	also a verb
胸	chest/breast; mind/feelings	
おっぱい	boobs/breasts	slang/children's language
心臓	heart	also: ハート
血	blood	
鉄拳	tightly clenched fist	
腹	abdomen/belly/stomach; womb; one's mind/real intentions/ true motive	
お腹	belly/abdomen/stomach	polite
お腹の子	child one is expecting	
上半身	upper half of the body	
下半身	lower half of the body, nether parts	
けつ	ass/buttocks	(穴); slang
[お]尻	bottom/buttocks	[polite]
尻尾	tail of an animal	
おなら	fart/gas/wind	
身長	body height	
体長	body length (of animal)	
体重	body weight	
声変わり	breaking of voice	
羽	feather/down	
翼	wing	

## VB.20 Clothing

Table 79: Nouns: clothing.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
服	clothes (esp. Western)/clothing/dress/costume/suit/outfit	
制服	uniform	
シャツ	singlet/inner shirt/buttoned shirt	
Tシャツ	T-shirt (outer shirt)	
カッパ	raincoat	(合羽)

Noun	Meaning	Notes
洋服	Western-style clothes	
和服	Japanese clothes	
着物	kimono/Japanese traditional full-length clothing	
浴衣	yukata/light cotton kimono worn in summer or as bathrobe	
ショーツ	shorts	
ズボン	pants/trousers	
パンツ	underpants/panties/swimming trunks/women's trousers	
靴	shoe/shoes/boots/footwear	
全裸	stark/completely naked/nude	

## VB.21 Emotions

Table 80: Nouns: emotions.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
気持ち	feeling/sensation/mood/state of mind	[goo]
いい気持ち	good feeling	
嫌な気持ち	unpleasant feeling	
軽い気持ち	casual	technically an expression
気色	mood/humour	
気分	mood/feeling	[goo]
感じ	feeling/sense/impression	
いい感じ	pleasant feeling/good vibes	
空気	situation/mood/room (esp. 空気を読む)	also in Table 103
感情	emotion/feeling/feelings/sentiment	
心の声	one's inner voice/what one really thinks	
震え	shiver/tremble/quiver (e.g. cold/fear/rage)	
緊張	nervousness/stress/tension/strain; tension (between countries/groups)	also a verb
悩み	troubles/worry/sorrows/anguish/agony	
心配	worry/anxiety/uneasiness/fear	also a verb
後悔	regret/repentance/remorse	also a verb
反省	reflection/introspection; regret/repentance/remorse/being sorry	also a verb
気合	fighting spirit/motivation/effort	
激励	encouragement/spurring/cheering	also a verb
自慢	boast/bragging	also a verb
努力	effort/exertion/endeavour/hard work/striving	also a verb
全力	one's utmost, all of one's strength/energy/efforts	
遠慮	reserve/constraint/hesitation/tact/thoughtfulness; refraining/declining	also a verb
配慮	consideration/concern/attention/thoughtfulness/care/trouble	also a verb
感動	being emotionally deeply moved/excited/inspired (internal emotions)	also a verb; [goo]
感激	deep emotion/impression/inspiration (stronger; with observable behaviour)	also a verb; [goo]
興奮	excitement/stimulation/agitation/arousal	also a verb
性的興奮	sexual arousal/excitation	
涙	tears	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
わら 笑/w	LOL/haha	slang
くさ 草	LOL/haha	slang; also in Table 103
たの 楽しみ	enjoyment/pleasure/amusement/delight/joy/fun	
きょうみ 興味	interest (in something)	
こい ガチ恋	{someone/being} in love with an idol/actor	
き プチ切れ	blowing one's top/losing it/flipping out	slang
ひとり 一人ぼっち	aloneness/loneliness/solitude	
しあわ 幸せ	happiness	also an adjective
ふこう 不幸	unhappy/sorrowful/misfortunate/disastrous; bereavement/ death (usu. of relative)	[HN]
ふしあわ 不幸せ	unhappiness/misfortune/ill luck	also an adjective; [HN]
あんしんかん 安心感	sense of security	
ふあん 不安	anxiety/uneasiness/insecurity	also an adjective

## VB.22 Production

Table 81: Nouns: production.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ほう 方	direction/way/side/area (in particular direction); type/ category; one side of comparison; square length	[HN]
かた 方	method	SUFFIX [HN] also in Table 76
しかた 仕方	way/method/means towards a goal	[goo]
ほうほう 方法	(a well-reasoned) way/method/process/procedure	[goo]
しゅだん 手段	tool needed for going towards a goal	[goo]
つかいかた 使い方	way of using something/how to use something	
しようほう 使用法	usage method/instructions/directions	
しようほう 使用方法	usage instructions/directions for usage/how to use something	
こんごう 混雑	congestion/crowd/jam; confusion/disorder	also a verb
カッコ	(opening) bracket/parenthesis	(括弧); [SE]
カッコとじ	closing bracket/parenthesis	(括弧閉じ); [SE]
じゅんぶ 準備	preparation/arrangements/setup	also a verb
つもり つもり	plan/intention; assumption/belief/thought; estimation	(積もり)
はじまり 始まり	origin/beginning	
かいし 開始	start/commencement/beginning/initiation	slightly formal, also a verb, [HN]
スタート	start/beginning	also a verb
しゅっぱつ 出発	departure/setting off	also a verb
はつどう 発動	kick-start/put into effect (activity/machine/policy)	also a verb
きどう 起動	startup/booting up/activation/launch	also a verb
つく 作り	the making/production/components of	
ていせい 訂正	correction/amendment (of something that is clearly wrong)	also a verb
ちようせい 調整	adjustment/tuning/tailoring	also a verb
かいしゅう 改修	modification with nuance of repurposing for new purpose	
しゅうせい 修正	amendment/correction/revision/modification/alteration/ retouching/update/fix	also a verb
てなおし 手直し	modification that pushes an incomplete product towards completion	also a verb

Noun	Meaning	Notes
添削	correction by adding/removing (usu. in education)	also a verb
変化	change/variation/alteration/mutation/transfiguration	also a verb, in Table 60
変態	state of transformation	also in Table 76
進化	evolution/progress/development/improvement	also a verb
展開	development/evolution/progression/unfolding/plot twist; expansion (physical/mathematics)	also a verb
切り替え	(the act of) replacement	
切り換え	(the act of) exchange	
入れ替え	(the act of) replacement of interior contents	
入れ換え	(the act of) exchange of interior contents	
まま	remaining unchanged/in the same state	(儘)
<v past>まま	with/while <v past> (e.g. eyes closed/lights on/standing/ alive)	(<v past>儘)
終わり	end/ending/conclusion; it's over	
終了	end/close/termination	slightly formal, also a verb, [HN]
完成	completion/perfection/accomplishment	also a verb
結果	result/outcome/consequence	
突破	breakthrough/overcoming a difficulty; exceeding/rising above	also a verb
[お]披露目	[formal] announcement/unveiling/introduction/debut	
披露	announcement/unveiling/introduction; boast	also a verb
収益	revenue (organisation)	[goo]
利潤	profit (organisation)	[goo]
利益	profit; benefit/advantage/interests	[goo]
設け	profit	informal; [goo]
原作	original work	
見本	sample/specimen	also in Table 76
文	text/composition/writing	also in Table 60
文章	writing/composotion/essay/article/passage/prose	also in Table 60
まとめ	summary/aggregation	
話	speech/talk/conversation/topic/subject	
タメ口	casual/informal speech/language	slang
しゃべり	chat/chatter/talk	(喋り)
雑談	chatting/idle talk	also a verb
放送	broadcast/program/announcement (TV/radio)	also a verb; [HN]
配信	broadcast/distribution/streaming (Internet)	also a verb; [HN]
アドバイス	advice	also a verb
冗談	joke/jest/funny story	
ダジャレ	corny joke/bad pun/poor joke	(駄洒落)
ギャグ	gag/joke	
オヤジギャグ	corny joke/dad joke (“dad gag”)	(親父ギャグ); slang
下ネタ	dirty joke; indecent topic/bawdy subject/sex talk	
音	sound	
音楽	music	
声	voice (literal and abstract); singing/chirping (of bird/insect)	
歌	song/singing	
演奏	musical performance	also a verb

Noun	Meaning	Notes
初見 曲 オリ曲 散歩 踊り 小躍り 映画 写真	sight-reading (music) piece/composition/song/track original piece/composition/song/track stroll dance dancing/jumping for joy movie/film/motion picture photograph/photo/picture/snapshot	also in Table 84  slang, abbreviation    also a verb
雑誌 物語 伝説 伝統 神話	journal/magazine story/tale/fable legend/folklore tradition myth	 also: ストーリー also: レジェンド also: トラディション also: ミス
計算	calculation/computation	also a verb
仕事 使い 引退 管理	work/occupation/employment errand retirement (from the workforce) management/control (act of)	  also a verb also a verb
メンバ[ー]シップ	membership	
登録 入会 退会 加入 脱退	presence in register/records; registration/subscription (YouTube) enrolment/admission into a club/society/mailling list withdrawal/resignation from a club/society/mailling list becoming a member of (e.g. a group/project) withdrawal from/pulling out of (e.g. a group/project)	also a verb; [goo] also a verb; [HN] also a verb also a verb; [HN], [WB] [WB]
盗品 真似 自動 手動	stolen goods imitating/copying/mimicry (usu. as <adj>真似をする) automatic operation manual operation	
求婚 結婚	marriage proposal marriage	also a verb also a verb
冒険 世話 掃除 清掃	adventure/venture; risky venture/attempt care/looking after; recommendation/introduction cleaning/sweeping/dusting/scrubbing cleaning/clean-up/garbage collection	 also a verb also a verb; [goo] also a verb, literary; [goo]

## VB.23 Sports

Table 82: Nouns: sports.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
卓球	table tennis/ping-pong	
ピンポン	table tennis/ping-pong	
バドミントン	badminton	

## VB.24 Consumption

Table 83: Nouns: consumption.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
必要 <sup>ひつよう</sup>	necessity/need/requirement	
値段 <sup>ねだん</sup>	price/cost	
[お]金 <sup>かね</sup>	money	[polite]
円 <sup>えん</sup>	yen (Japanese monetary unit)	
買い物 <sup>かもの</sup>	the act of shopping/purchased goods	
会計 <sup>かいけい</sup>	bill (at a restaurant)	also in Table 95
お手洗い会計 <sup>てあらいかいけい</sup>	go-to-the-washroom-payment-method	
ビル	bill/invoice	
請求 <sup>せいきゅう</sup>	charge/billing (for a service)	also a verb; also in Table 84
試験 <sup>しけん</sup>	examination/test	also: テスト
試し <sup>ため</sup>	trial/attempt/test	
削除 <sup>さくじょ</sup>	deletion/elimination/erasure	also a verb
電気 <sup>でんき</sup>	electricity/electric lamp	
ラジコン	radio control(-led vehicle)	
ロック	lock	also a verb
摂取 <sup>せつしゅ</sup>	intake/ingestion (salt/sugar/pills/food); absorption/ assimilation (knowledge/culture)	
おかわり	second serving	(お代わり/お替わり)
遊び <sup>あそび</sup>	play/playing/game; pleasure/pastime/recreation	
トランプ	(Western) playing cards	
じゃんけん	rock-paper-scissors	(じゃんけん)
じゃんけんぽん	rock-paper-scissors (called out before revealing one's hand)	(じゃんけん)ぽん
クラブ	clubs suit	also in Table 94
ハート	hearts suit	
スペード	spades suit	
ダイヤモンド	diamonds suit	also in Table 103
タバコ	tobacco/cigarette/cigar	(たばこ) (煙草)

## VB.25 Interaction

Table 84: Nouns: interaction.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
いくら <sup>いくら</sup>	how much (price)	(幾ら)
無料 <sup>むりょう</sup>	free of charge	
有料 <sup>ゆうりょう</sup>	fee-charging/paid/not free	
態度 <sup>たいど</sup>	attitude/manner/behaviour/demeanour/bearing; position/ stance (towards an issue)	
[お]願い <sup>ねが</sup>	wish/desire/hope; request/favour	[polite]; also an interjection
応援 <sup>おうえん</sup>	aid/assistance/help/support; cheering/rooting for	
～願 <sup>ねがい</sup>	written application	SUFFIX
請求 <sup>せいきゅう</sup>	request/application; claim	also a verb; also in Table 83
感謝 <sup>かんしゅ</sup>	thanks/gratitude/appreciation	also a verb
大感謝 <sup>だいかんしゅ</sup>	great thanks/gratitude/appreciation	also a verb
評価 <sup>ひようか</sup>	appreciation/recognition/praise	also a verb; also in Table 92
お礼 <sup>おい</sup>	thanks/gratitude	polite

Noun	Meaning	Notes
希望 きぼう	hope; expectation/wishes	
切望 せつぼう	earnest desire/eager hope/yearning	also a verb
絶望 ぜつぼう	despair/hopelessness	
やり取り とり	exchanging (of letters/conversation); giving and taking (やる + 取る)	
命令 めいれい	order/command/decreedirective; instruction/statement (computing)	also a verb
優先 ゆうせん	priority/precedence/preference	also a verb
絆 きずな	emotional ties/bonds/relationship/connection	
困難 くわんなん	difficulty/hardship/trouble/distress	
苦労 くろう	trouble/hardship/difficulty/toil/pains	also a verb
名前 なまえ	name	
存在 そんざい	existence/presence	
関係 かんけい	relationship/connection; participation/involvement/concern; influence/effect	also a verb
関連 かんれん	connection/relation/relevance	also a verb
初見 しょけん	first sight/meeting	also in Table 81
連絡 れんらく	making contact/communication/call/message	also a verb
連絡先 れんらくさき	contact information (e.g. address/phone number)	
電話 でんわ	phone/phone call	also a verb
メールアドレス	email address	
パソコン	personal computer (PC)	
ノートパソコン	laptop computer (“notebook personal computer”)	
返事 へんじ	reply/answer/response	also a verb
告白 こくはく	confession (of a crime/wrongdoing/romantic feelings)	also a verb; [goo]
自白 じはく	confession/admission (when questioned)	also a verb; [goo]
自供 じきよう	confession/admission (when questioned)	also a verb; [goo]
逮捕 たいは	arrest/capture	also a verb
機会 きかい	chance/opportunity	also: チャンス
場合 ばあい	case/occasion/situation/circumstances	
事件 じけん	event/accident/case/plot/trouble/scandal	
事故 じこ	accident/incident/trouble	

## VB.26 Society and culture

Table 85: Nouns: society and culture.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
経済 けいざい	economy	
地理 ちり	geography	
歴史 れきし	history	
政治 せいじ	politics/government	
政府 せいふ	government/administration/ministry	
営業 えいぎやう	business/trade/operations	
会社 かいしゃ	company/corporation/firm; one’s workplace	
国際 こくさい	international	
東南アジア とうなんあじあ	Asia	also: 東南亜、アジア

Noun	Meaning	Notes
中国	China	
日本/日本	Japan	pronunciation: no consensus
日本国/日本国	Japan	pronunciation: no consensus
韓国	Korea	
シンガポール	Singapore	
英国	United Kingdom/Britain	
米国	America/USA	also: アメリカ
海外	foreign/abroad/overseas	
外来	foreign/imported	
言語	language	
母語	mother tongue/native language	
母国語	mother tongue/native language/language of one's country	
中国語	Chinese language	
日本語	Japanese language	
韓国語	Korean language	
英語	English language	
平和	peace/harmony	
平等	equality/impartiality	also an adjective
文化	culture/civilisation	
アニメ	animation/anime	

## VB.27 Health

Table 86: Nouns: health.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
命	life/life force; most important thing/core	
生命	life/existence; one's working life/career; life/life force	
人生	one's life	
生き甲斐	reason for living/purpose in life	(生きがい)
意識	consciousness	also a verb
無意識	unconsciousness; the unconscious	also an adjective
精神	mind/spirit/soul/heart; attitude/mentality	
精神的苦痛	mental anguish/distress;	
精神病	mental illness/psychosis	
体調	physical condition/state of health	
元気	health/vigour	also an adjective
健康	health	also an adjective
汗	sweat/perspiration	
冷や汗	cold sweat	
疲れ	tiredness/fatigue	
疲労	fatigue/weariness/exhaustion/tiredness	also a verb
空腹	empty stomach/hunger	
お腹いっぱい	full stomach	also an adverb
病氣	illness/disease/sickness	also an adjective
苦痛	pain/agony/suffering/distress/torment	
痛み	pain/ache/soreness/grief/distress	
苦しみ	pain/anguish/distress/suffering/hardship	



Noun	Meaning	Notes
急性	acute (illness)	
慢性	chronic (illness)	
風邪	common cold/flu/influenza/inflammatory respiratory system illness (generic)	
たん	phlegm/sputum	(痰)
安全	safety/security	also an adjective
危険	danger/hazard/risk	also an adjective
非常	emergency	also an adjective
まさか	the unexpected/emergency	(真逆); also an interjection
一酸化炭素中毒	carbon monoxide poisoning	
病院	hospital/clinic/doctor's office/doctor's surgery/infirmiry	
休み	rest/vacation	
昼寝	afternoon nap	
暇	free time/time off/leisure	also an adjective
夢	dream	
悪夢	nightmare	
[お]風呂	bath/bathtub/bathroom/bathhouse; bathing	
日光浴	sunbathing/basking in the sun	also a verb
ゆず湯	yuzu bath/hot citron bath	(柚子湯)
春休み	spring break/vacation	
夏休み	summer vacation	
秋休み	autumn break/vacation	also: 秋
冬休み	winter vacation	
月見	Japanese equivalent of CN's mid-autumn festival (同じ日)	
祭り	festival	
眠気	sleepiness/drowsiness	
寝袋	sleeping bag	

## VB.28 Disasters

Table 87: Nouns: disasters.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
地震	earthquake	
台風	typhoon	

## VB.29 Colours

Read the main article on [CTA](#).

Only four colours were recognised as basic colours in ancient Japan: red, blue, white, black. Blue and green used to be both referred to as 青.

Colours are often used as labels, together with the の particle.

Table 88: Nouns: colours.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
赤[色]	red (1, 0, 0)	also: レッド
橙[色]	orange (1, 0.64, 0)	also: オレンジ

Noun	Meaning	Notes
きいろ 黄[色]	yellow (1, 1, 0)/amber (1, 0.75, 0) (midpoint of yellow and orange)	also: イエロー
ベージュ	beige	
きみどり 黄緑	yellow-green	
みどりいろ 緑[色]	green (0, 1, 0)	also: グリーン
よかみどりいろ 深緑色	dark green	
あお 青	blue (0, 0, 1); green when used in compound words (fruits/plants/traffic lights)	also: ブルー
ふかあお 深青	dark/navy blue	
まっちゃいろ 抹茶色	tea green/soft yellow-green	
あおいろ 青色	blue (0, 0, 1)	
みずいろ 水色	light blue	
こんいろ 紺色	navy/dark blue	also: ネイビー/ネービー
むらさきいろ 紫[色]	purple (0.5, 0, 0.5)/violet (0.5, 0, 1)	also: パープル
しろ 白	white (1, 1, 1); innocent; blank (space)	
しろいろ 白色	white (1, 1, 1)	
はいいろ 灰色	grey	also: グレー/グレイ
くろ 黒	black (0, 0, 0); guilty	
くろいろ 黒色	black (0, 0, 0)	
ももいろ 桃色	pink	also: ピンク
ちやいろ 茶[色]	brown	also: ブラウン
あかちやいろ 赤茶色	reddish brown	
うすちやいろ 薄茶色	light/pale brown	
くろちやいろ 黒茶色	deep brown	
こげちやいろ こげ茶色	dark/olive brown	(焦げ茶色)
ぎんいろ 銀[色]	silver	also: シルバー
きんいろ 金[色]	gold	also: ゴールド
にじいろ 虹色	rainbow-coloured	
なないろ 七色	seven/prismatic colours (of the rainbow)	
しろくろ 白黒	monochrome; black and white; good and evil/right and wrong	[WDC]
くろしろ 黒白	black and white; good and evil/right and wrong	[WDC]
しろくろ 白黒テレビ	black-and-white television	
こうよう 紅葉	leaves turning red in autumn; autumn colours; autumn leaves (“red leaf”)	also a verb
こうよう 黄葉	leaves turning yellow in autumn; autumn colours; autumn leaves (“yellow leaf”)	also a verb

## VB.30 Shapes

Table 89: Nouns: shapes.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
まる 丸	circle	
ラウンド	round (shape/repetition)	
さんかくけい 三角形	triangle	[HN]
バツ	cross	
がた ハート形	heart shape	
がた ハート型	heart shape (mold)	
やま 八重	overlapping/multilayered/doubled (e.g. of flower petals)	[goo], [Wiki]

## VB.31 Agreeability

Table 90: Nouns: agreeability.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
好き嫌い すききらい	likes and dislikes/preferences; pickiness/choosiness/fussiness (esp. food)	
賛成 さんせい	approval/agreement/support	also a verb
反対 はんたい	objection/opposition/resistance/dissent	also a verb
素晴らしさ すばらしさ	splendour/magnificence/beauty	
一流 いちりゅう	first class/top-ranking	
トンデモ	something unthinkable/unexpected/outrageous/offensive	abbreviation of とんでもない
善悪 ぜんあく	right and wrong/good and evil	

## VB.32 Appearance and style

Table 91: Nouns: appearance and style.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
イケメン イケメン	good-looking/handsome/cool guy	(イケ面 いけめん)
美少女 びしょうじょ	beautiful girl	
特徴 とくちょう	distinguishing feature	[goo]
特長 とくちょう	strong point/forte/merit/strength	
特色 とくしよく	superior feature	[goo]
魅力 みりょく	charm/attraction/appeal	
味 あじ	charm/appeal/uniqueness/attractiveness	also in Table 100
愛嬌 あいきょう	charm/attractiveness; courtesy	
匂い におい	smell/scent/flavour/mood	
臭い におい	odour/stench	
痩せた やせた	thin/slim/skinny; barren/infertile/sterile	from 痩せる やせる
太った ふとった	plump/fat/chubby	from 太る ふとる
年[を]取った とし[を]とった	old/aged (person)	[HN]

## VB.33 Ability

Table 92: Nouns: ability.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
能力 めうりよく	ability	
力 ちから	force/strength/power	
領域 りよういき	territory/domain/expertise; field/area/region	
経験 けいけん	experience	
独立 どくりつ	independence/self-reliance	also a verb
可能性 かめうせう	potentiality/likelihood/possibility/chance	
偶然 ぐうぜん	coincidence/chance/accident	also an adverb
必然 ひつぜん	inevitability/necessity	
受け うけ	reception/popularity/reputation	
評価 ひようか	rating/valuation/appraisal/evaluation/assessment	also a verb; also in Table 84
再評価 さいひようか	revaluation/reassessment/reappraisal/reevaluation	also a verb
高評価 こうひようか	high rating/good reputation	
低評価 ていひようか	low rating/bad reputation	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
あたり	success/hit	
成功	success/achievement	also a verb
失敗	failure/mistake/blunder	also a verb

## VB.34 Personalities

Table 93: Nouns: personalities.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
人気	popularity/public favour	
大人気	high popularity/public favour	
無名	anonymous/nameless; not famous	
しっかり者	person of firm character/stable person/gutsy person	
自信	self-confidence	
ツンデレ	normally cold but at some prompt suddenly lovestruck/hot-cold personality type (ツンツン + デレデレ)	slang
クーデレ	acting indifferent while lovestruck (クール + デレデレ)	
ヤンデレ	person with an unhealthy romantic obsession (病む + デレデレ)	

## VB.35 Education and correctness

Table 94: Nouns: education and correctness.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
教育	education/training/upbringing	
授業	lesson/class/teaching/instruction	
勉強	study/diligence/hard work	also a verb
練習	practice/train/drill	also a verb
自習	self-study	also a verb
学習	study/learning/tutorial	
学習法	way of learning/studying/mastering	
教材	teaching materials	
質問	question/enquiry	also a verb
問題	problem/question	
宿題	homework/assignment	
謎	riddle/puzzle/enigma/mystery	
なぞなぞ	ridle/puzzle/enigma	なぞなぞ (謎々)
答え	answer/reply/response	
説明	explanation	also a verb
訳	reason/cause; meaning	
理由	reason	
原因	cause	
正解	correct answer/interpretation/decision/judgment	
了解	understanding/comprehension/agreement	also an interjection, verb
理解	understanding/comprehension/appreciation; sympathy	also a verb
同じ	similar/same/identical/equal/uniform/equivalent	
同じくらい	approximately the same	actually an expression
同様	same/similar/just like/equal	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ちが 違い	difference/distinction/discrepancy/miss (nuance: wrong)	[HN], [SE]
べつ 別	distinction/difference/discrimination (nuance: another)	[SE]
ふ ぜいかい 不正解	incorrect answer/solution/interpretation	
まちが 間違い	mistake/error/errata/blunder; accident/mishap	
まちが 間違え	mistake/error/blunder; accident/mishap	
ご かい 誤解	misunderstanding (objective concept)	also a verb; [goo]
かんちが 勘違い	erroneous assumption/thought illusion/misunderstanding/ mistaken idea	also a verb; [goo]
おも ちが 思い違い	mistaken idea/misconception (“thoughts different”)	also a verb; [goo]
こころ え ちが 心得違い	imprudence/mistaken idea that is a misbehaviour (used disapprovingly in criticism)	[goo]
ぶ かつじう 部活動	club/extracurricular activities	
ぶ かつ 部活	club/extracurricular activities (abbreviation)	
クラブ かつじう クラブ活動	club/extracurricular activities	
クラブ クラブ	club; nightclub; sports club; golf club	(倶楽部); also in Table 83
えんそく 遠足	school trip/field trip/excursion/outing	

## VB.36 Academic fields

Table 95: Nouns: academic fields.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
すうがく 数学	mathematics	
かがく 科学	science	also: サイエンス
ちり がく 地理学	geography	
れきし がく 歴史学	history	
けいざいがく 経済学	economics	
かいけい 会計	accounting/finance	also in Table 83
こうがく 工学	engineering	
けいさん ぎ かがく 計算機科学	computer science	also: コンピューターサイエ ンス
じようほうこうがく 情報工学	information engineering	

## VB.37 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 96: Nouns: knowledge, truth and reality.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
おも 思い	thought	
じようほう 情報	information/news/intelligence	
じようそく 消息	news from someone; someone’s whereabouts/movements	
し 知らせ	news; notice/notification	
し お知らせ	notice/notification	polite
じようほうていきよう 情報提供	provision of information	
じようきよう 状況	state of affairs/situation/circumstances (neutral, broader usage)	[HN1], [HN2]
じたい 事態	immediate situation/present state of affairs (usually negative)	[HN1], [HN2]
じじよう 事情	circumstances/conditions/matters (used to explain context/ decision/event)	[HN]
ちしき 知識	knowledge/information	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
意味	meaning/sense/significance	
いろは	fundamentals/the ABCs of	
既知	the known/established	
未知	the unknown	
承知	knowledge/awareness; acceptance/consent/compliance/acknowledgement	also a verb
ご存知	knowledge/awareness	honorific
断り	rejection/refusal/declination; permission/consent; notification/notice	
お断り	rejection/refusal/declination; announcement/notice	polite
由来	origin/source/history/derivation	also a verb
本物	genuine article/real deal	
真実	truth	[HN1], [HN2]
事実	fact	[HN]
現実	reality	[HN]
実際	actuality/in practice (compared to expectation/theory) (usu. as 実際の or 実際は)	[HN]
理想	ideal/ideals	
公式	official	
偽物	fake article/forgery/counterfeit/imitation	
嘘	lie/fib/falsehood	also an interjection
非公式	unofficial	
妄想	delusion; wild/ridiculous/baseless fantasy	
一般	general/universal/ordinary/average/common	
ただ	ordinary/common/usual	( <sup>ただ</sup> ); also an adverb
通常	usual/ordinary/normal/regular/general/common	also an adverb
普段	usual/normal/everyday/habitual/ordinary	also an adverb
観察	observation/survey/watching	also a verb
研究	research/study/investigation	
探索	hunt/exploration/investigation/search/lookup	also a verb
実験	experiment/experimentation	also a verb
分析	analysis	also a verb
報告	report/information	also a verb
証明	proof/testimony	also a verb
確認	confirmation/verification/validation/check	also a verb
発見	discovery/detection/finding	also a verb
発明	invention	also a verb
確定	decision (clear)	also a verb; [goo]
内定	{informal/internal/unofficial} {decision/offer (e.g. job)}	also a verb; [goo]
本決まり	formal/official final decision	[goo]
未定	not decided/not yet fixed/undecided/pending/TBC	also an adjective; [goo]
所定	predetermined/prescribed/designated/fixed in advance	[goo]
暫定	provisional/tentative decision	[goo]
予定	plans/arrangement/decision made in advance	[goo]
既定	decided/established/fixed/prearranged/predetermined	[goo]
決断	decision (strong)	also a verb; [goo]
決定	decision	also a verb; [goo]

Noun	Meaning	Notes
判断 <small>はん断</small>	judgment	also a verb; [goo]
断 <small>だん</small>	judgment	literary [goo]
判定 <small>はんてい</small>	verdict/ruling/judgment (of judge/referee)	also a verb
断定 <small>だんてい</small>	assertion/declaration/conclusion	also a verb; [goo]
隠れ〜 <small>かくれ〜</small>	hidden/concealed/unknown/crypto-	PREFIX
隠蔽 <small>いんぺい</small>	covering up/concealment/hiding/suppression	also a verb
内緒 <small>ないしょ</small>	secret (in/out-group, personal level)	[HN]
秘密 <small>ひみつ</small>	secret (official/corporate/country)	childish; [HN]
隠し事 <small>かくごと</small>	secret	also a verb
確か <small>たし</small>	sure/certain/confident; reliable/trustworthy/accurate/correct/exact	also an adverb
信用 <small>しんよう</small>	trust/confidence/reputation (past)	also a verb; [SE]
信頼 <small>しんらい</small>	trust/confidence/reliance/faith (future)	also a verb; [SE]
疑い <small>うたがひ</small>	doubt/question/uncertainty/skepticism/suspicion/distrust	

## VB.38 Courtesy

Table 97: Nouns: courtesy.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ため	good/advantage/benefit/welfare; sake/purpose/objective/aim	( <small>ため</small> 為); also an adverb
エチケット	etiquette/politeness/courtesy/good manners	
悪態 <small>あくたい</small>	foul/abusive language	
失礼 <small>しつれい</small>	discourtesy/impoliteness	also a な-adjective
無礼 <small>ぶれい</small>	rudeness/discourtesy/insolence (stronger)	also a な-adjective
無視 <small>むし</small>	disregarding/ignoring	also a verb
面倒 <small>めんどう</small>	trouble/bother (when there's too much to do)	[HN]
迷惑 <small>めいわく</small>	trouble/bother/annoyance/nuisance/inconvenience (to other people)	[HN]
待ち時間 <small>まちじかん</small>	waiting time/latency/queuing time	
最速 <small>さいそく</small>	fastest	

## VB.39 Conflict and resolution

Table 98: Nouns: conflict and resolution.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
作戦 <small>さくせん</small>	tactics/strategy; military operation	
決戦 <small>けっせん</small>	decisive battle/deciding match	also a verb
攻め <small>せ</small>	attack/assault/offence	
戦争 <small>せんそう</small>	war	
戦闘 <small>せんとう</small>	battler/fight/combat	
大戦 <small>たいせん</small>	great war/battle; world war (abbreviation)	
世界大戦 <small>せかいたいせん</small>	world war	
第一次世界大戦 <small>だいいちじせかいたいせん</small>	World War I	
第二次世界大戦 <small>だいにじせかいたいせん</small>	World War II	
後出しジャンケン <small>あとだし</small>	waiting to see one's opponent's move/playing a waiting game	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
あと だ 後出し	waiting to see one's opponent's move before making your move (disallowed in games); holding back until the last minute	also a verb
あ 勝ち しょうり 勝利	win/victory (personal) win/victory (larger scale)	also a verb
ま 負け はいばく 敗北 ぜんめつ 全滅	loss/defeat (personal) loss/defeat (larger scale) complete defeat/destruction/annihilation/failure	also a verb
ふせい 不正	injustice/unfairness/wrongdoing/dishonestly/illegality/fraud	also an adjective
おどし 脅し	threat	
けんか 喧嘩 も 揉め がまん 我慢	quarrel/brawl/fight/squabble/scuffle/argument dispute/quarrel/disagreement patience/endurance/bearing with something (usu. 我慢できない “cannot stand”)	also a verb
もうわけ 申し訳 しゃがい 謝罪 かんべん 勘弁	apology/excuse apology pardon/forgiveness; giving someone a break	also a verb
けいけい 警戒	vigilance/caution/alertness/precaution/being on guard	also a verb
せき 責 せきにん 責任 にんむ 任務 <label>のせい	responsibility/duty/obligation duty/responsibility mission/task/role/duty/function/office <label>'s fault; consequence of <label>	(所為)
やくそく 約束	promise/agreement/arrangement/contract/pact; appointment/date	also a verb
はんざい 犯罪 じんもん 尋問 ばつ 罰 じきつ 自殺	crime/offence interrogation/questioning punishment/penalty suicide	also a verb

## VB.40 Weapons

Table 99: Nouns: weapons.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ぶき 武器	weapon/arms/ordnance	
やいば 刃 かたな 刀 けん 剣	blade/sword sword (esp. Japanese single-edged) sword (esp. double-edged); blade; bayonet	

## VB.41 The five senses

Table 100: Nouns: the five senses: sight, hearing, smell, taste, touch.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
しお 塩	(common/table) salt	
あじ 味 もちもち プルプルン	flavour/taste (literal/abstract (e.g. victory)) springy texture/elastic shaking like a jelly/jellylike	also in Table 91



## VB.42 Amounts and sizes

Table 101: Nouns: amounts and sizes.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
第 <sup>だい</sup> ～	prefix for forming ordinal numbers	PREFIX
～過ぎ <sup>すぎ</sup>	too much/over- (e.g. eating)	SUFFIX, also in Table 73
超 <sup>ちょう</sup> ～	super-/ultra-/hyper-/extreme	PREFIX
くだらん	trivial/insignificant; worthless/not worth bothering with/ useless/good-for-nothing	(くだらん)
最小 <sup>さいしょう</sup>	smallest/minimum	
最大 <sup>さいだい</sup>	biggest/maximum	
限界 <sup>げんかい</sup>	limit/bound	
最少 <sup>さいしょう</sup>	fewest/least/smallest number of/minimum	
最多 <sup>さいた</sup>	most (numerous)/largest number of/maximum	
全体 <sup>ぜんたい</sup>	whole/entirety	[gool]
部分 <sup>ぶぶん</sup>	portion/section/part	
半分 <sup>はんぶん</sup>	half	also an adverb
百点 <sup>ひゃくてん</sup>	hundred points/perfect mark	
個別 <sup>こべつ</sup>	case-by-case/separate/individual	
個人 <sup>こじん</sup>	individual/personal/private person	
全員 <sup>ぜんいん</sup>	all members/everyone	also an adverb

## VB.43 Creatures and divinity

Table 102: Nouns: creatures and divinity.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
神 <sup>かみ</sup>	god/deity/divinity/spirit	
女神 <sup>めがみ</sup>	goddess/female deity	
天 <sup>てん</sup>	heaven; God; sky	
天使 <sup>てんし</sup>	angel	
悪魔 <sup>あくま</sup>	devil/demon	
幽霊 <sup>ゆうれい</sup>	ghost/spectre/apparition/phantom	
妖怪 <sup>ようかい</sup>	ghost/apparition/phantom/spectre/demon/monster/goblin/ youkai	
幻 <sup>まぼろし</sup>	phantom/vision/illusion	
怪物 <sup>かいぶつ</sup>	monster	
鬼 <sup>おに</sup>	demon/ogre/oni	
ばけ	taking on another form/disguising oneself (esp. by spirits/ foxes/raccoon dogs in folklore)	(ばけ)
おばけ	ghost; goblin/monster/demon	(おばけ)
化物 <sup>ばけもの</sup>	monster/goblin	
天国 <sup>てんごく</sup>	heaven	
地獄 <sup>じごく</sup>	hell	
巫女/神子 <sup>みこ</sup>	shrine maiden	[YJ]
宮司 <sup>ぐうじ</sup>	chief priest (Shinto)	
御朱印 <sup>ごしゅいん</sup>	seal stamp at shrines and temples	
お守り <sup>まもり</sup>	charm/amulet/talisman	
南無阿彌陀仏 <sup>なむあみだぶつ</sup>	hail Amitabha Buddha	

## VB.44 Nature

Table 103: Nouns: nature.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
草	grass/weed/herb	also in Table 80
花	flower/blossom/bloom/petal	
桜	cherry tree/cherry blossom	
山桜	mountain cherry	
満開	full bloom (esp. of cherry blossom)	also a verb
竹	bamboo	
竹林	bamboo forest	
木	tree/shrub/bush; wood/timber	
林	woods/forest/grove; bunch/cluster/collection of something	
森	forest	
森林	forest woods	
山	mountain/hill	
山々	mountains/hills	
砂漠	desert	
石	stone (small); jewel/precious stone; flint (in a lighter)	
岩	rock/boulder (large)	
原石	raw/unpolished ore/gemstone	
宝石	gem/jewel/precious stone	
ダイヤ[モンド]	diamond	also in Table 83
空気	air/atmosphere	also in Table 80
空	the sky	
青空	blue sky	
風	wind/breeze/draught	
雲	cloud	
黒雲	dark clouds	
暗雲	dark clouds; threatening signs/ominous indications	
雷雲	thundercloud	
かすみ	mist; haze (esp. in Spring)	(霞)
海	sea/ocean	
光	light	
日光	sunlight/sunshine/sunbeams	
月光	moonlight/moonbeam	
花火	fireworks	
水	water	
滝	waterfall	
天気	weather	
雨	rain	
時雨	rain shower in late autumn/early winter; seasonal rain	
時雨	seasonal rain/rain in late autumn–early winter	
雪	snow	
虹	rainbow	
元素	element (chemical/classical (e.g. earth/water/air/fire))	
水素	hydrogen	
炭素	carbon	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
酸素	oxygen	
一酸化炭素	carbon monoxide	
二酸化炭素	carbon dioxide	
炎	flame/blaze; passion/flames (of intense emotion)	
雷	lightning/thunder/thunderbolt; god of thunder/lightning	

## VB.45 Cosmic

Read the main article on [SM](#). Read the differences between cosmic rocks at [AMS](#).

Table 104: Nouns: cosmic.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
星	star (excluding the Sun); planet (excluding the Earth); heavenly body	
星座	constellation; astrological/zodiac sign	
彗星	comet (frozen gas/ice/dust)	
流星	meteor/shooting star (light emitted from meteoroid/asteroid as it enters Earth's atmosphere)	
太陽系	the solar system	
太陽	the Sun	
日	the Sun	
お日様	the Sun	children's language
月	the Moon	
お月様	the Moon	children's language
月見	moon viewing (eighth lunar month)	
日食	solar eclipse (sun is eclipsed (blocked) by the moon)	
皆既日食	total solar eclipse	
部分日食	partial solar eclipse	
月食	lunar eclipse (moon is eclipsed (blocked) by the Earth)	
部分月食	partial lunar eclipse	
水星	Mercury	
金星	Venus (yellowish)	
地球	the Earth	
火星	Mars (reddish)	
木星	Jupiter (wood colour)	
土星	Saturn (earth colour)	
天王星	Uranus (sky/light blue, sky king)	
海王星	Neptune (sea/mid blue, sea king)	
冥王星	Pluto (冥: dark)	
宇宙	universe/cosmos/space	
世界	the world/the universe/society	
異世界	another world (esp. fiction)/parallel universe	
銀河	galaxy	
銀河系	galactic system	
天の川[銀河]	the Milky Way (galaxy name)	
運命	fate/destiny	

## VB.46 Physical units

Table 105: Nouns: physical units.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ページ/ページ	page	
ポイント/ポイント	point	
パーセント/パーセント	percent	
オングストローム	angstrom ( $1 \text{ \AA} = 1 \cdot 10^{-10} \text{ m}$ )	
ミクロン/ミクロン	micron (micrometre)	
メートル/メートル	metre	
インチ/インチ	inch	
フィート/フィート	feet ( $1 \text{ ft} = 12 \text{ in}$ )	
ヤード/ヤード	yard ( $1 \text{ yd} = 3 \text{ ft} = 36 \text{ in}$ )	
キロメートル/キロメートル	kilometre	
マイル/マイル	mile ( $1 \text{ mi} = 1760 \text{ yd} = 5280 \text{ ft}$ )	
海里/ノートイカルマイル	nautical mile ( $1 \text{ nmi} = 1852 \text{ m}$ )	
平方メートル	square metre	
ヘクタール/ヘクタール	hectare ( $1 \text{ ha} = 10\,000 \text{ m}^2 = 0.01 \text{ km}^2$ )	
平方キロメートル	square kilometre ( $1 \text{ km}^2 = 1\,000\,000 \text{ m}^2$ )	
エーカー/エーカー	acre ( $1 \text{ ac} = 4840 \text{ sq yd} = 43560 \text{ sq ft} = \frac{1}{640} \text{ sq mile}$ )	
ヘルツ/ヘルツ	hertz ( $1 \text{ Hz} = 1 \text{ s}^{-1}$ )	
ノット/ノット	knot ( $1 \text{ kt} = 1 \text{ nmi h}^{-1}$ )	
マッハ/マッハ	mach (multiple of speed of sound)	
グラム/グラム	gram	
キログラム/キログラム	kilogram	
トン/トン	ton	
立方センチメートル	cubic centimetre	
リットル/リットル	litre ( $1 \text{ L} = 1\,000 \text{ cm}^3 = 0.001 \text{ m}^3$ )	
ガロン/ガロン	gallon (there's a US one and a UK one..., both $\lesssim 5 \text{ L}$ )	
立方メートル	cubic metre	
ジュール	joule ( $1 \text{ J} = 1 \text{ kg m}^2 \text{ s}^{-2}$ ; $W = F \cdot s$ ; $F = ma$ )	
カロリー/カロリー	calorie ( $\approx 4.184 \text{ J}$ )	
メガトン/メガトン	megaton (TNT equivalent)	
キロワット時	kilowatt hour (kWh)	
ワット/ワット	watt ( $1 \text{ W} = 1 \text{ J s}^{-1}$ ; $P = \frac{E}{t}$ )	
キロワット/キロワット	kilowatt	
アンペア/アンペア	ampere	
クーロン	coulomb ( $1 \text{ C} = 1 \text{ A s}^{-1}$ )	
ボルト/ボルト	volt ( $1 \text{ V} = 1 \text{ J C}^{-1}$ ; $V = \frac{E}{Q}$ )	
オーム/おーむ	ohm ( $1 \Omega = 1 \text{ V A}^{-1}$ ; $R = \frac{V}{I}$ )	
ファラッド/ファラッド	farad (capacitance; $1 \text{ F} = 1 \text{ C V}^{-1}$ )	
摂氏	Celsius/centigrade	also: セ氏
摂氏温度	degrees Celsius	also: セシ温度
円/円	Japanese yen	
セント/セント	cents	
ドル/ドル	dollar	
ユアン/ユアン	Chinese yuan	
ギガ/ギガ	giga-	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
メガ/メガ	mega-	
キロ/キロ	kilo-	
デシ/デシ	deci-	
センチ/センチ	centi-	
ミリ/ミリ	milli-	
マイクロ/マイクロ	micro-	
ナノ/ナノ	nano-	
ピコ/ピコ	pico-	
アルファ/アルファ	alpha	
ベータ/ベータ	beta	
ガンマ/ガンマ	gamma	

## VB.47 Hygiene

Table 106: Nouns: hygiene.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
うんこ/ウンコ	poop	
クソ	feces/excrement/dung/damned/blasted/stupid	(糞)
ごみ/ゴミ	trash/rubbish/garbage/refuse	(塵)
ナプキン	sanitary pad	
ティッシュ	tissue paper	

## VB.48 Common names

Table 107: Nouns: common names.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
鈴木	Suzuki (last name)	
田中	Tanaka (last name)	
山田	Yamada (last name)	
加賀	Kaga (last name)	
一郎	Ichirou (first name)	
直子	Naoko (first name)	
美恵	Mie (first name)	
智子	Tomoko (first name; female)	
洋介	Yousuke (first name; male)	

## VB.49 Character names

Table 108: Nouns: character names.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
胡桃	Hu Tao	(くるみ)
神里綾華	Kamisato Ayaka	
八重神子	Yae Miko	

## VC けいようし 形容詞 (adjectives)

### VC.1 Emotions

Table 109: Adjectives: emotions.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
感動的 <small>かんとうてき</small>	な	moving/touching/stirring	
嬉しい <small>うれい</small>	い	happy/glad/delighted	
明るい <small>あかり</small>	い	cheerful/spirited/sunny (mood)	also in Table 115, Table 122
楽しい <small>たの</small>	い	fun/enjoyable/happy	
欲しい <small>ほ</small>	い	desired/wanted	
<v te>ほしい	い	I want you to do <v>/I want <v> done	AUX
イケイケ	な	eager/enthusiastic/excited/spirited/energetic	(いけいけ)
めでたい	い	happy/auspicious/joyous	(めでたい); also in Table 117
おめでたい	い	for congratulations/worthy of celebration/auspicious (occasion/ending/etc.)	(おめでたい); polite; also in Table 117
大切 <small>たいせつ</small>	な	important/significant; precious/cherished/beloved	also an verb, adverb
愛しい <small>いと</small>	い	lovely/dear/beloved/darling/dearest	
惜しい <small>お</small>	い	precious/dear/valuable	also in Table 114
悲しい <small>かな</small>	い	sad/miserable	
暗い <small>くら</small>	い	depressed/dispirited/dark (mood)	also in Table 115, Table 122
恥ずかしい <small>は</small>	い	embarrassed/ashamed/humiliated	
懐かしい <small>なつ</small>	い	nostalgic/fondly-remembered/missed	
寂しい <small>さび</small>	い	lonely	
済まない <small>す</small>	い	remorseful/sorry/apologetic/conscience-stricken	also an interjection, also in Table 114
気の毒 <small>きどく</small>	な	feel bad/sorry/regretful/regret	also in Table 115
興味ない <small>きょうみ</small>	い	uninterested in/having no interested in	
惜しい <small>お</small>	い	regrettable/disappointing/unfortunate/a pity	also in Table 114
残念 <small>ざんねん</small>	な	regrettable/unfortunate/disappointing/vexing	
悔しい <small>くや</small>	い	frustrated/annoyed/bitterly disappointed (over failure/injustice)	
羨ましい <small>うらや</small>	い	envious/jealous; enviable (position)	
苦しい <small>くる</small>	い	psychologically painful/distressing/stressful; difficult/struggling (circumstances)	
つらい	い	painful/heart-breaking/difficult (emotionally); tough/hard/harsh (situations)	(つらい ≠ 辛い)
痛い <small>いた</small>	い	painful/sore; [cringy/embarrassing]	[slang]
きな臭い <small>きくさい</small>	い	tense/strained/“smelling of gunpowder”	also in Table 122
眠い <small>ねむ</small>	い	sleepy/drowsy	
安心 <small>あんしん</small>	な	relieved	
暖かい <small>あたた</small>	い	pleasantly warm	
暑い <small>あつ</small>	い	hot	
寒い <small>さむ</small>	い	cold (weather)	also in Table 115
小寒い <small>こさむい</small>	い	chilly/a little cold	
熱い <small>あつ</small>	い	hot (to the touch); emotionally passionate/zealous/enthusiastic; hot-tempered	also in Table 115
冷たい <small>つめ</small>	い	cold/chilly/icy/freezing (to the touch); emotionally cold/unfriendly/distant	
つれない	い	cold/unsympathetic/heartless/unfriendly	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
遠い	い	distant/aloof/estranged	also in Table 116
心の貧しい	い	ungenerous/poor in spirit/with no great feelings	

## VC.2 Production

Table 110: Adjectives: production.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
自動的	な	automatic	

## VC.3 Consumption

Table 111: Adjectives: consumption.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
使いやすい	い	easy to use	(使い易い)
見やすい	い	easy to see	(見易い)
読みやすい	い	easy to read/legible	(読み易い)
飲みやすい	い	easy to drink/swallow	(飲み易い)
わかりやすい	い	easy to understand	(分かり易い)
覚えやすい	い	easy to learn/remember	(覚え易い)
住みやすい	い	comfortable/convenient to live in (of a neighbourhood)	(住み易い)

## VC.4 Health

Table 112: Adjectives: health.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
大丈夫	な	alright/problem-free/without fear	
健康	な	healthy/fit; wholesome	also a noun
無意識	の	unconscious/involuntary/unintentional	
精神的	な	mental/spiritual/emotional	
元気	な	lively/well/in good health	
平気	な	all right/fine/OK	slang; also in Table 117
病気	な	illness/disease/sickness	
不安	な	anxious/uneasy/insecure	also a noun
暇	な	free/available/not busy/unoccupied/idle	also a noun: [JS]
忙しい	い	busy/occupied/hectic	
大忙し	な	very busy	
幸せ	な	happy/blessed	also a noun
不幸	な	unhappy/sorrowful/misfortunate/disastrous (short term/long term)	[HN]
不幸せ	な	unhappy/misfortunate/unlucky (long term)	also a noun: [HN]

## VC.5 Colours

Read the main article on [CTA](#).

Only four colours were recognised as basic colours in ancient Japan: red, blue, white, black. Blue and green used to be both referred to as 青い.

Table 113: Adjectives: colours.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
赤い	い	red	
青い	い	blue; green (for fruits/vegetables/traffic lights); inexperienced	
黒い	い	black	also in Table 114
白い	い	white	
黄色い	い	yellow	“黄い” is invalid
茶色い	い	brown	“茶い” is invalid
茶色っぽい	い	brownish	

## VC.6 Agreeability

Table 114: Adjectives: agreeability.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
ない	い	non-existent/not being there	(無い)
いい/良い/よい	い	good/nice/agreeable/OK	[MK]
よろしい	い	good/OK/all right/fine/very well/will do/may/can	(宜しい); honorific
気持ちいい	い	pleasant/good feeling	also an expression
結構	な	nice/splendid/lovely/wonderful/fine	also in Table 123
すごい	い	amazing/great/wonderful/terrific	(凄い)
素晴らしい	い	wonderful/splendid/magnificent	
素敵	な	lovely/wonderful/fantastic/superb/nice/cool	
偉い	い	excellent/remarkable	also in Table 115
やばい	い	terrific/amazing/cool (“damn!”)	colloquial, slang; also: やべー
惜しい	い	too good for/deserving better	also in Table 109
問題ない	い	unobjectionable	also an expression
悪い	い	bad/poor/undesirable/at fault (says served)	also an interjection, [goo]
まずい	い	bad taste/unpleasant/awful/problematic/unfavourable (says server)	[goo]
気まずい	い	awkward/embarrassing/uneasy	
だめ/ダメ	な	not good/hopeless; cannot/not allowed	ダメ is informal, [HN]
嫌	な	reluctant/disagreeable	
いやらしい	い	unpleasant/disagreeable/nasty	(嫌らしい)
不快	な	unpleasant/displeasing/discomforting	
気持ち悪い	い	disgusting/gross/revolting/unpleasant/bad feeling	
キモい	い	disgusting/gross (abbreviation)	slang
気色悪い	い	weird/disgusting/sickening	
きしょい	い	gross/disgusting/sickening (abbreviation of 気色悪い)	slang; also: きしょー
やばい	い	awful/crazy/unhinged (“damn!”)	colloquial, slang; also: やべー
罰当たり	の	cursed/damned/accursed	
ありえない	い	unthinkable/ridiculous/absurd	(あり得ない); also in Table 116
とんでもない	い	unthinkable/unexpected/absurd/outrageous/preposterous/terrible	also an interjection
好き	な	likeable/favourite	
大好き	な	strongly liked/loved	
興味深い	い	very interesting/of great interest	
嫌い	な	disliked/hated	
大嫌い	な	strongly disliked/hated	



Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
安全	な	safe/secure	also a noun
セーフ	な	acceptable/fine/OK; in time (for)	
怖い	い	scary/frightening/eerie/dreadful	
恐ろしい	い	dreadful/terrifying/frightening/terrible; startling/surprising	
危険	な	dangerous/hazardous	also a noun; [HN]
危ない	い	dangerous/risky	also an interjection; [HN]
やばい	い	dangerous/risky (“damn!”)	colloquial, slang; also: やペー
最高	な・ の	best/finest; highest/maximum	
最良	の	best/ideal	
高級	な	high class/calibre	
最低	な・ の	worst/awful/nasty/disgusting; lowest/minimum	
最悪	の	worst (e.g. situation)	
低級	な	low class/calibre; vulgar/cheap	
邪悪	な	evil/wicked	
すまない	い	inexcusable/unjustifiable/unpardonable	(済まない); also an interjection, also in Table 109
当たり前	の	natural/obvious/common/ordinary/the norm	
あたりまえ	の	natural/reasonable/obvious	(当たり前)
当然	の	natural/right/proper/just/appropriate	also an adverb
相当	の	appropriate/suitable/befitting/proportionate	also a verb, adverb; also in Table 123
<v past>ほうが いい	い	had better <v past>	(ほうがいい)
<v neg>ほうが いい	い	had better not <v>	(ほうがいい)
しょうがない	い	there’s no other way/can’t be helped; hopeless/annoying/ troublesome/awful	
仕方ない	い	there’s no other way/can’t be helped; hopeless/annoying/ troublesome/awful	
<nn/adj/v te> てしょうがない	い	cannot help but <nn/adj/v te>	
<nn/adj/v te> て仕方ない	い	cannot help but <nn/adj/v te>	
<nn/adj/v te> てもしょうがない	い	it’s no use <nn/adj/v te>/useless/no good/insufficient/not enough	
<nn/adj/v te> ても仕方ない	い	it’s no use <nn/adj/v te>/useless/no good/insufficient/not enough	
禁じ得ない	い	cannot help/hold back/suppress (laughing/feeling sympathy/ tears/anger/etc.)	

## VC.7 Appearance and style

Table 115: Adjectives: appearance and style.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
<adj/v stem>そう	な	having the appearance of/seeming that	AUX

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
<nn>っぽい/ぼい	い	<nn> -ish/-like	SUFFIX
<nn/v>みたい	な	-like/sort of/similar to/resembling	SUFFIX
<...>らしい	い	seeming/appearing <...> (judgment based on evidence/reason/trustworthy hearsay)	AUX
<nn/adv/adj stem>らしい	い	<nn/adv/adj stem> -ish/typical of/becoming of/appropriate for/worthy of	SUFFIX
こんな風/こういう風	な	this kind (closer to speaker)	(こう言う風)
こんな様/こういう様	な	this kind (closer to speaker)	(こう言う様); formal
そんな風/そういう風	な	this kind (closer to listener)	(そう言う風)
そんな様/そういう様	な	this kind (closer to listener)	(そう言う様); formal
あんな風/ああいいう風	な	this kind (distant)	(ああ言う風)
あんな様/ああいいう様	な	this kind (distant)	(ああ言う様); formal
かわいい	い	cute/adorable/charming/lovely/pretty	
可愛らしい	い	lovely/sweet/pretty/cute/adorable	
かっこいい/かっこ良い	い	cool/attractive/stylish	(格好いい/格好良い)
綺麗	な	pretty/beautiful	
美しい	い	beautiful/pretty/lovely/sweet/pure (heart/friendship)	
魅力的	な	charming/fascinating/attractive	
清楚	な	neat and clean/tidy/trim	
立派	な	impressive/praiseworthy/splendid/handsome/well-rounded	
背が高い	い	tall (of a person)	
完璧	な	perfect/complete/flawless	
完全	の	perfect/complete	
かっこ悪い	い	unattractive/ugly/unstylish/uncool	
醜い	い	ugly/unattractive/unsightly/dishonourable	
背が低い	い	short (of a person)	
男らしい	い	manly/masculine	
女らしい	い	womanly/feminine/ladylike	
ムキムキ	な	muscular/brawny	also an adverb
色白	の	fair-skinned/ light-complexioned	
色黒	の	dark-skinned	
きれい	な	clean/tidy	(綺麗)
新鮮	な	fresh	
汚い	い	dirty/filthy/messy/untidy/vulgar	
めちゃくちゃ	な	disorderly/chaotic/messy	also an adverb
臭い	い	smelly/stinking	also in Table 114
<nn/adj/v>臭い	い	smelling of/appearing like	SUFFIX
ボコボコ	な	holey/full of holes/dents	
面白い	い	interesting/fascinating/funny/entertaining	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
おもしろい	い	interesting/fascinating/funny/intriguing	slang
めずらしい	い	rare/uncommon/unusual/curious/new/fine/precious	
あつ	い	hot topic/of interest	also in Table 109
つまらない	い	dull/uninteresting/boring/tedious; insignificant/worthless; useless/pointless/disappointing	(つまらない)
ダサイ	い	lame/uncool	slang
さむ	い	lame/corny (joke)	also in Table 109
ゆふく	な	wealthy/rich/affluent/well-off	
ゆた	な	rich/abundant/plentiful/ample	[TGG]
あか	い	bright/rosy/encouraging (future/prospects)	also in Table 109, Table 122
ひんぱう	な	poor/poverty-stricken	[goo]
まづ	い	lacking inner richness/poor/needy	[TGG][goo]
とぼ	い	shortage/scarce/limited/meagre	[TGG][goo]
くら	い	unpromising/hopeless (future/prospects)	also in Table 109, Table 122
えい	い	respected/great/famous/celebrated/distinguished	also in Table 114
かわいそう	な	pitiful/pathetic	(かわいそう かわい)
きどく	な	pitiful/unfortunate/poor/miserable	also in Table 109
あた	い	new/novel/recent/latest/modern	
わか	い	young/youthful; immature	[HN]
ふる	い	old/antiquated/old-fashioned (of things, <b>not people</b> )	
どくどく	の	peculiar/unique/characteristic	[HN]
どくど	の	characteristic/their own/unique/original/local	[HN]
とくとうてき	な	distinguishing/distinctive/characteristic	
とくゆう	の	exclusive/characteristic/peculiar	[HN]
こゆう	の	inherent/characteristic/perculiar	[HN]
ふつう	の	normal/ordinary/regular/usual/common	also an adverb
いっぱんてき	な	general/popular/common/typical	
とくべつ	な	special/particular/extraordinary/exceptional	also an adverb, [goo]
とくしゆ	ば	special/particular/peculiar/unique	[goo]

## VC.8 Ability

Table 116: Adjectives: ability.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
うまい	い	skilful/good	(上手い)
じょうず	な	skilful/proficient/adept	
ゆうのう	な	capable/competent/efficient	
つよ	い	strong/dependable; competent/skilled; rigid/solid	
くわ	い	detailed/full	
に詳しい	い	knowledgeable/well-informed/familiar about	
に明るい	い	knowlwdgeable/well-informed/familiar about	
りゅうちょう	な	fluent (in a language)	
ペラペラ	な	fluent (speaking a foreign language)	also in Table 122, also an adverb
ネイティブ	な	native	also a noun
きょうだい	な	mighty/powerful	
てんきいてき	な	talented/gifted/prodigious/virtuoso/masterful	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
頭がいい	い	bright/intelligent/clever/smart	
賢い	い	wise/clever/smart	
下手	な	unskilful/poor/awkward	
ヘタクソ	な	unskilled/clumsy/lousy/poor/awkward/shitty	(下手糞); derogatory
ボンコツ	な	clumsy/unreliable	slang: ボン
苦手	な	not very good at	
無能	の	incapable/incompetent/inefficient	
弱い	い	weak/frail/tender; unskilled	
に疎い	い	ignorant/ill-informed/unfamiliar about	also in Table 109
に暗い	い	unfamiliar with/ignorant of	
弱小	な	puniness; youth	
頭が悪い	い	slow/weak-headed/dumb	
バカ	な	stupid/foolish/ridiculous	(馬鹿)
馬鹿らしい	い	absurd/foolish/stupid/ludicrous/preposterous/laughable/ridiculous	
アホ	な	foolish/idiotic/simplistic	(阿呆)
忘れっぽい	い	forgetful	
[お]やすい	い	easy	(易い)
<v masu>やすい	い	easy to/likely to/have a tendency to <v masu>	(易い); SUFFIX
簡単	な	easy/simple	
簡易	な	simple/convenience/simplified	slightly formal [S]
難しい	い	difficult/troublesome/impossible (euphemism)	
大変	な	difficult/challenging	also an adverb, also in Table 123
無理	な	impossible/no way/unreasonable	
ありえない	い	impossible	(あり得ない); also in Table 114
めんどくさい	い	troublesome/bothersome/tiresome	(面倒臭い)
めんどい	い	troublesome/bothersome	(面倒い); slang
否めない	い	undeniable/cannot deny	

## VC.9 Personalities

Table 117: Adjectives: personalities.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
優しい	い	kind/affectionate/gentle (character)	speech; [HN]
親切	な	kind/generous/gentle (action)	formal; [HN]
心安い	い	friendly/familiar/intimate	
懐っこい	い	amiable/affable/likeable	
人懐っこい	い	friendly/amiabile/affable/sociable/loving company; (of animals) talking kindly to people	
素直	な	frank/upfront/candid/direct/honest (about one's feelings/thoughts)	
ひどい	い	cruel/heartless/harsh/very bad/awful	(ひどい)
残酷	な	cruel/brutal/ruthless/merciless/inhumane	
静か	な	quiet/silent/calm/peaceful	
冷静	な	composed/calm/serene	
穏やか	な	peaceful/gentle/calm/mild/quiet	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
気安い	い	relaxed/familiar/friendly	
平気	な	cool/calm/composed/unconcerned/nonchalant/unmoved/indifferent	also in Table 112
騒がしい	い	noisy/boisterous	
うるさい	い	noisy/loud; annoying/persistent	(うるさ い)
うざい	い	noisy/loud	slang
真面目	な	serious/sober/earnest/grave	
hardworking, lazy...			
おかしい	い	crazy/eccentric	(おか しい); also in Table 119
性急	な	hasty/rash/impatient/quick-tempered	
慎重	な	careful/cautious/prudent	
軽率	な	careless/rash/hasty/imprudent	
いい加減	な	irresponsible/perfunctory/careless	also an adverb, also in Table 123
気にしない	い	not caring/not giving a damn	
へ尻とも思わない	い	not giving a damn/not caring a bit	idiomatic
有名	な	famous	
単純	な	simple/uncomplicated; simple-minded/naive	
[お]めでたい	い	naive/too good-natured/gullible/foolish/simple	([お]目出度い); also in Table 109
だま騙されやすい	い	gullible/naive	(だま やす 騙され易い)
複雑	な	complex/complicated/intricate; mixed (feelings)	
受けやすい	い	susceptible/vulnerable/prone to	(う 受け やすい)
感じやすい	い	sensitive/susceptible	(かん じ やすい); also: センシティブ
熱しやすい	い	excitable	(ね 熱し やすい)
あ飽きやすい	い	easily bored/fickle/quick to lose interest	(あ 飽き やすい)
つか疲れやすい	い	easily fatigued	(つか 疲れ やすい)

## VC.10 Education and correctness

Table 118: Adjectives: education and correctness.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
正しい	い	right/correct; proper/lawful	

## VC.11 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 119: Adjectives: knowledge, truth and reality.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
明らか	な	obvious/clear/evident/definite	[HN]
ふ不明	な	unknown/unidentified/obscure/ambiguous/uncertain/unclear	[HN]
知らない	い	unknown/strange	
ま紛らわしい	い	ambiguous/equivocal/misleading/easy mixed up/confusing	
めい明確	な	clear/precise/definite/distinct	[HN]
ふ不明確	な	inaccurate/indistinct/imprecise/unclear/indecisive	[HN]
あい曖昧	な	vague/ambiguous	[HN]
たし確か	な	certain/sure/definite; reliable/trustworthy/accurate/correct	
ふ不確か	な	uncertain/unclear/indefinite	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
本当	の	real/true/genuine/authentic	[HN]
正常	な	normal	
まじ/マジ	な	serious/not joking	abbreviation
がち	な	serious/earnest/honest/real/legit	slang
もっともらしい	い	plausible/believable/seemingly true/reasonable	(尤もらしい)
おかしい	い	laughable/ridiculous/strange/weird/suspicious	(可笑しい); also in Table 117
怪しい	い	suspicious/dubious/dodgy; ominous (weather)	
変	な	strange/odd/peculiar/weird/eccentric/funny/suspicious/fishy; unexpected	
黒い	い	suspicious/shady/evil	also in Table 113
臭い	い	suspicious	also in Table 115
異常	な	abnormal/strange	
非常	な	extreme/great/extraordinary/unusual	also a noun
不思議	な	strange/mysterious	
信じられない	い	unbelievable/incredible	
正直	な	honest/frank/candid	also an adverb
平等	の	equal/impartial	also a noun
untruthful			
unequal			

## VC.12 Courtesy

Table 120: Adjectives: courtesy.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
[こ]丁寧	な	polite/courteous/civil; conscientious/thorough/careful	[honorific]
失礼	な	discourteous/impolite	also a noun
無礼	な	rude/discourteous/insolent (stronger)	also a noun
速い	い	fast	
高速	な	high-speed/rapid/express	also a noun
急速	な	rapid (progress)	
早い	い	early; premature/too soon/too early	
遅い	い	slow/late (in the day)/late (behind time)	
重い	い	slow/sluggish/laggy	also in Table 123

## VC.13 Conflict and resolution

Table 121: Adjectives: conflict and resolution.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
不正	な	unjust/unfair/dishonest/illegal	also a noun

## VC.14 The five senses

Read the main article for the five basic flavours on [CTA](#).

More [here](#)

Table 122: Adjectives: the five senses: sight, hearing, smell, taste, touch.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
-----------	---	---------	-------

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
おいしい	い	good-tasting/delicious/tasty	(おいしい)
うまい	い	delicious	(美味い/旨い) [SKJnKKS]
酸っぱい	い	sour	
甘い	い	sweet	
苦い	い	bitter	
辛い	い	spicy	
塩っぱい	い	salty	
ふわふわ	の	soft/fluffy/spongy	ONOMATOPOEIC also an adverb
きな臭い	い	smelling burnt/scorched	also in Table 109
明るい	い	light/bright/well-lit; bright (colour)	also in Table 109, Table 115
暗い	い	dark/dull/gloomy/murky; dark (colour)	also in Table 109, Table 115

## VC.15 Amounts and sizes

Table 123: Adjectives: amounts and sizes.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
でかい	い	huge/big/gargantuan	slang
大きい	い	big/large/great	
すごい	い	vast (in numbers)/to a great extent	(凄い)
いい加減	な	already enough (expressing wish for something to end), see い加減にする	also an adverb, also in Table 117
大～	な	large/great/huge/major/important/serious/severe	PREFIX
相当	な	considerable/substantial	
小さい	い	small/little/tiny	
ちいちゃい	い	small/little/tiny	(小ちゃい); slang
ちっちゃい	い	tiny/wee	(小っちゃい); slang
高い	い	high/tall; expensive	
低い	い	low/short	
安い	い	cheap	
深い	い	deep; profound; dense/thick; close (relationship); intense/strong; late	
浅い	い	shallow/superficial; slight (wound); light (sleep); pale (colour); inadequate (knowledge); early/young (e.g. night/season)	
関係ない	い	unrelated/irrelevant	
重い	い	heavy (weight/feeling)	also in Table 120
軽い	い	light (weight/feeling)	also in Table 120
太い	い	thick (diameter); deep/sonorous (of voice)	[HN]
細い	い	thin/slender (diameter); thin/sparse (of voice)	[HN]
スリム	な	slim	
厚い	い	thick (sheets/strength)	[HN]
薄い	い	thin (sheets/strength)	[HN]
ペラペラ	な	thin/flimsy (of paper/cloth)	also in Table 123, also an adverb
短い	い	short/brief (length) (spacial/temporal/detail)	
長い	い	long (length) (spacial/temporal)	
永い	い	everlasting/permanent/very long/many years of	
近い	い	near (distance) (spacial/temporal/relationship/similarity)	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
遠い	い	far (distance) (spacial/temporal/relationship/similarity)	
広い	い	wide/spacious/vast	
狭い	い	narrow/confined/cramped	
大量	の	massive quantity	[HN]
多い	い	many/large quantity of (esp. countable); frequent	[GMN]
多量	の	much/large amount of (esp. uncountable)	[HN], [GMN], [goo]
十分	な	enough/sufficient/plenty/adequate/satisfactory	also an adverb
たくさん	の	a lot/lots/plenty/much/a great deal; enough/too much	(沢山); also an adverb; [goo]
いっぱい	の	full/filled/overflowing	(一杯); also a noun and adverb; [goo]
色々	な	various/all sorts of	slang: いろんな (Table 75)
必要	な	essential/necessary	also a noun
必要ない	い	unnecessary/not needed	
不必要	な	unnecessary/needless	
不要	の	unnecessary/unneeded	
結構	な	not needing any more ("I'm fine/no thank you")/sufficient/enough	also in Table 114
不用	の	disused/unused	
少量	の	small quantity	
少ない	い	few/a little/scarce/insufficient; seldom	
久しい	い	long (time that has passed)/old (story)	
久しぶり	の	long time (since the last time)	
深刻	な	serious/severe/grave (of a crisis)	
重い	い	serious/severe/critical (punishment/illness)	also in Table 120
軽い	い	non-serious/minor/unimportant/trivial (punishment/illness)	also in Table 120
大変	な	serious/dreadful/terrible	also an adverb, also in Table 116

## VC.16 Change

Table 124: Adjectives: change.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
変わらない	い	constant/invariant	



## VD 動詞 (verbs)

### VD.1 Physical

Table 125: Verbs: physical.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
動かす	う	to move/shift/stir/budge/change position; to inspire/mobilise/ deploy		動く	う	to move; to stir/shift/shake/swing; to be influenced	
移動する	E	to move/transfer/migrate		移動する	E	to move/travel	
-				運動する	E	to exercise/train/workout/do sports	
-				活動する	E	to be active (of person/organisation/animal/volcano/etc.)	
-				静止する	E	to be still/still/dormant (e.g. volcano)	
-				行動する	E	to act/take action	
止める	る	to stop/turn off; to park; to suppress/hold (cough/tears/breath); to relieve (pain)		止まる	う	to stop moving/come to a stop/be stopped/perch on (of birds)	
指す	う	to point; to identify/indicate/point out		-			
触る	う	to touch/feel (intentional)	[goo]	触る	う	to touch (intentional)	[goo]
OにSを触れる	る	to touch O using S (unintentional) ???	[goo]	触れる	る	to touch/feel (unintentional); to touch/refer to a subject	[goo]
?				接する	E	to be close to/in contact (abstract; information/geographical border)	[goo]
抱く	う	to embrace/hug/hold in one's arms (e.g. baby)		-			
抱きしめる	る	to embrace closely/hug someone close/hold someone tight	(抱き締める)	-			
ハグする	E	to hug		ハグする	E	to hug	
噛む	う	to bite/chew		-			
持つ	う	to hold (in hand)/take/carry/possess; hold meeting		-			
押さえる	る	to pin down/hold in place/hold steady		-			
掴む	う	to grab/grasp/grip/clutch/hold		掴まる	う	to grasp/hold on to	
-				座る	う	to sit/squat	
掛ける	る	to sit down/take a seat; to rest against (IC-marked)		-			
腰を掛ける	る	to sit down/take a seat		-			
横たえる	る	to lay down		横たわる	う	to lie down/stretch out	
伏せる	る	to turn over/lay face down; to point/cast down (gaze/head)	also in Table 135	伏せる	る	to lie flat on the ground	
残す	う	to leave behind	also in Table 129	残る	う	to remain/be left behind	also in Table 129
押す	う	to press/push/exert pressure on; to stamp (seal)		-			
当てる	る	to hit/put on/hold against; to apply (patch/eye-mask)	[HNI]	当たる	う	to be hit/strike (e.g. a target/lottery/by an ailment)	
打つ	う	to hit/strike/beat/punch (strong)	[goo][HNI]	打たれる	る	to be struck/beaten (strong)	
叩く	う	to (repeatedly) strike/hit/slap/tap/pat/clap (hands); to attack/ criticise/flare an idea	also in Table 129; [goo]	-			
殴る	う	to strike/hit/beat/punch someone	[goo]	-			
ぶつ	う	to hit someone; strike/beat (stronger)	(打つ); [goo][HNI]	?			
ぶつける	る	to hit someone's head/crash into	(打付ける); [HNI]	ぶつかる	う	to bump/crash into (large objects)	[HNI]
ボコボコにする	E	to viciously beat up/hit and kick repeatedly	slang	-			
ボッコボコにする	E	to severely beat up (emphatic)	slang	-			
しばく	う	to strike (with stick/whip); to hit/punch/kick/beat		-			
ビンタする	E	to slap (esp. in the face)		-			
刺す	う	to pierce/stab/prick/thrust	also in Table 130	刺さる	う	to pierce/get lodged/get stuck into	
撃つ	う	to shoot (gun/person/beam)		-			
貫通する	E	to pass/go/penetrate/pierce through (of bullet/arrow)		貫通する	E	to pass/go/penetrate/pierce through (bullet/arrow)	
漏らす	う	to let leak out (water/light/secret/information)		漏れる	る	to leak out/escape/shine through	[HNI][goo]
バラす	う	to expose/disclose/reveal/give away (secret)	slang	バレる	る	to leaked out/be exposed/be found out (of a secret/lie/improper behaviour)	slightly casual, [HNI]
<v stem>漏らす	う	to forget to do <v stem>	SUFFIX				
振り返る	う	to turn one's head towards; to think back/reminisce/reflect on		振り返る	う	to turn around/look back	
吐く	う	to expel from mouth (breathe/spit/vomit)	[goo]	-			
つく	う	to sigh; to tell a lie; to use foul language (all other cases, use 吐く)	(吐く); [HNI]	-			
嘘をつく	う	to tell a lie		-			
吹く	う	to blow air through pursed lips	[goo]	-			
さらす	う	to expose (sun/danger; IC-suffixed); to rinse/soak (vegetables)	(晒す)	-			
さらす	う	to doxx/make someone's private information public	slang	-			
-				日光浴する	E	to sunbathe/bask in the sun	
-				爆発する	E	to explode/detonate/blast/blow up/erupt; to outburst/explode/ erupt (emotion)	

### VD.2 Directions

Table 126: Verbs: directions.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				行く	う	to go/move through/proceed/reach (information/phase)	
-				<v te>で[~]く	う	{to <v te> and go (spatial to <v te> gradually/progressively into the future (temporal)}	(行く); AUX, [formal]
持っていく	う	to take/bring/carry something along		-			
進める	る	to advance/move forward	also in Table 136	進む	う	to advance/go forward	also in Table 136
-				急行する	E	to hurry/rush to somewhere	
-				緩行する	E	to go slowly to somewhere	
急ぐ	う	to hurry (someone to do)/rush/hasten/urge/push/make something happen sooner (oft. causative 急がせる)		急ぐ	う	to hurry/rush	
-				急ぐ	う	to hurry/rush	
目指す	う	to aim at/for/to do/to become		-			
-				去る	う	to leave/go away; to pass/elapse (e.g. seasons)	also an adjective
-				来る	E	to come/approach/arrive	
-				出て来る	E	to come out/emerge	

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-	-	-	-	見える	る	to come	honorific; also in Table 130
-	-	-	-	<v te>てくる	E	{to <v te> and come back (spatial); to <v te> up to the present (temporal)}	(来る); AUX. [SE1], [SE2]
持ってくる	う	to take/bring/carry something over	-	-	-	-	-
離す	う	to separate/part/divide/keep apart	-	離れる	る	to be separated/apart/distant/disconnected; to leave/go away	also in Table 129
-	-	-	-	逆らう	う	to go against/oppose/defy	-
帰す	う	to send back/home (animate)	[HN]	帰る	う	to return/go back/go home (animate)	[HN]
還す	う	to send back to origin (grander scale)	[HN], [KRS]	還る	う	to return back to origin (grander scale)	[HN], [KRS]
返す	う	to return/put something back (inanimate)	[HN]	返る	う	to return/go back (inanimate)	[HN]
過ごす	う	to spend/pass/lead (time/life); to overdo (esp. alcohol consumption)	-	過きる	る	to pass through/by; to pass (time/life); to have expired	-
?	-	-	-	上る	う	to ascend/go up/go upwards (focus on process)	[gool]
?	-	-	-	登る	う	to go to a higher place	[gool]
?	-	-	-	昇る	う	to rise (sun); be promoted in rank	[gool]
上げる	る	to raise; to do up (one's hair); to fly (kite)/launch (fireworks); to land (a boat); to show someone in/away; to enrol (school)	-	上がる	う	to rise (focus on destination); to enter (from outside); to enrol/promote (school); to come ashore; to lift (rain); to spoil/die (e.g. battery)	[gool], [HK]
持ち上げる	る	to elevate/raise/lift up	-	-	-	-	-
乗せる	る	to pick up passenger/load goods	-	乗る	う	to board/embark	-
拾う	う	to pick up (item); book a taxi	-	-	-	-	-
起こす	う	to make upright/wake up	[gool]	起きる	る	to rise/wake up; to occur (esp. unfavourable incidents)	-
かける	る	to hang up/let hang/suspend from/hoist/raise (e.g. coat/painting)	(掛ける)	かかる	う	to hang	(掛かる)
壁にかける	る	to hang on the wall	(壁に掛ける)	壁にかかる	う	to hang on the wall	(壁に掛かる)
下す	う	w to make a decision/draw a conclusion (of 決定、評決、判決、結論)	-	下る	う	to descend/go down/go downwards (focus on process)	-
下ろす	う	to take down/bring down/lower (generic, destination often mentioned)	[gool]	下りる	る	to go to a lower place	-
?	-	-	-	沈む	う	to set (sun); be sunken/submerged	-
下げる	る	to bring down/lower (hinged or small movement)	[gool]	下がる	う	to go downwards/step backwards (focus on destination)	[HN]
降ろす	う	to drop off passenger/unload goods; out	-	降りる	る	to alight/disembark	-
落とす	う	to drop/let fall; be defeated/rejected; download/copy	-	落ちる	る	to fall/drop/collapse/crash (focus on fall); be defeated/fail	[HN]
倒す	う	to knock down/turn on its side/recline	also in Table 137	倒れる	る	to fall/collapse (focus on ground); to fold/go bankrupt (organisation)	also in Table 137; [HN]
除く	う	to exclude/remove (esp. something unnecessary); esp. 除けば (aside from/excluding)	[gool]	-	-	-	-
退ける	る	to put/move out of the way	[gool], [HN]	どく	う	to step aside/move out of the way/make way	(退く); [HN]
退ける	る	to put/move out of the way (wider usage as auxiliary)	[HN]	のく	う	to step aside/move out of the way/make way (wider usage as auxiliary)	(退く); [HN]
どかす	う	to remove/move out of the way	(どかす)	-	-	-	-
押しよける	る	to physically push aside	(押し退ける)	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	立ち退く	う	to evict/evacuate/be displaced	-
-	-	-	-	左折する	E	to make a left turn	-
-	-	-	-	右折する	E	to make a right turn	-
戻す	う	to put back/return/revert state/turn back (clock hand)	-	戻る	う	to turn back/return/go back	-
-	-	-	-	降る	う	to fall (rain/snow/ash); to beam down (sunlight/moonlight/luck/misfortune)	-
入れる	る	to put in/bring in/let in/insert/install (software)	-	入る	う	to enter/arrive/join/get into/fit into	[HN]
-	-	-	-	立ち入る	う	to trespass/intrude/interfere/pry/delve deeper	-
<stem>込む	う	to go/put into; to completely become; to do thoroughly/sufficiently; to remain (seated/silent)	-	-	-	-	-
差し込む	う	to insert/put/thrust/plug in; to shine/stream in (light)	SUFFIX	-	-	-	-
挟む	う	to interject/insert (e.g. objection/joke)	also in Table 128, Table 129	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	入店する	E	to enter a store/restaurant; to become an employee at a store	-
出す	う	to take out/get out/publish/send (letter)/produce	CN 出～	出る	る	to exit/leave/come out/flow/appear/answer (phone/door)	incl. CN 出～ usages
取り出す	う	to take out/pick out; to retrieve/recover	[gool]	-	-	-	-
<v stem>出す	う	to begin to <v stem>; to <v stem> out (e.g. jump out, carry out)	SUFFIX	-	-	-	-
追い出す	う	to expel/drive/chase out	-	-	-	-	-
抜く	う	to pull out/extract/unplug; to omit/skip/pass; to steal	[gool]	抜ける	る	to come out/fall out/be extracted; be omitted/missing	-
抜け出す	う	to slip out/sneak away/break free	-	抜け出る	る	to slip out/steal out	-
抜き出す	う	to pick/single/select out	[gool]	?	-	-	-
<v stem>抜く	う	to do thoroughly/completely/to the end	SUFFIX	-	-	-	-
減らす	う	to decrease	-	減る	う	to decrease	-
増やす	う	to increase	-	増える	る	to increase	-
-	-	-	-	相当する	E	to correspond/be equivalent (in meaning/function); to be proportionate to; to be worthy/deserving of	-
開ける	る	to open (business/general; revealing vacant space)	[TFG]	開く	う	to open (business/general; revealing vacant space)	[gool], [HN], [TFG]
開く	う	to open (focus on non-linear unfolding movement)	[gool], [HN], [TFG]	開く	う	to open (focus on non-linear unfolding movement)	[gool], [HN], [TFG]
-	-	-	-	開ける	る	to unfold (figurative/formal; view/development/path forward)	[TFG]
空ける	る	to clear/empty out/make space; leave/be temporarily away	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	明ける	る	to dawn/begin (day/new year); leave schedule free/make time for	-
閉じる	う	to close/shut (business/general/non-linear folding)	[gool], [SE]	閉じる	う	to close/shut (business/general/non-linear folding)	[gool], [SE]
閉める	る	to close/shut (focus on linear movement)	[gool], [SE]	閉まる	う	to close/shut (focus on linear movement); to be closed (shops)	[SE]
-	-	-	-	昇進する	E	to be promoted/rise in rank (of person)	[gool]
-	-	-	-	昇格する	E	to be promoted in status (of person/institution)	[gool]
-	-	-	-	昇任する	E	to be promoted/advance (of person)	[gool]
格上げする	E	to promote/upgrade to (に-marked)	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	昇職する	E	to upgrade/promote/advance in grade/class/rank	[gool]
-	-	-	-	降格する	E	to be demoted/drop in rank (of person/institution)	-
-	-	-	-	降任する	E	to be demoted (of person)	-
格下げする	E	to demote/downgrade to (に-marked)	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	降職する	E	to downgrade/demote/degrade in grade/class/rank	-
呼吸する	E	to breathe	-	呼吸する	E	to breathe/respire	-

## VD.3 Clothing

TO READ TO READ TO READ TO READ

Table 127: Verbs: clothing.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
つける 付ける							
かぶる	う	to put on (head)/be covered with/shoulder responsibility	(被る): [IG]	-			
かける	る	to wear/put on (glasses/coat)	(掛ける)	-			
メガネをかける	る	to wear/put on glasses	(眼鏡を掛ける)	-			
着る	る	to wear (upper body)	[IG]	-			
{履く 穿く}	う	to put on (lower body: pants, skirt, shoes)	[IG]	-			
脱ぐ	う	to take off/undress (head/upper body/lower body)	[IG]	-			
着替える	る	to change one's clothes		着替える	る	to change one's clothes	

## VD.4 Emotions

Table 128: Verbs: emotions.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
思う	う	to think/feel (heart-felt mance)		-			
感じる	る	to feel/experience		-			
感じ取る	う	to perceive/sense		-			
-				気がする	E	to feel (as if; usu. after 〜たい/された); to feel like doing (usu. negative)	
扶む	う	to harbour (feelings)	also in Table 126, Table 129	-			
喜ぶ	う	to be delighted/pleased by; to congratulate; to welcome (proposal/advice)		喜ぶ	う	to be delighted/glad/pleased/rejoice	
-				笑う	う	to laugh; to smile; to sneer/ridicule	[gog]
-				微笑む	う	to smile	[gog]
-				ニヤニヤする	E	to grin/smirk	
嘲 笑する	E	to scorn/ridicule/sneer at		-			
-				喜 せにする	E	to bring someone happiness/make someone happy	
?				震える	る	to shiver/quiver/tremble (e.g. cold/fear/rage)	
-				緊張する	E	to be nervous/stressed/tense	
心配する	E	to worry/fear about		-			
悩ます	う	to worry/trouble/torment/burden/harass		ビビる	う	to feel nervous/afraid/self-conscious; [to be startled/surprised/shocked/frightened/spooked]	[slang]
-				悩む	う	to be worried/troubled	
-				ソワソワする	E	to be restless/nervous/uneasy/in a fidget	ONOMATOPOEIC
-				イライラする	E	to be irritated/annoyed; to fret/worry/be on the edge; to be impatient/lose patience	ONOMATOPOEIC
後悔する	E	to regret/repent		後悔する	E	to be regretful/remorseful	
反省する	E	to reflect/introspect; to regret/repent		-			
-				ツンツンする	E	to be prickly/standoffish/cold/alooof	also an adverb
-				ムカムカする	E	to feel sick/queasy/nameated/disgusted	also an adverb
誇りに思う	う	to be proud of (neutral connotation)	[HNI]				
誇る	う	to be proud of/take pride in (neutral connotation)		-			
自慢する	E	to boast of (negative connotation)	[HNI]	-			
激励する	E	to encourage/spur on/cheer on		-			
励ます	う	to encourage/cheer on/cheer up		-			
気合をかける	る	to cheer on/raise a shout to someone (IC-marked)	(気合を掛ける)	気合を入れる	る	to fire/psych/motivate oneself up; to give it one's all	-
-				努力する	E	to put in effort/exert/endeavour/strive	-
-				無理する	E	to work/try too hard	-
喘み殺す	う	to stifle (yawn/smile/laugh/etc.)		-			
笑いを喘み殺す	う	to stifle a laugh		-			
抑える	る	to restrain/control (emotions); to keep within limits (spending)		-			
遠慮する	E	to refrain from (esp. タバコ)		遠慮する	E	to hold back/reserve/constrain/restrain oneself	
配慮する	E	to be considerate/thoughtful of		配慮する	E	to have consideration/thoughtfulness for (IC-marked)	
切望する	E	to earnestly desire/eagerly hope/long/yearn for (usu. progressive)		-			
-				絶望する	E	to despair/feel hopeless	
-				感動する	E	to be emotionally deeply moved/excited/inspired (internal emotions)	[gog]
-				感激する	E	to be emotionally deeply moved/impressed/inspired (stronger; with observable behavioural change)	[gog]
-				興奮する	E	to be excited/stimulated/agitated/aroused	
傷つける	る	to wound/injure/hurt someone's feelings		傷つく	う	to be wounded/injured/hurt (feelings)	
-				泣く	う	to cry	
-				泣ける	る	to shed tears/be moved to tears	
理解する	E	to sympathise	also in Table 134	-			
怒らす	う	to anger/offend/provoke	(esp. 怒らせる)	怒る	う	to get angry/lose one's temper; to scold/tell someone off	
-				ブチ切れる	る	to become enraged/lose it/flip out/blow one's top	slang
-				キレる	る	to snap/flip/get angry/lose one's temper	(切れる)
嫉妬する	E	to be jealous of (something)		嫉妬する	E	to be jealous (of (IC-marked person))	
-				落ち着く	う	to calm down/compose oneself/relax; to settle down (location/job)	
-				びっくりする	E	to be surprised/frightened/startled	
驚かす	う	to startle/frighten/scare	also in Table 137	-			

Transitive			Intransitive		
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Action	Cat.	Meaning
大切にする	E	to cherish/treasure			
愛する	E	to love			
楽しむ	う	to enjoy/take pleasure in/have a good time/have fun (also used in wishes)			
楽しみにする	E	to look forward to			
-			ドキドキする	E	to beat fast (heart)/throb/pound/palpitate
-			ワクワクする	E	to be excited/thrilled/nervous

## VD.5 Production

Table 129: Verbs: production.

Transitive			Intransitive		
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Action	Cat.	Meaning
作る	う	to make/prepare (food)/grow (agriculture)/cultivate (people)			
造る	う	to construct (large-scale buildings, manufacturing)			
創る	う	to create/compose (artistic)/start a business			
かける	る	to pour/splash/throw into (liquid); to sprinkle onto (powder/spice)			
塩をかける	る	to salt/sprinkle salt on			
つける	る	to affix/attach/join/apply; to assign; to tail/watch	付く	つく	to come with/be provided/attached; to stain/scar/dye
つなぐ	う	to connect/link together; to tie/chain/restrain	つながる	う	to be tied/connected/linked/chained to; to be related to
-			血がつながる	う	to be related by blood (usu. as progressive 血がつながっている)
札をつける	る	to affix a label/tag			
加える	る	to add/include/sum (objects/people/concepts); to increase (heat/influence/speed)	加わる	う	to participate/be added to (objects/people/concepts); to increase (heat/influence/speed)
付け加える	る	to add on/supplement/append			
足す	う	to add (arithmetic)			
引く	う	to subtract (arithmetic)			
かける	る	to multiply (arithmetic)			
割る	う	to divide (arithmetic)			
始める	う	to start/begin/initiate	始まる	う	to start/begin
スタートする	E	to start/begin	スタートする	E	to start/begin
開始する	E	to start/commence/begin/initiate	開始する	E	to start/commence/begin/initiate
-			出発する	E	to depart/leave/set off
発動する	E	kick-start/put into effect (activity/feeling/machine/policy)	発動する	E	to kick-start into effect (activity/feeling/machine/policy)
起動する	E	to startup/boot up/activate	起動する	E	to startup/boot up/activate
準備する	E	to prepare/arrange/get ready/setup			
管理する	E	to manage/control (e.g. business)			
残す	う	to leave undone; to be left over/remain	残る	う	to be left undone; to be left over/remaining
続ける	る	to continue	続く	う	to continue
<v stem>続ける	る	to continue <v stem>			
-			引き続く	う	to continue (for a long time); to come next (TV)
やめる	る	to stop/end/quit/cancel/abandon/refrain	止む	う	to stop/cease/be over
辞める	る	to resign/retire/quit a job			
辞める	る	to give up/resign/abandon			
-			離れる	る	to quit/give up
-			いい加減にする	E	to put an end to/get over with/quit something someone's been stuck doing
<stem>止す	う	to stop in the midst of			
終える	る	to finish	終わる	う	to end/finish
終了する	E	to end/close/terminate	終了する	E	to end/close/terminate
<v stem>終える	る	to finish <v stem>			
完成する	E	to complete/finish			
-			突破する	E	to break through/overcome; to exceed
披露する	E	to announce/unveil/introduce; to boast			
-			引退する	E	to retire (from the workforce)
登録する	E	to be entered into a register/to register/subscribe (YouTube)			
-			入会する	E	to enrol/admit into a club/society/mailling list
-			退会する	E	to withdraw/resign from a club/society/mailling list
-			加入する	E	to join a group/project
-			脱退する	E	to quit a group/project
書く	う	to write			
描く	う	to draw/paint			
描く	う	to imagine; to depict (abstract concept)			
書き直す	う	to rewrite			
メモする	E	to note			
言う	う	to say; to name/call			
言い出す	う	to start saying			
言いかす	う	to stop saying midway			
話す	う	to talk/speak			
-			ささやく	う	to whisper/murmur; to spread rumour (oft. passive progressive)
-			しゃべる	う	to chat/chatter/talk
呼ぶ	う	to call out to; to name/call; to summon (e.g. doctor)			
放送する	E	to broadcast/be on air (TV/radio)			
配信する	E	to broadcast/stream (Internet)			
-			雑談する	E	to chat/idle talk
アドバイスする	E	to advise			
申し上げる	る	to say/express/offer/extend (greetings/congratulations/apologies, etc.)			
-			黙る	う	to be silent/say nothing
歌う	う	to sing	歌う	う	to sing
演奏する	E	to perform/play (music/instrument)			

Transitive			Intransitive		
Action	Cat. Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat. Meaning	Notes
叩く	う to play (drum)	also in Table 125	-	-	-
-	-	-	踊る	う to dance (a hopping dance)	-
-	-	-	小躍りする	E to dance for joy	-
-	-	-	歩く	う to walk	-
-	-	-	ぶらぶらする	E to walk leisurely/aimlessly	ONOMATOPOEIC, also an adverb
-	-	-	散歩する	E to take a stroll	-
-	-	-	走る	🟡 to run; drive (vehicle); flash (lightning); wind (road)	-
-	-	-	走り出す	う to start running/break into a run	-
追う	う to chase/run after/pursue	-	-	-	-
追いかける	る to chase/run after/pursue	(追い掛ける)	-	-	-
追い込む	う to corner/go hard/push/force someone into doing; to herd/drive/chase ("chase into")	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	時間 <sup>じかん</sup> に追われる	to be pressed for time ("chased by time")	-
-	-	-	追いつく	う to catch up with (chase/relationships) ("chase and attach")	(追い付く)
-	-	-	泳ぐ	う to swim/weave through a crowd	-
-	-	-	混雑する	E to be congested/crowded/jammed	[SE]
-	-	-	混む	う to be crowded/packed/congested	[SE]
-	-	-	空く	う to become less crowded/thin out; to get empty	also in Table 132
逃がす	う to miss/fail to catch (more physical); to set free/let go/release (physical)	[goal]	逃げる	る to flee/escape/get away/avoid (danger/responsibility)	-
逃 <sup>にげ</sup> す	う to miss/fail to catch (more abstract); to put out of reach (abstract)	[goal]	逃れる	る to escape	-
<v stem>逃 <sup>にげ</sup> す	う to fail to <v stem>	AUX	-	-	-
取り逃がす	う to try and catch but fail	[goal]	-	-	-
逸 <sup>よ</sup> する	E to miss/deviate from (abstract only; chance/right track)	[goal]	-	-	-
避ける	る to avoid (physical/situation/question/responsibility)	-	-	-	-
取る	う to take (notes/break/time)/obtain/pass/obtain	-	取れる	る to come off (button/handle/lid)	-
とる	う to have/take/consume (a meal/vitamins)	(摂る)	-	-	-
盗 <sup>ぬす</sup> む	う to steal/plagiarise	-	-	-	-
手に入れる	る to obtain/get/procure/win/secure	-	手に入る	🟡 to obtain/get one's hands on	-
撮 <sup>と</sup> る	う to take a photograph	-	撮れる	る to be taken (photograph)	-
録 <sup>とく</sup> る	う to record an audio or video	-	録れる	る to be recorded/caught on tape (audio or video)	-
捕 <sup>と</sup> る	う to catch an object/capture an animal	-	捕れる	る to be caught (object)/captured (animal)	-
採 <sup>と</sup> る	う to adopt (method/proposal); to collect/gather (flowers/plants)	-	採れる	る to be collected/gathered (flowers/plants)	-
摘 <sup>と</sup> む	う to pick/pluck (flowers); to nip/snip/cut/trim	[HN1] [HN2]	-	-	-
つまむ	う to pick up (with chopsticks/tweezers)/pinch/hold	(摘まむ); [HN1] [HN2]	-	-	-
もぐ	う to pick/pluck by twisting from a tree	-	-	-	-
挟 <sup>はさ</sup> む	う to hold/grip between (fingers/chopsticks/cars); to sandwich	also in Table 126, Table 128	挟まる	う to get (caught) between	-
集 <sup>あ</sup> める	る to collect/assemble/gather (collectibles/people/information)	-	集まる	う to assemble/gather/collect	-
計算 <sup>けいさん</sup> する	E to calculate/compute	-	-	-	-
守 <sup>まも</sup> る	う to protect/guard/defend	also in Table 137	-	-	-
面倒 <sup>めんどう</sup> を見る	る to look after (🟡-marked)	-	-	-	-
切る	🟡 to cut/open (sealed); turn off (lights/appliance); hang up; (conversation); shuffle/discard (cards/tiles); punch (ticket)	-	切れる	る to break/snap; run out/stop working/expire; be disconnected; be shuffled (cards/tiles); run out (stock); break up	-
<v stem>切 <sup>き</sup> る	🟡 to be able to do <v stem> completely	AUX	-	-	-
破 <sup>やぶ</sup> る	う to tear/rip (paper/cloth); to break through (defences); to surpass (record)	[HN1] also in Table 137	破れる	る to break/collapse/be torn/worn out/ruined	-
壊 <sup>こわ</sup> す	う to break/destroy/demolish (general physical); to wreck/ruin/spoil/damage/destroy (e.g. dreams)	[HN1]	壊れる	る to break/fall apart/collapse/be broken/destroyed/damaged; to stop working	-
粉碎 <sup>ぶくろい</sup> する	E to pulverise/crush/reduce to pieces	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	もげる	る to be torn off/come off	-
直す	う to repair/correct (mistake/habit)/restore/tidy up (hair/make-up)/fix	-	直る	う to return to normal/be restored/repaired/improved/corrected	-
治 <sup>な</sup> す	う to cure/heal	-	治る	う to recover/be cured/healed	-
<v stem>直 <sup>な</sup> す	う to redo <v stem>	-	-	-	-
訂正 <sup>ていせい</sup> する	E to correct/amend (something that is clearly wrong)	[HN1]	-	-	-
調整 <sup>ていせい</sup> する	E to adjust/tune of tailor	-	-	-	-
改修 <sup>かいしゆ</sup> する	E to modify (nuance of repurposing for new purpose)	-	-	-	-
修正 <sup>しゆせい</sup> する	E to amend/correct/revise/modify/alter/retouch/update/fix	[HN1]	-	-	-
手直 <sup>てな</sup> しする	E to modify (nuance of pushing an incomplete product towards completion)	-	-	-	-
添削 <sup>そんせう</sup> する	E to correct by adding/removing (usu. in education)	[HN1]	-	-	-
世話 <sup>せわ</sup> する	E to care/look after; to put up a good word for/recommend/introduce	-	-	-	-
温 <sup>ぬる</sup> める	る to warm/heat up moderately (also 暖める); [goal]	温まる	う to warm oneself up	-	-
熱 <sup>あつ</sup> する	E to heat to high temperature; to get excited/fired up	[goal]	-	-	-
冷 <sup>ひや</sup> やす	う to cool from room temperature/chill/refrigerate (any object); to calm down/regain composure/relax	[goal] [HN2]	冷える	る to be cooled (more than usual/purposefully from room temperature) (any subject)	[HN1] [HN2]
冷 <sup>ひや</sup> ます	う to cool from high temperature to room temperature (of liquid/food/heat); to dampen (feelings/atmosphere/interest)	[goal] [HN2]	冷める	る to cool down/become cold (naturally) (liquid/food/heat)	[HN1] [HN2]
洗 <sup>せん</sup> う	う to wash/cleanse/rinse	-	-	-	-
掃除 <sup>そうじ</sup> する	E to clean/sweep/dust/scrub	[goal]	-	-	-
清掃 <sup>せうじょう</sup> する	E to clean/clean-up/garbage collect	literary; [goal]	-	-	-
掃 <sup>はき</sup> く	う to sweep/brush/clean	-	-	-	-
払 <sup>はら</sup> う	う to brush/dust/wipe off (e.g. dust/dirt)	also in Table 130	-	-	-
-	-	-	求婚 <sup>こけご</sup> する	E to propose (marriage)	-
-	-	-	結婚 <sup>けっこん</sup> する	E to get/be married	-
-	-	-	咲 <sup>さ</sup> く	う to bloom/flower/blossom	-
-	-	-	満開 <sup>まんかい</sup> する	E to be in full bloom (esp. of cherry blossom)	-

VD.6 Consumption

Table 130: Verbs: consumption.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
使う	う	to use (something/person/idea/means/method)	[goal]	-			
用いる	る	to use (slightly abstract); to evaluate and use (person); to adopt (idea)	[goal]	-			
かける	る	to spend/expend/use (time/money)	(掛ける)	かかる	う	to take/require (time/money)	(掛かる)
時間をかける	る	to spend time (on doing something)	(時間を掛ける)	時間がかかる	う	to take/require time	(時間が掛かる)
請求する	E	to charge/bill (for a service)	also in Table 131	-			
払う	う	to pay (money/bill)	also in Table 129	-			
遊ばす	う	to leave idle (resources)		-			
遊ばせる	る	to leave idle (resources)		-			
-				寝る	る	to lie idle (resources)	also in Table 132
-				眠る	う	to lie idle (resources)	also in Table 132
				なくなる	う	to run out/be reduced to zero/not occur anymore	(無くなる); also in Table 135
見る	る	to see/observe		見える	る	to be seen/visible	also in Table 126
ちらっと見る	る	to glimpse/glance at		-			
<v te>みる	る	to try <v te> and see (what happens)	AUX	-			
試みる	う	to attempt/try and see if it's possible	[goal]	-			
試す	う	to attempt/put to the test and confirm truth/goodness	[goal]	-			
見つける	る	to find/discover/detect		見つかる	う	to be found/discovered	
バラす	う	to expose/disclose/leak a secret	colloquial	バレる	る	to be exposed/found out/leak a secret	
実験する	う	to experiment	[goal]	-			
読む	う	to read/recite/pronounce/decipher		-			
読み出す	う	to read out (computing)		-			
読みさす	う	to leave half-read	(読み止す)	-			
聞く	う	to hear		聞こえる	る	to be heard/audible	
聴く	う	to listen attentively (music)		?			
吸う	う	to smoke (cigarettes); to breathe in/inhale; to soak up/absorb (sponge); to kiss		-			
タバコを吸う	う	to smoke a cigarette		-			
吸い込む	う	to inhale/breathe in; to soak up/absorb (sponge); to suck in (allure)		-			
-				キスする	E	to kiss (に-marked)	
-				チュッする	E	to lightly kiss/smooch	slang, ONOMATOPOEIC
-				チューする	E	to kiss	slang, ONOMATOPOEIC
食べる	る	to eat		-			
食う	う	to eat (masculine); to bite/sting (insects); to consume (resources)	also in Table 137	-			
刺す	う	to sting/bite (insects)	also in Table 125	-			
食べすぎる	る	to overeat		-			
味わう	う	to taste/experience/savour/relish (literal/abstract (e.g. victory))		-			
-				<adj>味がする	E	to taste like/of	
テイクアウトする	E	to take-out/takeaway food		-			
持ち帰る	👉	to take home/take out (food)		-			
摂取する	E	to intake/ingest (salt/sugar/pills/food); to absorb/assimilate (knowledge/culture)		-			
飲む	う	to drink/swallow/take medicine		-			
呑む	う	to gulp/swallow whole		-			
-				乾杯する	E	to toast/drink/drink one's glass dry (in honour of/celebration)	
つける	る	to turn on/switch on/light up (appliance/fire)	(点ける)	つく	う	to come on/ignite/be turned on/lit (appliance/fire)	(点く)
消す	う	to erase/delete/rid; turn off/extinguish (appliance/fire)		消える	る	to disappear/vanish; go out/be turned off/extinguished (appliance/fire)	
-				なくなる	う	to disappear (e.g. pain/dream)	(無くなる); also in Table 135
削除する	E	to delete/erase/eliminate		-			
遊ぶ	う	to play		-			
遊ばす	う	to let someone play; to entertain/amuse someone		-			
遊ばせる	る	to let someone play; to entertain/amuse someone		-			
-				ふざける	る	to joke/make fun of	
買う	う	to buy		-			
ロックする	E	to lock		-			
かける	る	to secure (lock)	(掛ける)	かかる	う	to be fastened (lock)	(掛かる)
鍵をかける	る	to lock up (e.g. door)	(鍵を掛ける)	鍵がかかる	う	to become locked/be locked	(鍵が掛かる)

VD.7 Interaction

Table 131: Verbs: interaction.

Transitive			Intransitive				
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
				ある	う	to exist/have (inanimate)	(有る)
-				いる	る	to exist (animate)	(居る)
-				<v te>ている	る	progressive state of action/being	(居る); AUX
-				<adj/v stem>すぎる	る	to be excessive/too much	(過ぎる); SUFFIX
?				する	E	to do	
?				{お/ご}<nn>申し上げる	る	to do	AUX humble, also in Table 129
?				<nn>にする	E	to decide on (e.g. ordering from menu)	

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
?				<adj>にする	E	to make become	
?				<v>ことにする	E	to decide to <v>	
?				<v>ことにしている	E	to decide to make it a rule/practice to <v>	
?				<v>ようにする	E	to try to make sure that <v>	
やる	う	to do/play/send/put; to give (to animal)	(通る/行る): slang				
やってみる	る	to have a go/try and do	(やってみる)	やってみる	る	to take a chance with something	(やってみる)
?				ゴリ押しする	E	to do/push through by force	
捧げる	る	to dedicate/offer/devote/sacrifice		-			% technically there is a 捧ぐ but I think nobody really uses that so...
しまう	う	to finish/stop/close/shut down/put away	(仕舞う)	-			
<v te>しまう	う	to do completely	(仕舞う); AUX	-			
<v te>しまう	う	to do accidentally	(仕舞う); AUX	-			
{<vt>ちゃう<vt>じゃう}	う	to do completely	AUX	-			
{<vt>ちゃう<vt>じゃう}	う	to do accidentally	AUX	-			
-				なる	う	to become/get/attain/reach/turn into/be completed	usu. 「～になる」
?				ご<nom>になる	う	to do <nom>	AUX, honorific
?				お<v stem>になる	う	to do <v stem>	AUX, honorific
?				<v>ことになる	う	to arrange/decide so that <v>	
?				<v>ようになる	う	to come to be that/start to <v> (focus on change state)	
?				よくなる	う	to become better/improve	(良くなる)
表す	う	to represent/stand for; to express (e.g. emotions)		表れる	る	to be expressed (e.g. emotions)	
現す	う	to reveal/show/display		現れる	る	to appear/become visible/become apparent/materialise	
表する	E	to express/show	formal, literary	-			
置く	う	to leave behind/put/place		-			
<v te>ておく	う	to do <v te> in advance in preparation for something		-			
選ぶ	う	to choose/select		-			
優先する	E	to precede/take priority/be preferred		優先する	E	to take precedence/priority over others	
-				曲に合う	う	to be good enough/make do	also in Table 136
-				いる	る	to need/want	(要る)
お願いする	E	to request/ask for a favour/wish	polite	-			
頼む	う	to request/ask/beg; to entrust to; to rely on		-			
請求する	E	to request/apply for; to demand/claim (e.g. luggage, damages)	also in Table 130	-			
任せる	る	to entrust/leave to someone (IC-suffixed)	[HNI]	-			
命令する	E	to order/command		-			
-				<nn>に関する	E	concerning/relating/regarding <nn>	
-				関係する	E	to be related/connected to (human relationships); to participate in/be involved/concerned with	
-				関連する	E	to be related/connected to (abstract/general)	
-				会う	う	to meet/encounter	
-				逢う	う	to meet/encounter (close friends/romantic)	[HNI]
-				遭う	う	to have an undesired meeting/experience/accident	
-				できる	る	to come into existence; to make/get friend/partner	(出来る); also in Table 133
誘う	う	to invite; to ask someone to do/take someone along to (IC-marked)		-			
おごる	う	to treat someone to something (e.g. a meal/drink)	(奢る)	-			
-				答える	る	to answer/reply	
-				返事する	E	to reply/answer/response	
待つ	う	to wait		待つ	う	to wait	
楽しみに待つ	う	to wait expectantly/in anticipation		楽しみに待つ	う	to wait expectantly/in anticipation	
一緒にする	E	to do together/unite/mix					
[<with list>ど]一緒にになる	う	to rendezvous/join/meet together/get married with	htc				
-				目立つ	う	to stand out/be conspicuous	
-				変わった	る	to be unusual/abnormal/strange/odd/peculiar/weird/different	
-				変わっている	る	to be unusual/uncommon/peculiar/eccentric/different	sometimes derogatory
送る	う	to send/dispatch/forward/transmit/ship/remmit/pass; to see someone off/bid farewell; to affix (送り仮名)		-			
贈る	う	to gift (a present)		-			
送り出す	う	to send out/forward; to show a person out		-			
受ける	る	to receive/get; to be struck by (e.g. winds/waves/sunlight)		-			
いただく	う	to receive/accept/take/eat/drink	(頂く); humble	いただける	る	to be able to receive/accept/eat/drink	humble
<v te>いただく	う	to receive (humble of もらう)	humble	-			
ウケる	る	to be well-received/become popular		-			
手伝う	う	to help/assist/aid; to contribute to		-			
助ける	る	to save/rescue/spare/help		助かる	う	to be saved/rescued/escape harm/survive/helped	
救う	う	to save/rescue from/help out of		-			
応援する	E	to aid/assist/help/support; to cheer/root for		-			
感謝する	E	to thank		感謝する	E	to be grateful/thankful	
大感謝する	E	to greatly thank		大感謝する	E	to be greatly grateful/thankful	
評価する	E	to appreciate/recognise/acknowledge/praise	also in Table 133	-			
?				(ご)注意する	E	to pay attention/remind/caution	
連絡する	E	to make contact/communicate/call/message		All WOSURU family			
?				電話する	E	to call (phone call)	
かける	る	to make (a call)	(掛ける)	かかる	う	to get/receive (a call)	(掛かる)
電話をかける	る	to telephone/make a call	(電話を掛ける)	電話がかかる	う	to get/receive (a call)	(電話を掛かる)
つなぐ	う	to transfer phone call/connect with (IC-marked)	also in Table 129	-			
告白する	E	to confess to a crime/wrongdoing	[good]	告白する	E	to confess one's romantic feelings	

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
自白する	E	to confess/admit (when questioned)	[goo]	-			
自供する	E	to confess (when questioned)	[goo]	-			
逮捕する	E	to arrest/capture		-			
ノートする	E	to note down		-			
				粘る	う	to be sticky/adhesive	

## VD.8 Health

Table 132: Verbs: health.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				空く	う	to be hungry	also in Table 129
-				渴く	う	to be thirsty; to thirst/crave for (～に <u>め</u> いた)	
汗をかく	う	to perspire/sweat	(汗を掻く)	-			
-				疲れる	る	to become tired/fatigued/exhausted (physical/mental); to become worn out (object overuse)	[goo]
-				疲労する	E	to be fatigued/exhausted/tired	
-				くたびれる	る	to become tired/exhausted/weary (physical); to become worn out (object overuse)	(草臥れる); [goo]
-				バテる	る	to be exhausted	slang
-				病気になる	う	to fall ill/sick	
かく	う	to scratch (e.g. mosquito bite); to perspire	(掻く)	-			
-				寝る	る	to lie down/go to bed/sleep	also in Table 130; [goo]
-				眠る	う	to sleep; to rest in peace (euphemism)	also in Table 130; [goo]
-				休む	う	to take a day off/be absent; to rest/have a break	
傷つける	る	to wound/injure/hurt someone's feelings	(傷付ける)	傷つく	う	to be wounded/get injured/get hurt feelings	(傷付く)
痛める	る	to hurt/injure/cause pain		痛む	う	to hurt/ache/feel a pain	
傷める	る	to harm/damage; to spoil		傷む	う	to be injured/damaged; to be spoiled (food)	
生む	う	to give birth/bear (a child)/lay (eggs); to produce/yield (e.g. interest/returns)		生まれる	る	to be born	
生かす?				生きる	る	to live/come to life/make a living	
生じる	*	a lot!					
生み出す	*	a lot!					
				死ぬ	う	to die/pass away	

## VD.9 Ability

Table 133: Verbs: ability.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				あり得る	る	to be possible/conceivable/likely/probable	
-				できる	る	to be able to do	(出来る); also in Table 131
料理する	E	to deal with skillfully/handle well		-			
-				イケる	る	to look/taste good; to be good at (esp. food); to go well	
-				独立する	E	to be independent/self-reliant	
-				苦労する	E	to have trouble/difficulty	
評価する	E	to rate/appraise/evaluate/assess	also in Table 131	-			
-				成功する	E	to succeed	
-				失敗する	E	to fail	
-				受かる	う	to pass an exam	

## VD.10 Education and correctness

MATH

Table 134: Verbs: education and correctness.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
訊く	う	to ask/enquire		?			
質問する	E	to ask a question		質問[を]する	E	to ask a question	
教える	る	to teach/inform		-			
教わる	う	to be taught/learn/take lessons in		-			
説明する	E	to explain/describe		-			
習う	う	to take lessons/learn/be trained (under a teacher)		-			
練習する	E	to practise/train/drill		-			
勉強する	E	to study		勉強する	E	to work hard	
自習する	E	to self-study		-			
-				頑張る	う	to persevere/keep at it/hang on/do one's best	
-				わかる	う	to understand/comprehend	also an interjection
了解する	E	to understand/agree		-			
理解する	E	to understand	also in Table 128	-			
間違える	る	to make a mistake	[BNI]	違う	う	to differ/be different; to be wrong/mistaken	
間違える	る	to make a mistake in/commit an error/do incorrectly		間違[う]	う	to be mistaken/incorrect/wrong (oft. as past/progressive)	
-				異なる	う	to differ/disagree/vary/diverge (of opinions)	



Transitive			Intransitive		
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Action	Cat.	Meaning
誤解する	E	to have a misunderstanding about	誤解する	E	to have a misunderstanding
-			勘違いする	E	to erroneously assume/live in an illusion/be mistaken
-			思い違いする	E	to be mistaken/have a misconception

## VD.11 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 135: Verbs: knowledge, truth and reality.

Transitive			Intransitive		
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Action	Cat.	Meaning
思う	う	to think/believe/judge/imagine/recall/feel	-		
考える	る	to consider/think over/reflect on	-		
承知する	E	to know/be aware; to accept/consent/comply/acknowledge	-		
信じる	る	to believe/trust/have faith in	-		
信用する	E	to trust (information/source; past)	-		
信頼する	E	to trust (a person/organisation; future)	-		
疑う	う	to doubt/alistrust/be suspicions of	-		
-			はっきりする	E	to clear (e.g. fog/confusion); to be clear/definite (sight/knowledge)
隠す	う	to hide/conceal	隠れる	る	to hide/conceal oneself/take cover; to be hidden by/disappear behind; to be unknown/undiscovered
隠し事する	E	to keep a secret	-		
伏せる	る	to conceal (secret)/place in hiding (in ambush)	-		
隠蔽する	E	to cover up/conceal/hide/suppress	-		
-			なくなる	う	to be lost/missing
-			気づく	う	to notice/realise/sense (internal/somewhat nuance)
-			気がつく	う	to notice/realise/sense; regain consciousness
知る	う	to know/be familiar with; to be concerned with (usu. negative)	知れる	る	to be known/understood/discovered
覚える	る	to remember/memorise/learn by heart	-		
思い出す	う	to recall/remember/recollect	-		
意識する	E	to become aware of	-		
忘れる	る	to forget	-		
-			由来する	E	to originate from (LC-marked)
調べる	る	to look up/search/investigate/examine	-		
観察する	E	to observe/survey/watch	-		
探す	う	to search/look/hunt for (something desired)	-		
捜す	う	to search/look/hunt for (something lost)	-		
探索する	E	to hunt/explore/investigate/search/lookup	-		
分析する	E	to analyse	-		
推す	う	to infer/deduce/gather/conjecture/surmise from	-		
報告する	E	to report (information)	-		
証明する	E	to prove/testify	-		
確認する	E	to confirm/verify/validate/check	-		
発見する	E	to discover/detect/find	-		
発明する	E	to invent	-		
決断する	E	to decide (strong)	-		
決定する	E	to decide	-		
判断する	E	to judge	-		
判定する	E	to make a verdict/ruling (of judges/referees)	-		
断定する	E	to assert/declare/conclude	-		
内定する	E	to unofficially decide/offer (e.g. job)	内定する	E	to unofficially decide/offer (e.g. job)
探る	う	to feel around/grope/search/find for; to investigate/probe/spy/sound out; to explore (parts unknown)	-		

## VD.12 Courtesy

Table 136: Verbs: courtesy.

Transitive			Intransitive		
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Action	Cat.	Meaning
無視する	E	to disregard/ignore	-		
-			曲に合う	う	to be/make it in time for
遅らす	う	to delay/postpone/slow down/retard	遅れる	る	to be late/delayed/overdue/slow
-			後れる	る	to fall behind others (race/studies)
進める	る	to set a clock forwards in time	進む	う	to be fast (of a clock)
かける	る	to cause/burden/impose (inconvenience/trouble)	-		
迷惑をかける	る	to annoy/inconvenience/trouble/cause trouble	-		
面倒をかける	る	to inconvenience/trouble	-		

## VD.13 Conflict and resolution

Table 137: Verbs: conflict and resolution.

Transitive			Intransitive		
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Action	Cat.	Meaning
-			争う		to compete/contest/contend
-			勝つ	う	to win (personal)

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-	-	-	-	勝利する	E	to win (larger scale)	-
攻める	る	to attack/assault/assail	-	抗う	う	to fight against/resist/oppose	-
倒す	う	to kill/defeat/beat/overthrow	also in Table 126	倒れる	る	to be killed (person)/fail (organisation)	also in Table 126; [HN]
負かす	う	to defeat	[HN]	負ける	る	to lose (personal)/succumb to/give in to	-
敗る	う	to defeat/beat	[HN]	敗れる	る	to lose/be defeated/beaten/unsuccessful	-
-	-	-	-	敗北する	E	to lose (larger scale)	-
食う	う	to outdo/defeat	also in Table 130	-	-	-	-
全滅する	E	to completely destroy/annihilate/wipe out	-	全滅する	E	to be totally defeated/completely fail	-
騙す	う	to trick/cheat/deceive	-	-	-	-	-
馬鹿にする	E	to make fun of/look down on/make light of	-	-	-	-	-
後出しする	E	to wait to see one's opponent's move before making your move (disallowed in games); to hold back until the last minute	-	-	-	-	-
誤る	う	to err/make a mistake in; to mislead/misguide/lead astray	-	誤る	う	to be mistaken/wrong/incorrect	-
-	-	-	-	喧嘩する	E	to quarrel/brawl/fight/squabble/scuffle/argue	-
脅す	う	to threaten/menace	[good]	-	-	-	-
脅かす	う	to threaten/menace	[good] also in Table 128	-	-	-	-
責める	る	to blame/condemn/critise/reproach	-	-	-	-	-
謝る	う	to apologise	-	-	-	-	-
謝罪する	E	to apologise	-	-	-	-	-
pardonする	E	to pardon/forgive; to give someone a break	-	-	-	-	-
許す	う	to allow/approve; forgive/excuse	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	構う	う	to mind/care about/be concerned about/have a regard for (i(-marked))	-
気にする	E	(negative nuance) to mind/care/worry about something	-	気にする	E	(negative nuance) to mind/care/worry about something	-
-	-	-	-	賛成する	E	to approve of/agree with/support (i(-marked))	-
推す	う	to recommend/endorse/nominate/support/back	also in Table 135	-	-	-	-
拒む	う	to refuse/decline	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	お断りします	E	I decline/refuse/reject/do not accept	polite
-	-	-	-	気をつける	る	to be careful of/pay attention to/take care of (i(-marked))	(気を付ける)
警戒する	E	to be cautious of/be on guard against	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	反対する	E	to object/oppose/disagree with/resist (i(-marked))	-
禁じる/禁ずる	る	to forbid/ban/prohibit	some zuru verb black magic	-	-	-	-
ブロックする	E	to block (user/website); to obstruct	-	-	-	-	-
BANする	E	to ban (an online account)	slang	-	-	-	-
約束する	E	to promise/make an agreement	-	-	-	-	-
守る	う	to keep/uphold/abide by/follow (promise/rules)	also in Table 129	-	-	-	-
破る	う	to break/violate (silence/promise/rules)	also in Table 129	-	-	-	-
捕まえる	る	to arrest/catch/capture/seize/restrain	-	捕まる	う	to be caught/arrested	-
尋問する	E	to interrogate/question	-	-	-	-	-
罰する	E	to punish/penalise	-	-	-	-	-
殺す	う	to kill; to suppress/destroy/stifle (talent/feelings/yawn/laugh)	-	-	-	-	-
ぶち殺す	う	to beat to death; to kill (emphatic)	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	自殺する	E	to suicide	-

## VD.14 Change

Table 138: Verbs: change.							
Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-	-	-	-	変化する	E	to change/vary/mutate/transition/transform/be altered/transfigured; inflect/conjugate (grammar)	-
-	-	-	-	進化する	E	to evolve/advance/progress/develop/improve	-
展開する	E	to develop/evolve/progress/unfold/plot twist; to expand (physical/mathematical)	-	展開する	E	to develop/evolve/progress/unfold/plot twist; to expand (physical/mathematical)	-
変える	る	to alter/transform/convert/vary/change	-	変わる	う	to transform/change; to move to (new place)	-
換える	る	to exchange	-	換わる	る	to switch/be exchanged/change places	-
替える	る	to replace	-	替わる	る	to relieve/replace	-
代える	る	to substitute	-	代わる	る	to substitute/hand over (telephone)	-
切り変える	る	to alter/transform/convert/vary/change	-	-	-	-	-
切り替える	る	to replace	-	-	-	-	-
切り換える	る	to exchange	-	-	-	-	-
取り替える	る	to replace (widest usage; "take and replace")	[good]	-	-	-	-
入れ替える	る	to replace (only interior contents; "enter and replace")	[good]	-	-	-	-
付け替える	る	to replace (can replace to different location; "(re)attach and replace")	[good]	-	-	-	-
入れ換える	る	to exchange	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	声変する	E	to break voice	-
-	-	-	-	痩せる	る	to lose weight/become thin; to become impoverished/infertile/barren (soil)	-
-	-	-	-	太る	う	to put on weight/grow fat	-
-	-	-	-	禿げる	る	to lose hair/become bald	-
-	-	-	-	紅葉する	E	to turn red (of leaves, in autumn)	-
-	-	-	-	黄葉する	E	to turn yellow (of leaves, in autumn)	-

## SUFFIXES AND AUXES

## VE 副詞と接続詞 (adverbs and conjunctions)

### VE.1 Grammatical

Table 139: Verbs: grammatical.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
例えば	for example/for instance	
つまり	in short/in other words	(詰まり)
まず	firstly	(先ず)
取りあえず	first of all/right away	also in Tables Table 142, Table 147
次いで	secondly/next/subsequently	also a CONJUNCTION
{Cだから E {[Cですから E]}	therefore (to speaker, E is a natural consequence of C; strong expression of speaker's attitude)	{CONJUNCTION also an expression; [MCJ] {[polite]}
Cそれで E	(objective そ) therefore (general cause-and-effect; E must have certainly happened (either past or now))	CONJUNCTION [goo], [MCJ]
Cそこで E	(objective そ) therefore (C is problem/situation, E is action taken to solve/improve/advance)	CONJUNCTION [goo], [MCJ]
Cすると E	thereupon (E happens <i>immediately</i> after C)	CONJUNCTION [MCJ]
だからこそ	for this very reason/this is exactly why	technically an expression
しかし	however/but	CONJUNCTION
ただ	only/merely/just/simply; but/however/nonetheless	also an noun
ただし	but/however/provided that	(但し)
ために	for the sake of; because of/as a result of	(為に); CONJUNCTION
ちなみに	by the way/incidentally/in passing	(因みに)
っていう	meaning/called/said	(っていう) slang of という
<that>わけではない	it does not mean that/I don't mean that	(訳ではない); technically an expression
<that>わけじゃない	it does not mean that/I don't mean that	(訳じゃない); technically an expression
もし	if/in case/supposing	(若し)
そして	and/and then/thus/and now/and finally	CONJUNCTION

### VE.2 Directions

Table 140: Verbs: directions.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
まっすぐ	straight (ahead)/directly (destination)/uprightly/erectly	(真っ直ぐ)

### VE.3 Intensity modifiers

Table 141: Verbs: intensity modifiers.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
全然<negative>	not at all	
とても<negative>	not at all/simply cannot	
あまり<negative>	not very	(あまり); slightly formal [HN1], [HN2]
別に<negative>	not particularly (nuance: not interested)	slightly informal, can be rude; [HN1], [HN2]
少し	somewhat/slightly/a little	

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ちょっと いっ歩	a bit/slightly/somewhat/quite; just a minute small degree/small amount (one step)	
かなり	quite/considerably/pretty	
なかなか	very/considerably/fairly/quite/rather	なかなか (中々)
そうとう 相当	considerably/rather/quite/fairly/pretty	also an adjective, verb
そこそこ	reasonably/fairly/all right/moderate	ONOMATOPOEIC, also in Table 150
いい加減	considerably/quite/rather/pretty enough (wanting something to end)	also an adjective
だい 大～	large/big/great/severe	PREFIX. htc; technically な-adj/noun
すごく	very/immensely/awfully	すご (凄く)
まったく 全く	really/truly/entirely/completely/perfectly; indeed	also a noun
ずいぶん 随分	surprisingly/very/extremely/fairly/quite/considerably/awfully/terribly	
たいへん 大変	very/greatly/terribly/awfully	also an adjective
そりゃ	very/extremely	
とても	very/exceedingly/awfully	
めっちゃ	extremely/very/really/super/so	slang
めちゃくちゃ	incredibly/really/super/so	also an adjective
とくべつ 特別	especially/particularly/extraordinarily/exceptionally	also an adjective
ぜんぜん 全然	extremely/very	e.g. 「ぜんぜんいいよ」
いちぶ 一部	partly/partially	
ぜんぶ 全部	entirely/wholly/altogether	also a noun; [goo]
ぜんたい 全体	wholly/entirely	[goo]
すべて	entirely/completely/wholly	すべて (全て)
もれなく	without exception	もれなく (漏れなく)
たくさん	a lot/lots/plenty/much/a great deal; enough/too much	たくさん (沢山); also an adjective
いっぱい	fully/as much as possible; a lot/many; all of	いっぱい (一杯); also a noun and adjective
たっぷり	plentifully/with excess/amply/abundantly/copiously/generously/fully/a lot	ONOMATOPOEIC
いちばん 一番	best/most	
わざと	purposely/deliberately/intentionally	
ぐうぜん 偶然	coincidentally/by chance/unexpectedly/accidentally	also a noun
もしや	possibly/perhaps/by some chance	もしや (若しや)
もしかし	maybe/perhaps/by some chance	もしかし (若しかし)
もしかして	perhaps/possibly/maybe/by any chance/if I'm not mistaken	もしかして (若ししかして)
たしか 確か	if I'm not mistaken/if I remember correctly	also a noun
たぶん 多分	probably/perhaps	
まず	probably/most likely/almost certainly	まず (先ず)
たしかに 確かに	certainly/for sure/indeed/really	
いったい 一体	(what) the heck/(why) in the world/(who) on earth (emphatic question prefix)	

## VE.4 Time

Table 142: Verbs: time.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
いっしゆん 一瞬	momentarily/for an instant	
いちにちじゅう 1日中	all day long/throughout the day	note じゅう 中
すえなが 未永く	everlastingly/forever/for many years to come	
いつまでも	eternally/indefinitely/endlessly/forever/for a long time	(何時までも)
きゅう 急に	suddenly/abruptly/unexpectedly; swiftly/rapidly/quickly/ hastily/hurriedly; sharply/steeply (slope/bend)	
すぐ	immediately/at once/right away; soon; easily; right near/ nearby	(直ぐ)
すぐに	immediately/at once/right away/instantly	(直ぐに)
いま 今すぐ	immediately/at once/right now	(今直ぐ)
さっさと	immediately/without delay/hurriedly/quickly	
はや 早く	early/soon/quickly/swiftly/rapidly	
そろそろ	soon/it's about time/any time now (expresses impatience)	
おそ 遅く	late/slowly	
ゆっくり	slowly/unhurriedly/without haste/leisurely	ONOMATOPOEIC
だんだん	gradually/little by little/more and more/increasingly	(段々)
まだ	not yet/still	(未だ)
もう	already; not any more/longer; again/another	again/another: used with counting 1
ようやく	finally/at last	
いまさら 今更	now/at this stage (when it is already much too late)	
ちらっと	at a glance/by accident	ONOMATOPOEIC
ほんらい 本来	originally/primarily	
もともと	originally/from the start/from the onset	(元々)
きき 先に	previously/before/earlier/formerly/recently; beforehand/in advance	
いま 今のところ	at present/currently/so far/for now/for the time being	
いま 今のとこ	at present/currently/so far/for now/for the time being	slang, abbreviation
と 取りあえず	tentatively/for now/for the time being	also in Tables Table 139, Table 147
なが あいだ 長い間	for quite some time/a long time	also a noun
ずっと	the whole time/continuously; much (more); (by) far	
ひ つづ 引き続き	continuously/continually/continued/without a break	
めった 滅多に<negative>	seldom/rarely	IG
たまに	occasionally/once in a while	(偶に); IG
ときどき 時々	every now and then/from time to time/once in a while	IG
よく	frequently/often	(良く); also in Table 143; IG
たいてい	mostly/almost all/ordinarily/usually	(大抵); IG
いつも	always	(何時も); IG
これから	from now on/in the future; from here	also a noun

## VE.5 Attitude

Table 143: Verbs: attitude.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ぶらぶら	(walking) leisurely/aimlessly	ONOMATOPOEIC, also a verb
さんりき 遠慮なく	without reservation/freely	
しず 静かに	calmly/quietly/gently/peacefully	also an expression

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ちゃんと	diligently/seriously/earnestly; properly/perfectly/exactly/regularly; quickly	ONOMATOPOEIC
しっかり	properly/well/sufficiently/hard/fully (working)	also in Table 150
はっきり	clearly/plainly (clarity in sight/knowledge) (usu. はっきりした)	also a verb
大切に	carefully/with great care	also an adjective, verb
詳しく	in detail/fully/at length	
よろしく	properly/well/suitably; please do	(よろしく)
4 6 4 9	properly/well/suitably; please do	(よろしく); slang
<...>よろしく	just like/as though one were <...>	(よろしく)
よく	nicely/properly/well/skilfully	(よく); also in Table 142
絶対に	absolutely/definitely/unconditionally	
よろしく<...>べし	by all means/of course do <...>	(よろしく)
お腹いっぱい	to one's heart's content	also a noun
普通に	normally/ordinarily/usually/generally/commonly	
通常	usually/ordinarily/normally/regularly/generally/commonly	also a noun
普段	usually/normally/generally/habitually/always	also a noun
大体	generally/on the whole/mostly/almost/nearly/approximately/roughly/about	
ほとんど	almost/nearly/mostly/practically/virtually/basically/just about	(ほとんど), also in Table 123
本当に/本当に	really/truly	
正直	honestly/frankly	also an adjective
別に	separately/additionally/extra	
ツンツン	aloof/cold/unfriendly/standoffish	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb; also in Table 149
デレデレ	flirting/philandering/being lovestruck/fawning	ONOMATOPOEIC

## VE.6 Emotions

Table 144: Verbs: emotions.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
喜んで	with pleasure/gladly/willingly/certainly	
ドキドキ	thump-thump/bang-bang/pit-a-pat/pitter-patter	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb
ワクワク	to be excited/thrilled/nervous	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb
キュン	with a pitter-patter/heart-wringing/tightening of one's chest caused by powerful feelings (e.g. parting); 「胸がキュンとなる」	ONOMATOPOEIC
ムカムカ	feeling sick/queasy/nauseated/disgusted	also a verb
ソワソワ	restlessly/nervously/uneasily/in a fidget	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb
ニヤニヤ	grinningly/smirkingly	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb
残念ながら	unfortunately/regrettably	technically an expression

## VE.7 Appearance and style

Table 145: Verbs: appearance and style.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
こう	in this way (closer to speaker)	

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
そう	in that way (closer to listener)	also an interjection
ああ	in that way (distant)	
こんあふうに	approximately in this way (closer to speaker)	(こんな風に)
そんあふうに	approximately in that way (closer to listener)	(そんな風に)
あんあふうに	approximately in that way (distant)	(あんな風に)
キラキラ	glittering/sparkling/glistening/twinkling	ONOMATOPOEIC
びよんびよん	hopping/skipping/lightly and repeatedly jumping	ONOMATOPOEIC
チュッ	with a smooch/light smacking sound	ONOMATOPOEIC
ブチュッ	kissing loudly/smooching; squirting/gushing	ONOMATOPOEIC
ちょこちょこ	with small quick steps/toddling	ONOMATOPOEIC
むにゃむにゃ	mumbling incomprehensibly/mutteringly/murmuringly	ONOMATOPOEIC

## VE.8 Interaction

Table 146: Verbs: interaction.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ひさ 久しぶりに	for the first time in a while/after a long time	
いっしょ 一緒	together/at the same time; identical	
<with>と一緒<verb>	together with	
どうか	please/if you would/would you mind (sentence starter)	polite; also a pronoun
どうぞ	please/by all means/certainly/of course/go ahead/feel free to; here you are (passing something)	
ぜひ 是非	certainly/without fail/by all means	
ぜひぜひ	certainly/by all means	(是非是非)
かならず 必ず	necessarily/certainly/without fail	

## VE.9 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 147: Verbs: knowledge, truth and reality.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
じつ 実は	to be honest/frankly/to tell you the truth	
じっさい 実際は	in fact/actually/in reality/to tell the truth (as opposed to expectation)	
じっさい 実際に	actually/really/truly/in practice (as opposed to expectation)	
やはり	as expected/sure enough; in any case/after all/in the end	
やっぱり	as expected/sure enough; in any case/after all/in the end	
とうぜん 当然	naturally/rightly/deservedly/justly	also an adjective
さすが	just as you'd expect from	(さすが)
さすがに	as one would expect/naturally/indeed	(さすがに)
もちろん	of course/certainly/naturally/definitely	(もちろん)
とにかく	anyway/in any case	(とにかく)
と 取りあえず	anyway	also in Tables Table 139, Table 142

## VE.10 Ability

Table 148: Verbs: ability.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ペラペラ	fluently (speaking a foreign language)	also an adjective

## VE.11 The five senses

Table 149: Verbs: the five senses: sight, hearing, smell, taste, touch.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ペロペロ	licking/lapping up; gobbling up	
ふわふわ	lightly/buoyantly	ONOMATOPOEIC, also an adjective
とろり	thickly/viscously/stickily/creamily	ONOMATOPOEIC
どろり	thick/muddy/goosey (of liquid)	ONOMATOPOEIC
ぶにぶに	squishy/springy/bouncy (chubby when used on person)	ONOMATOPOEIC
ガリガリ	hard/crunchy (of muscles, when used on person)	ONOMATOPOEIC
ムキムキ	muscular/brawny	slang
ツンツン	spiky (hairstyle); sticking up straight (e.g. plant stems)	ONOMATOPOEIC also in Table 143

## VE.12 Amounts and sizes

Table 150: Verbs: amounts and sizes.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
どんなに	to what extent/amount	
こんなに	to this extent/amount	
そんなに	to that extent/amount	
あんなに	to that extent/amount (distant memory)	
どこまで	how far/to what extent/up to what point	
どのくらい<nm/adj>	how long/how far/how much	(どの <sup>くら</sup> い)
多く <sup>おほく</sup>	many/much/plenty/a lot	
もっと	some more/even more/longer/further	
未満 <sup>みまん</sup>	less than/under/below (esp. 〇歳未満 <sup>さいみまん</sup> )	SUFFIX
ほとんど<negative>	hardly/barely/scarcely/little	(殆ど <sup>ほとん</sup> ), also in Table 143
ギリギリ	just barely/only just/at the very limit/at the last moment	(ぎりぎり <sup>ぎ</sup> )
半分 <sup>はんぶん</sup>	half	also a noun
十分 <sup>じゅうぶん</sup>	sufficiently/fully/thoroughly/well/perfectly	also an adjective
ほぼ	almost/roughly/approximately/about/around	
そこそこ	approximately/about/or so	also in Table 141
ほとんど	large majority/proportion; most/almost all of	(殆ど <sup>ほとん</sup> ), also in Table 143
ピッタリ	tightly/closely; exactly/precisely; perfectly suited/in an ideal manner	
しっかり	firmly/securely/tightly (holding on); strongly/solidly/sturdily (built)	also in Table 143
初めて <sup>はじめて</sup>	for the first time	
また	again/once again/another time/some other time; also; on the other hand	(また <sup>また</sup> )
もう一回 <sup>いっかい</sup>	one more time/once again	
もっかい	one more time/once again	slang, abbreviation
<v te>初めて<...> <sup>はじめて</sup>	only after <v te> is it/do you <...>	
全員 <sup>ぜんいん</sup>	all members/everyone	also a noun



## VE.13 Onomatopoeia

Table 151: Verbs: general onomatopoeia.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ピンポン	ding-dong (doorbell/intercom)	ONOMATOPOEIC
ピンポン	ding ding ding!/correct!/right answer!	ONOMATOPOEIC, slang